



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

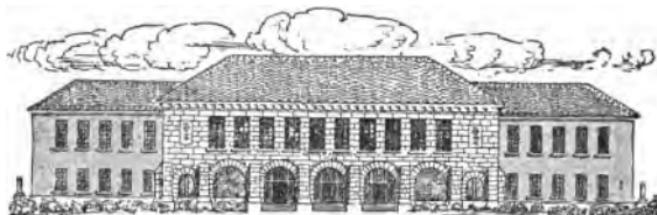
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 475.1 .H2821a
Harkness, Albert,
Latin grammar for schools and colleges /

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 6294



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo. 350 pages.

Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament. 12mo. 291 pages.

Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 408 pages.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

DEPARTMENT OF
EDUCATION
WISCONSIN

DEC 4 1929
STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Horace, The Works. With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

Livy. Selections from the History of Rome, including the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 386 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catilina. With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGEON. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

The Histories of Tacitus. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

Tacitus's Germania and Agricola. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 198 pages.

Virgil's Aeneid.* With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader. By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book," "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

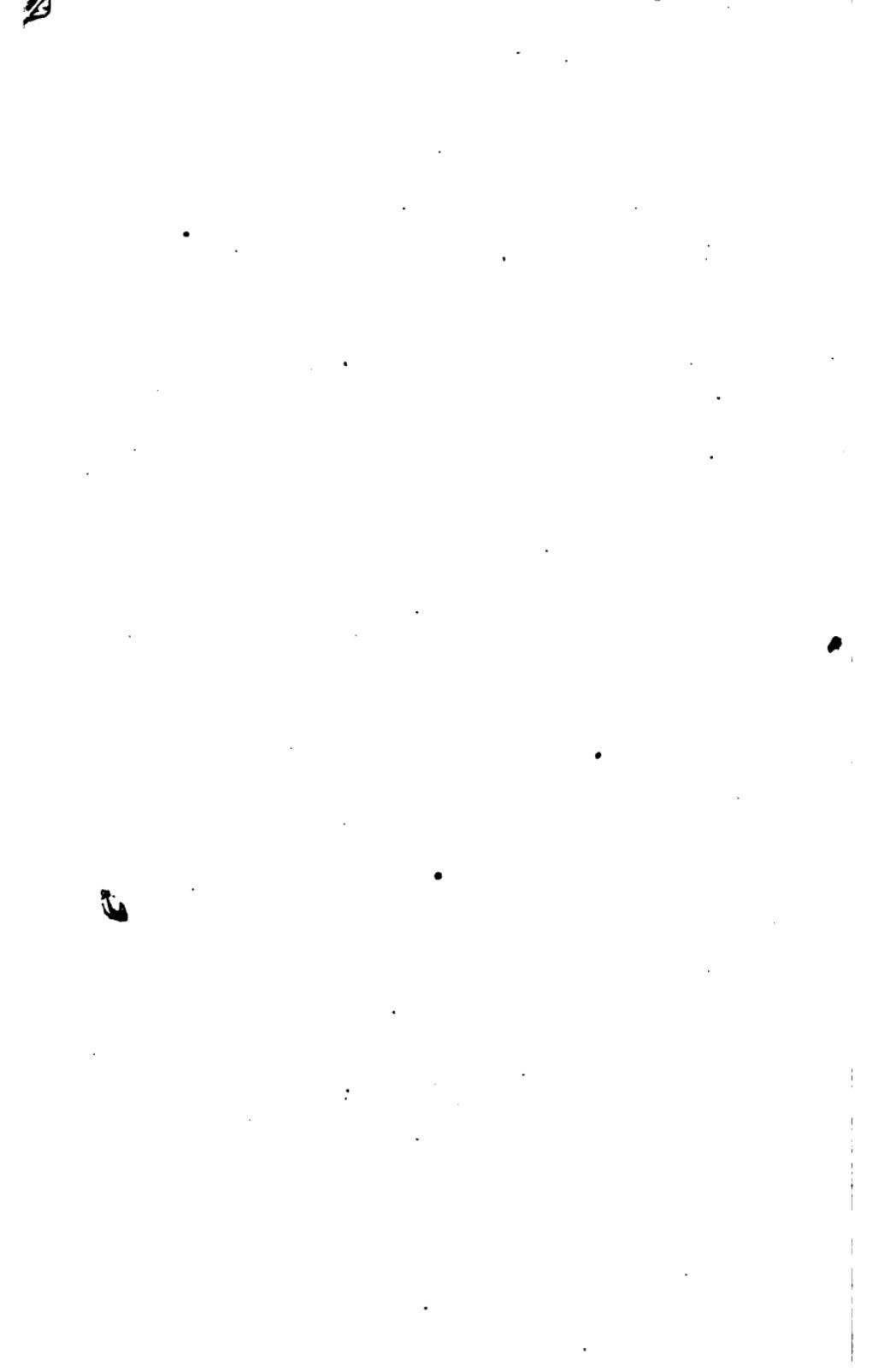
Acts of the Apostles, according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D.D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

Arnold's First Greek Book,* on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.* 12mo. 297 pages.

——— Second Part to the above.* 12mo. 248 pages.

SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.



Timothy Hopkins
San Francisco
Cal

Urban Academy

S. W. Cor of

Mason & Geary Sts



LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS
ALBERT HARKNESS, PH.D.,^{V.P.}

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY

DEC 4 1929

ELANG STANFORD
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY
REVISED EDITION

EMBRACING

IMPORTANT RESULTS OF RECENT PHILOLOGICAL RESEARCH.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
549 AND 551 BROADWAY.
LONDON: 16 LITTLE BRITAIN.

1874.

IN

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1874, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

C

87019

Columbia — Boat Club

PREFACE.

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers, that the subject of Latin Grammar, often regarded as dry and difficult, may be presented to the learner in a form at once simple, attractive, and philosophical. It is the aim of this manual to aid the instructor in the attainment of this most desirable end.

That the present is a favorable time for the production of a Latin Grammar scarcely admits of a doubt. Never before were there such facilities for the work. The last quarter of a century has formed an epoch in the study of language and in the methods of instruction. During this period some of the most gifted minds of Germany have been gathering the choicest treasures in the field of philology, while others have been equally successful in devising improved methods of instruction. In our own country too, the more enterprising teachers have caught the spirit of improvement, and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

laws, while parallel with this, in smaller type, it furnishes a fuller discussion of irregularities and exceptions for later study and for reference.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. In the regular paradigms, both of declension and of conjugation, the stems and endings have been distinguished by a difference of type, thus keeping constantly before the pupil the significance of the two essential elements which enter into the composition of inflected forms.

6. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself. The leading principles of construction have been put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after being separately discussed, are presented in a body at the close of the Syntax.

7. The subdivisions in each discussion are developed, as far as practicable, from the leading idea which underlies the whole subject. Thus in the treatment of cases, moods, and tenses, various uses, comparatively distinct in themselves, are found to centre around some leading idea or thought, thus imparting to the subject both unity and simplicity.

8. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

9. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with

the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Sub-junctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive. The different uses have not only been carefully classified, but also distinguished by characteristic and appropriate terms, convenient for the class-room.

For the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual in the study of Latin, it is in contemplation to publish a smaller Grammar on precisely the same plan as the present work, and with the same mode of treatment. This will be especially adapted to the wants of those who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.

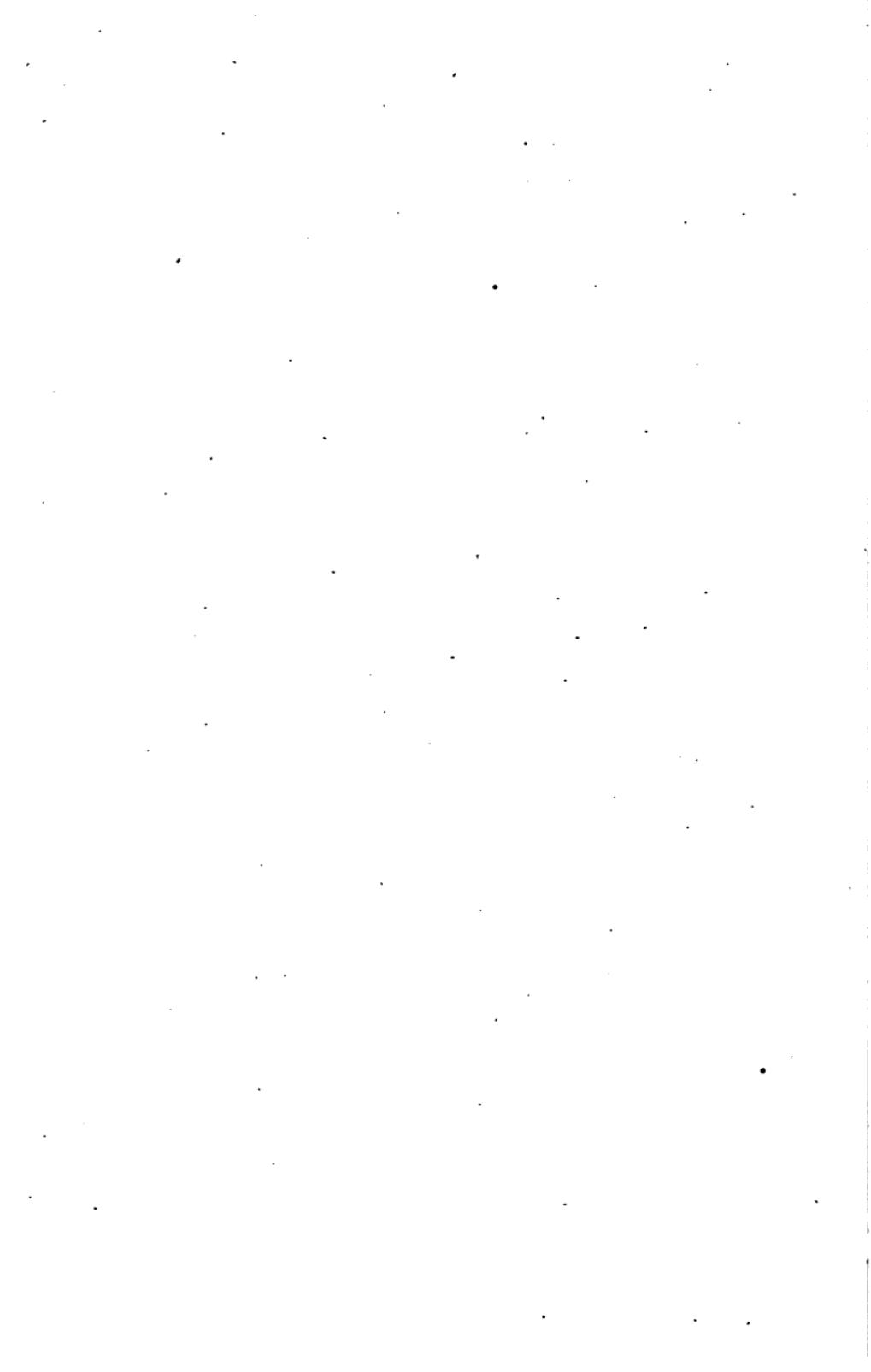
A Latin Reader, prepared with special reference to this work and intended as a companion to it, will be published at an early day.

In conclusion the author cheerfully acknowledges his indebtedness to other scholars, who have labored in the same field. The classification of verbs is founded in part on that of Grotewald and Krüger, a mode of treatment generally adopted in the recent German works on the subject, and well exhibited by Allen in his Analysis of Latin Verbs.

In Prosody much aid has been derived from the excellent works of Ramsay and Habenicht.

On the general subjects of Etymology and Syntax, his indebtedness is less direct, though perhaps no less real. His views of philology have been formed in a great measure under the moulding influence of the great German masters; and perhaps few Latin Grammars of any repute have appeared within the last half century, either in this country, England, or Germany, from which he has not received valuable suggestions. In the actual work of preparation, however, he has carried out his own plan, and presented his own modes of treatment, but he has aimed to avoid all untried novelties and to admit only that which is sustained by the highest authority, and confirmed by the actual experience of the class-room.

The author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous Instructors who have favored him with valuable suggestions; especially to his esteemed friend and colleague, Professor J. L. Lincoln, of this University.



P R E F A C E

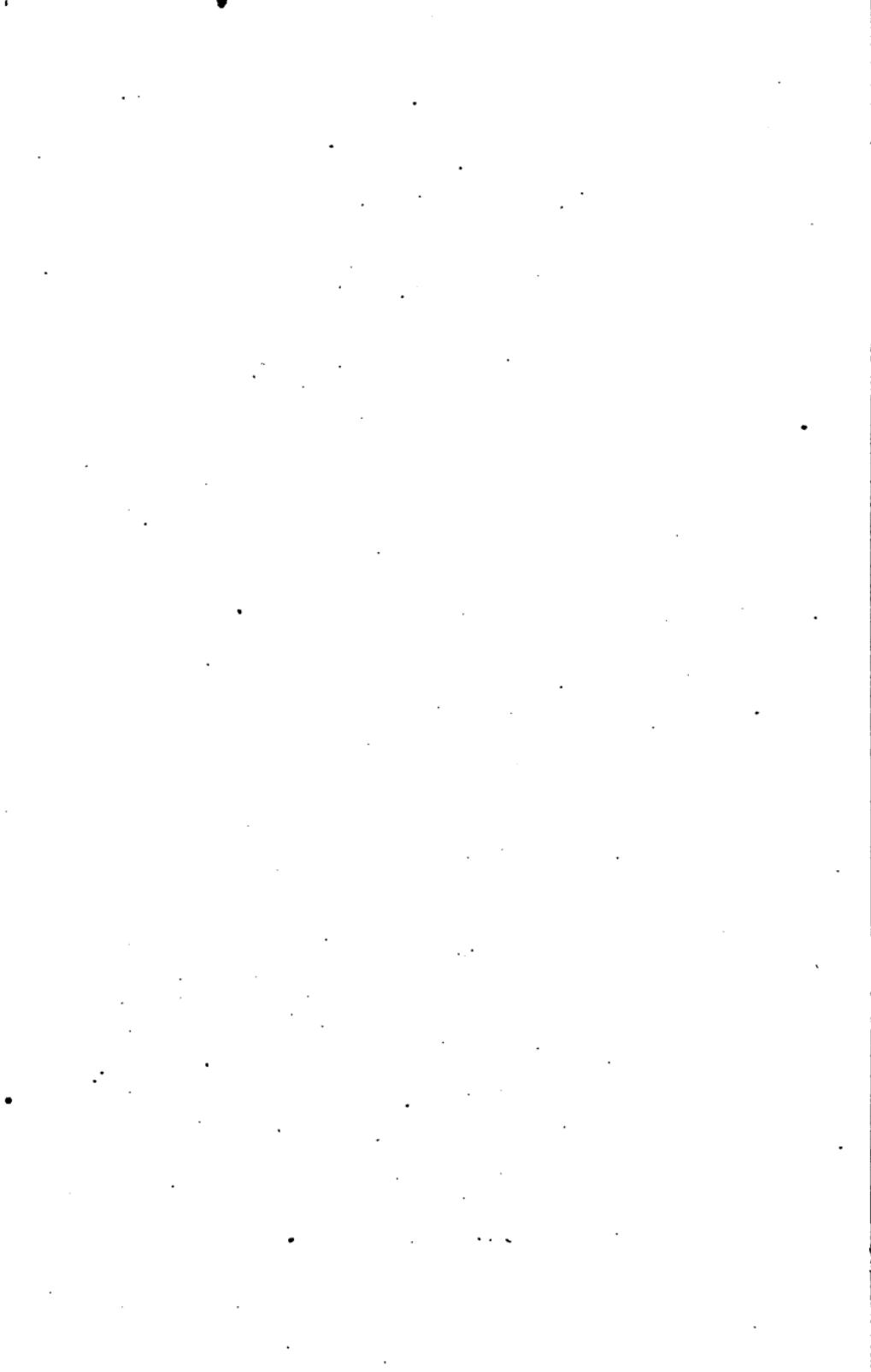
T O T H E R E V I S E D E D I T I O N .

PARTS First and Second in this edition have been entirely rewritten. The recent researches in Comparative Philology have thrown new light upon Latin forms and inflections, and have revealed many important facts in the development and growth of the language. Accordingly, in the present revision, it has been the constant aim of the author to secure for the learner the full benefit of all the practical results which these labors in the field of philology have brought within the proper sphere of the school. The general plan and scope of the work, however, remain the same as in former editions. Only such changes and additions have been made as seemed to promise desirable aid to the learner. Care has been taken to exclude from the work every thing which might divert his attention from the one object before him—the attainment of a full and accurate knowledge of the language.

In this connection, the author desires to express anew his grateful acknowledgments to the teachers and educators whose verdict of approval has contributed so largely to the success of his works. To their hands this new edition is now respectfully committed.

A. HARKNESS.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, July, 1874.



CONTENTS.

PART FIRST. ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet,	1
English Method of Pronunciation,	2
Roman Method,	5
Continental Method,	7
Quantity, Accentuation,	7
Euphonic Laws,	8
I. Changes in Vowels,	8
II. Changes in Consonants,	9

PART SECOND. ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender,	11
Person, Number, and Case,	12
Declension,	12
First Declension,	13
Greek Nouns,	14
Second Declension,	15
Greek Nouns,	17
Third Declension,	18
Class I.—Consonant Stems,	18
Stems in a Labial,	18
Stems in a Dental,	19
Stems in a Guttural,	20
Stems in a Liquid,	20
Stems in <i>S</i> ,	22
Class II.—I-Stems,	22
Special Paradigms,	26
Greek Nouns,	27
Synopsis of the Third Declension,	28
Gender,	34
Fourth Declension,	36
Fifth Declension,	38
Comparative View of Declensions,	39
General Table of Gender,	40

	Page.
Declension of Compound Nouns,	41
Irregular Nouns,	41
I. Indeclinable,	42
II. Defective,	42
III. Heteroclites,	44
IV. Heterogeneous,	44

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions,	46
Third Declension,	48
Irregular Adjectives,	51
Comparison,	52
I. Terminational Comparison,	52
II. Adverbial Comparison,	54
Numerals,	55

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns,	60
Possessive,	61
Demonstrative,	62
Relative,	64
Interrogative,	65
Indefinite,	66

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices, Moods,	67
Tenses,	68
Numbers, Persons,	69
Conjugation,	69
Paradigms of Verbs,	70
Verbal Inflections,	88
Synopsis of Conjugation,	90
Verbs in <i>io</i> : Conjugation III.,	93
Deponent Verbs,	96
Periphrastic Conjugation,	99
Contractions and Peculiarities of Conjugation,	100
Comparative View of Conjugations,	101
Analysis of Verbal Endings,	103
I. Tense-Signs,	103
II. Mood-Signs,	103
III. Personal Endings,	104
Formation of Stems,	106
I. Present Stem,	106
II. Perfect Stem,	107
III. Supine Stem,	108
Euphonic Changes,	109

	Page.
Classification of Verbs,	110
First Conjugation,	110
Second Conjugation,	112
Third Conjugation,	115
Fourth Conjugation,	125
Irregular Verbs,	127
Defective "	133
Impersonal "	135

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

Adverbs,	137
Prepositions,	138
Conjunctions,	139
Interjections,	140

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

Derivation of Words,	141
Derivative Nouns,	141
Derivative Adjectives,	145
Derivative Verbs,	147
Derivative Adverbs,	149
Composition of Words,	151
Compound Nouns,	152
Compound Adjectives,	153
Compound Verbs,	153
Compound Adverbs,	153

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences,	154
II. Simple Sentences,	156
III. Complex Sentences,	158
IV. Compound Sentences,	159

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

I. Agreement of Nouns,	160
Predicate Nouns,	160
Appositives,	161
II. Nominative,	162

Section.	Page.
III. Vocative,	163
IV. Accusative,	163
I. Direct Object,	164
Two Accusatives,	165
II. Subject of Infinitive,	167
III. Agreement of Accusative,	167
IV. Accusative in an Adverbial sense,	168
With or without Prepositions,	168
Accusative of Time and Space,	168
Accusative of Limit,	168
Accusative of Specification,	169
V. Accusative in Exclamations,	169
V. Dative,	170
I. Dative with Verbs—Indirect Object,	170
Dative of Advantage,	171
Dative with Compounds,	172
Dative of Possessor,	173
Dative of Agent,	173
Ethical Dative,	174
Two Datives,	174
II. Dative with Adjectives,	175
III. Dative with Nouns and Adverbs,	176
VI. Genitive,	176
I. Genitive with Nouns,	177
II. Genitive with Adjectives,	180
III. Genitive with Verbs,	182
Predicate Genitive,	182
Genitive of Place,	183
Genitive in Special Constructions,	183
Genitive and Accusative,	186
IV. Genitive with Adverbs,	187
VII. Ablative,	187
I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means,	188
Ablative of Price,	190
Ablative with Comparatives,	190
Ablative of Difference,	191
Ablative in Special Constructions,	192
II. Ablative of Place,	193
Ablative of Source and Separation,	195
III. Ablative of Time,	196
IV. Ablative of Characteristic,	197
V. Ablative of Specification,	198
VI. Ablative Absolute,	198
VII. Ablative with Prepositions,	199
VIII. Cases with Prepositions,	199

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives,	201
Use of Adjectives,	202
Comparison,	203

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

	Page.
Agreement of Pronouns,	204
Personal and Possessive Pronouns,	206
Reflexive Use,	206
Demonstrative Pronouns,	208
Relative Pronouns,	209
Interrogative Pronouns,	210
Indefinite Pronouns,	211

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Section.		Page.
I. Agreement of Verbs,	212	
II. Use of Voices,	214	
III. Tenses of the Indicative,	215	
IV. Use of the Indicative,	219	
V. Tenses of the Subjunctive; Sequence of Tenses,	219	
VI. Use of the Subjunctive,	223	
I. Potential Subjunctive,	223	
II. Subjunctive of Desire,	225	
III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result,	226	
IV. Subjunctive of Condition,	232	
V. Subjunctive of Concession,	236	
VI. Subjunctive of Cause and Time,	238	
VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions,	242	
VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction,	244	
IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse,	245	
Moods and Tenses in the <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> ,	246	
Pronouns, Adverbs, etc., in <i>Oratio Oblique</i>	248	
VII. Imperative,	248	
I. Tenses of the Imperative,	248	
II. Use of the Imperative,	249	
VIII. Infinitive,	250	
I. Tenses of the Infinitive,	251	
II. Subject of the Infinitive,	252	
III. Predicate after the Infinitive,	253	
IV. Construction of the Infinitive,	254	
IX. Subject and Object Clauses,	258	
X. Gerund,	262	
Gerundive,	263	
XI. Supine,	266	
XII. Participles,	267	

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs,	270
Prepositions,	271
Conjunctions,	271
Interjections,	274

CHAPTER VII.

Rules of Syntax,	Page 274
------------------	-------------

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Section.	
I. Arrangement of Words,	281
II. Arrangement of Clauses,	285

PART FOURTH:

PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity,	287
II. Special Rules of Quantity,	289
I. Quantity of Final Syllables,	289
II. Quantity in Increments,	292
III. Quantity of Derivative Endings,	295
IV. Quantity of Stem Syllables,	297

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject,	300
I. Metrical Feet,	300
II. Verses,	302
III. Figures of Prosody,	304
II. Varieties of Verse,	305
I. Dactylic Verse,	305
II. Anapaestic Verse,	308
III. Trochaic Verse,	308
IV. Iambic Verse,	309
V. Ionic Verse,	312
VI. Choriambic Verse,	312
VII. Logaeodic Verse,	313
VIII. Miscellaneous Verses,	315
III. Versification of Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Juvenal,	315

APPENDIX.

Figures of Speech,	320
Latin Authors,	322
Roman Calendar,	323
Roman Money, Weights, and Measures,	325
Abbreviations,	327
Index of Verbs,	328
Index of Subjects,	336
Table of corresponding articles in the two editions,	356

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts :

I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. SYNTAX, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. PROSODY, which treats of quantity and versification.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ALPHABET.

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.

1. *U* supplies the place of *w*.

2. *H* is only a breathing, and not strictly entitled to the rank of a letter.

3. Originally *i* and *u* were used both as vowels and as consonants, and accordingly supplied the place of *j* and *v*.

4. *K* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in words of Greek origin.

3. CLASSES OF LETTERS.—Letters are divided into two classes :

I. VOWELS,	a, e, i, o, u, y.
II. CONSONANTS:	
1. <i>Liquids</i> ,	l, m, n, r.
2. <i>Spirants</i> ,	h, f, v, j, s.
3. <i>Mutes</i> : 1) <i>Labials—lip-letters</i> ,	b, p, f, v.
2) <i>Dentals—teeth-letters</i> ,	d, t.
3) <i>Gutturals—throat-letters</i> ,	c, g, k, q, h.
4. <i>Double Consonants</i> ,	x, z.

4. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS.—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are—*ae, oe, au.*
 2. *Double Consonants*—*x = cs or gs; z = ds or sd.*
 3. *Ch, ph, th* are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c, p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

5. PRONUNCIATION.—Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds. But

1. These sounds in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them.
 2. Before *r*, *final*, or followed by another consonant, *e*, *i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable from each other, as in the English *her*, *fir*, *fur*, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far*, *for*.
 3. Between *qu* and *dr*, or *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar-tus*, as in *quarter*.

7. LONG SOUNDS.—Vowels have their long English

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the Continent of Europe has its own method.

sounds—**a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type*—in the following situations :

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel : *se, si, ser'-vi, ser'-vo, cor'-nu, mi'-sy*.
2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong : *de'-us, de-o'-rum, de'-ae, di-e'-i, ni'-hi-lum*.¹
3. In penultimate² syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r* : *pa'-ter, pa'-tres, A'-thos, O'-thrys*.
4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r* : *do-lo'-ris, a-gric'-o-la*.

- 1) **A** unaccented has the sound of *a* final in *America* : *men'-sa*.
- 2) **I** and **y** unaccented in any syllable except the first and last generally have the short sound : *nob'-i-lis* (*nob'-e-lis*), *Am'-y-cus* (*Am'-e-cus*).
- 3) **U**, etc.—**U** has the short sound before *bl*; and the other vowels before *gl* and *ll* : *Pub-lic'-o-la, Ag-la'-o-phon, At'-las*.
- 4) **I**.—Between an accented *a, e, o*, or *y*, and another vowel, *i* sometimes stands for *j*. It is then pronounced like *y* in *yet* : *A-cha'-ia* (*A-ka'-ya*), *Pom-pe'-ius* (*Pom-pe'-yus*), *La-to'-ia* (*La-to'-ya*), *Har-py'-ia* (*Har-py'-ya*).
- 5) **U**.—After *q* and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w* : *qui* (*kwi*), *qua* ; *lin'-qua* (*lin'-gwa*), *lin'-guis*. Sometimes also after *s* : *sua'-de-o* (*swa'-de-o*).
- 6) COMPOUND WORDS.—When the first part of a compound is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the short sound : *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the long sound before a consonant (8, 1), retain that sound in compounds: *post'-quam, hos'-ce, E-ti-am* and *quo'-ni-am* are generally pronounced as simple words.

8. SHORT SOUNDS.—Vowels have their short English sounds—**a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth*—in the following situations :

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant : *a'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys*: except *post*, *es* final, and *os* final in plural cases : *res, di'-es, hos, a'-gros*.
2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants ex-

¹ In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nitidum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. For the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

² Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

cept a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum.*

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-ă-nus, pat'-ri-bus.*

1) **A**, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o.*

2) **U**, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-tri-tas.*

3) Compounds. See 7, 6.)

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

9. **Ae** like *e*: *Cae'-sar, Daed'-ă-lus.¹*

Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta, Oed'-ă-pus.¹*

Au, as in author: *au'-rum.*

Eu, . . . neuter: *neu'-ter.*

1. **Ei** and **oi** are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: *hei, proin.* See Synaeresis, 669, II.

2. **Ui**, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui, hui, huic.*

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English, but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (*se'-do*), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus, cae'-do, coe'-pi, a'-ge* (*a'-je*), *a'-gi; ca'do* (*ka'-do*), *co'-go, cum, Ga'-des.* But

1) *Ch* is hard like *k*: *Cho'-rus* (*ko'-rus*), *Chi'-os* (*Ki'-os*).

2) *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger.*

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in son, this: *sa'-cer, si'-dus.*

1) **S final**, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes, praes, laus, urbe, hi'-ems, mons, pars.*

2) In a few words *s* has the sound of *z*, because so pronounced in English words derived from them: *Cae'-sar, Caesar; cau'-sa, cause; mu'-sa, muse; mi'-ser,* miser, etc.

¹ The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta* according to 7, 8, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-ă-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*) and *Oed'-ă-pus* (*Ed'-a-pus*) according to 8, 9, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

3. **T** has its regular English sound, as in *time*: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.
 4. **X** has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (*rek'-si*).
 But at the beginning of a word it has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

12. C, S, T, X—Aspirated.—Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated—*c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*), *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*), *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-e-on*).

1. **T** loses the aspirate—(1) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; *O's-ti-a*, *At'-ti-us*, *mix'-ti-o*:—(2) in old infinitives in *ier*; *flec'-ti-er*:—(3) generally in proper names in *tion* (*tyon*); *Phi-lis'-ti-on*, *Am-phi-c'y-on*.

4. SYLLABLES.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-su'a'-de*, *men'-sae*.

14. In the division of words into syllables:

1. After a vowel (or diphthong), with the *Long Sound* (7), consonants are joined to the following vowel: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*.
2. After a vowel with the *Short Sound* (8),
 - 1) *A single or double consonant* is joined to such vowel, except after *i* unaccented: *gen'-e-ri*, *rex'-i*, *dom'-i-nus*.
 - 2) *Two consonants* are separated: *bel'-lum*, *men'-sa*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But *x* following a consonant is joined to the preceding syllable: *Xerrx'-es*.
 - 3) *Of three or more consonants*, the last, or, if a mute with *l* or *r*, the last two are joined to the following vowel: *emp'-tus*, *tem'-plum*, *claus'-tra*.
3. But compound words are separated into their component parts, if the first of those parts is entire, and ends in a consonant: *hos'-ce*, *post'-quam*.

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

15. The vowel sounds are the following:

LONG.	SHORT.
ä like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> : <i>ä'-ris</i> .	ă like <i>a</i> in <i>fast</i> : <i>ä'-mĕt</i> .
ĕ a made : <i>ĕ'-di</i> .	ĕ e net : <i>rĕ'-gĕt</i> .

LONG.

i like *e* in me : *i'-rī*.
ō *o* rode : *ō'-rās*.
ū *o* do : *ū'-nō*.

SHORT.

ī like *i* in divert : *vī'-dēt*.
ō *o* romance: *mō'-nēt*.
ū *u* full : *sū'-mūs*.

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound: *sunt*, *u* as in *sū'-mūs*.

2. **Y**, found only in Greek words, is in sound intermediate between the Latin *u* and *i*: *Ny'-să*.

3. **L**.—Between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and another vowel, *i* generally stands for *j*. It is then pronounced like *y* in *yet* (17): *A-chā'-īă* (*A-ka'-ya*).

4. **U**.—After *g*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *qui* (kwe), *lin'-guă* (*lin'-gwa*). So also in *cui*, *hui*, *hūc*, and sometimes after *s*: *sud'-dō-o* (*swa'-de-o*).

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

16. In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound :

ae (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (yes) : *men'-sae*.¹
au like *ow* in *how* : *vau'-să*.
oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin* : *foe'-dūs*.

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-tēr*.

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice :

c like *k* in king : *cē'-lēs* (*kalas*), *cī'-vī* (*kewe*).
g *g* get : *gē'-nūs*, *rē'-gis*.
j *y* yet : *jā'-cēt* (*yaket*), *jūs'-sūm*.
s *s* son : *sō'-cēr*, *sō'-rōr*.
t *t* time : *tī'-mōr*, *tō'-tūs*.
v *w* we : *vā'-dūm*, *vī'-cū*.

4. SYLLABLES.

18. In dividing words into syllables

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-rō*, *per-sud'-dē*, *men'-sae*.

¹ Combining the sounds of *a* and *ē*.

2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable:¹ *pō'-tōr, pō'-trēs, gō'-nō-ri, dō'-mī-nūs, nō'-scūl, si'-stīs, clau'-strā, men'-sā, bel'-lūm, jūs'-sūm, tem'-plūm, emp'-tūs*. But

3. Compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts is entire and ends in a consonant: *āb'-ēs, īb-i'-rō*.

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.²

21. LONG.—A syllable is long in quantity

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex, mons*.

22. SHORT.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *di'-ēs, vi'-ae, ni'-hil*.³

23. COMMON.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grī*.

1. The signs *~, ~, ** are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ā-grō-rūm*.

ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa*.

¹ By some grammarians a mute and a liquid are always joined to the following vowel, as also any combination of consonants which can begin a Greek word: *t'-gnīs, o'-mnīs, t'-psē*, but there is little evidence that the ancient Romans divided words in this way.

² Common, i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

³ No account is taken of the breathing *h* (2, 3).

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *Penult*¹ if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *Antepenult*:² *hō-nō'-rīs*, *con'-sū-līs*.

1. Genitives in *i* for *ii* and vocatives in *i* for *ie* retain the accent of the full form: *in-gō'-nī* for *in-ge'-ni-i*; *Mer-cū'-rī* for *Mer-cu'-ri-e*.

2. Penults common in quantity take the accent when used as long.

3. Compounds are accented like simple words; but

1) The enclitics, *quō*, *vō*, *nō*, throw back their accents upon the last syllable of the word to which they are appended: *hōm'-l-nō'-quō*, *men-sō'-quō*.

2) *Fācio*, compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *cōl-ē-fā'-cīt*.

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mōn'-u-ē'-runt*; *mōn'-u-ē-rd'-mūs*; *in-stau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

5. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hōn'-ō-rīf'-l-cen-ti's-tī-mūs*.

EUPHONIC LAWS.

26. Latin words have undergone important changes in accordance with certain euphonic laws.

I. CHANGES IN VOWELS.

27. Vowels are often lengthened, especially in compensation for the dropping of consonants: *servōm̄*, *servōb̄*; *rēgēm̄*, *rēgēb̄*.

28. Vowels are sometimes changed through the influence of the consonants which follow them. Thus *e* is the favorite vowel before *r*, *i* before *s*, *u* before *l*, especially before *l* followed by another consonant: *cīnīs*, *cīnērīs* for *cinisis* (35), ashes; *vult* for *volt*, he wishes.

1. **E** final is a favorite vowel: *servē* for *servo*, O slave: *mōnērē*, for *monēri*, for *monēris*, you are advised. See 34.

2. **E** is also a favorite vowel for *i*,

1) Before *x* or two or more consonants, especially in final syllables: *jūdex* for *judix*, judge; *mīlēs* for *mīlets*, soldier.

¹ In the subsequent pages the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

² Penult, the last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

EUPHONIC LAWS.

2) In accented syllables before *a*, *i*, *o*, or *u*: *ea* for *ia*, this; *eī* for *ii*, these; *eo* for *io*, I go; *eunt* for *iunt*, they go.

29. Vowels are sometimes shortened, regularly so in final syllables before *m* and *t*; *ērām* for *erām*, I was; *ērāt* for *erāt*, he was.

30. Vowels are often weakened, i. e., changed to weaker vowels, in consequence of the lengthening of the word by inflection, composition, etc.

The order of the vowels from the strongest to the weakest is as follows:

a, o, u, e, i:

conficio for *confacio*, I accomplish; *servūs* for *servos*, slave; *fructūs* for *fructibus*, with fruits; *carmīnīs* for *carmēnis*, of song.

1. Diphthongs are also sometimes weakened:

ae (for *ai*) to *I* or *ē*: *incidīt* for *incaedit*, he cuts into.

oe (for *oi*) to *ū* or *I*: *pūnīrē* for *poenire*, to punish.

au to *ū* or *ō*: *exclūdo* for *excludo*, to shut out.

31. Vowels are often dropped in the middle or at the end of words, sometimes even at the beginning: *tempūlūm*, *templūm*, temple; *pātēris*, *pātrīs*, of a father; *ānímālē*, *ānímāl*, an animal; *ērūm*, *sūm*, I am.

32. Two successive vowels are sometimes contracted

I. Into a DIPHTHONG: *mensā-ī*, *mensae*, tables.

II. More frequently into a LONG VOWEL. In this case the second vowel generally disappears. Thus *e* and *i* often disappear after *a*, *e*, and *o*; *āmāvērāt*, *ama-ē-rat*, *āmārāt*, he had loved; *āmāvissē*, *ama-isce*, *āmāssē*, to have loved. But

1. The first vowel disappears in the following endings:

1) In *a-is*, in Declension I.: *mensa-is*, *mensē*, with tables.

2) In *o-is*, and *o-i*, in Declension II.: *servo-is*, *servīs*, for slaves, *servo-i*, *servī*, slaves. But in the Dative Singular, *o-i* becomes *ō*; *servo-i*, *servō*, for the slave.

3) In *a-o* in Conjugation I.: *āmd-o*, *āmo*, I love.

2. *A-i* becomes *ē* in the Subjunctive of Conjugation I.: *āmd-īs*, *āmēs*, you may love.

3. *O-ō* becomes *ā* in neuters of Declension II.: *templo-ā*, *templā*, temples.

II. CHANGES IN CONSONANTS.

33. *S* uniting with a preceding *c* or *g* forms *x*: *dux* for *duce*, leader; *rex* for *regē*, king.

34. S final is often dropped: *mōnēr̄* for *monēri* for *monērie*, you are advised. See 28, 1.

35. S standing between two vowels is generally changed to *r*: *flōr̄es* for *flosces*, flowers.

36. D and t are generally dropped before *s*: *lāp̄ls* for *lapidis*, stone; *aet̄as* for *aetata*, age; *mil̄s* for *mileta*, *militis*, soldier.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

37. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cic̄ero*, Cicero; *Rōmā*, Rome; *dōmūs*, house.

1. A PROPER NOUN is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cic̄ero*; *Rōmā*.

2. A COMMON NOUN is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vīr*, a man; *ēquīs*, horse. Common nouns include

1) *Collective Nouns*—designating a collection of objects: *pōpūlūs*, people; *exercitūs*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*—designating properties or qualities: *virtūs*, virtue; *justitiā*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*—designating materials as such: *aurūm*, gold; *lignum*, wood; *āqua*, water.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders¹—*Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vīr*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months*: *Rhēnūs*, Rhine; *Nōtūs*, south wind; *Martiūs*, March.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mūliēr*, woman; *leaendā*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees*: *Aegyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, Delos; *pīrūs*, pear-tree.

III. NEUTERS.

1. *Indeclinable Nouns*: *fās*, right; *nīhūl*, nothing.

2. *Words and Clauses used as indeclinable nouns*: *tristē vālē*, a sad farewell.

43. REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. EXCEPTIONS.—The endings² of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus

1) The names of rivers—*Albūlā*, *Alliā*, *Lēthā*, *Styx*, and sometimes others, are feminine by ending.

2) Some names of *countries, towns, islands, trees*; and *animals*, take the gender of their endings. See 53, 1.

2. MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *cīvīlē*, citizen (man or woman); *bōs*, ox, cow.

3. EPICENE NOUNS have but one gender, but are used for both sexes. They apply only to the inferior animals, and usually take the gender of their endings: *ansēr*, goose, masculine; *āquīlā*, eagle, feminine.

¹ In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction according to grammatical rules.

² Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker ; the second, the person spoken to ; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

III. CASES.¹

45. The Latin has six cases :

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from, by, in, with</i> .

1. **OBLIQUE CASES.**—The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, are called the Oblique Cases.

2. **LOCATIVE.**—The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. STEM AND ENDINGS.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base called the stem.

1. **MEANING.**—Accordingly, each case-form contains two distinct elements—the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *reg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *reg*, the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. **CASES ALIKE.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative in neutrals* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

¹ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that *John* sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).¹

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS.—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows:

DEC.	STEM-ENDINGS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
I.	<i>a</i>	<i>ae</i>
II.	<i>o</i>	<i>i</i>
III.	<i>i</i> or consonant.	<i>is</i>
IV.	<i>u</i>	<i>ius</i>
V.	<i>e</i>	<i>ei</i>

1. The five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of inflection, as the case-endings are nearly identical in all nouns.

2. But these case-endings appear distinct and unchanged only in nouns of the Third Declension, while in all others they are seen only in combination with the final vowel of the stem.

X FIRST DECLENSION: A NOUNS.

**48. Nouns of the first declension end in
ā and ē,—feminine; ās and ēs,—masculine.²**

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>	<i>Case-Endings.</i>
		<i>a table,</i>	<i>ā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>of a table,</i>	<i>ae</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>to, for a table,</i>	<i>ae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mensām,</i>	<i>a table,</i>	<i>ām</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>O table,</i>	<i>ā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>with, from, by a table,</i>	<i>ā</i>

PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>tables,</i>	<i>ae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mensārūm,</i>	<i>of tables,</i>	<i>arūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mensāis,</i>	<i>to, for tables,</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mensās,</i>	<i>tables,</i>	<i>ās</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>O tables,</i>	<i>ae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mensās,</i>	<i>with, from, by tables.</i>	<i>is.</i>

¹ And in some nouns of Greek origin.

² That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *ae* and *ee* are masculine.

1. STEM.—In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in **a**.
2. In the PARADIGM, observe
 - 1) That the stem is *menſa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.
 - 2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.
 - 3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending **a** (47, 2), which disappears in the ending **is**, contracted from *a-is*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural. See 32, 1, 1).
3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *menſa* decline:

Ala, wing; *āqua*, water; *cauſa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.
4. LOCATIVE.—Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular in **ae**: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *militiae*, in war.
5. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.—*Hadria*, Adriatic Sea, is masculine; sometimes also *dāma*, deer, and *talpa*, mole. See also 43, 1.
6. ARTICLE.—The Latin has no article. A noun may therefore, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated either without any article, with **a** or **an**, or with *the*: *cōrōna*, crown, **a** crown, *the* crown.

49. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **As**, an old form for *ae*, in the Genitive of *fāmiliā*, in composition with *pāter*, *mātēr*, *filiūs*, and *filia*: *paterfamilias*, father of a family.
2. **AI** for the genitive ending *ae*, in the poets: *aulāi* for *aulae*, of a hall.
3. **Um** for *ārum* in the Gen. Plur.: *Dardāniūm* for *Dardanidārum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.
4. **Abūs**, the original form for *is*, in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., especially in *dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deūs*, god, and *filiūs*, son: *deabūs* for *deis*, to goddesses.

50. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **e**, **as**, and **es** are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows:

Epitōme, epitome. Aenēas, Aeneas. Pyrītes, pyrites.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> ἐπιτόμη	<i>Aenēas</i>	<i>pyritēs</i>
<i>G.</i> epitōmēs	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>D.</i> epitōmae	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>A.</i> epitōmēm	<i>Aenēām, ān</i>	<i>pyritēm</i>
<i>V.</i> epitōmē	<i>Aenēā</i>	<i>pyritē, ā</i>
<i>A.</i> epitōmē	<i>Aenēā</i>	<i>pyritē, ā</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> špítōmae		pýritae
<i>G.</i> epitomārūm		pyritārūm
<i>D.</i> epitōmīs		pyritīs
<i>A.</i> epitōmās		pyritās
<i>V.</i> epitōmae		pyritae
<i>A.</i> epitōmīs.		pyritīs.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe

- 1) That in the Plural and in the Dative Singular, Greek nouns are declined like *mensa*.
- 2) That the stem-ending *a* is changed into *e* in certain cases of nouns in *e* and *es*.
2. Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mensa*. Many in *e* have also a form in *a*; *epitōme*, *epitōma*, *epitome*.

SECOND DECLENSION: O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

~~är, ir, ūs, and os—masculine; ūm, and on—neuter.~~

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um*, are declined as follows:

Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> servūs	puěr	ägěr	templūm
<i>G.</i> servi	puěrl	ägrī	templī
<i>D.</i> servō	puěrō	agrō	templō
<i>A.</i> servūm	puěrūm	agrūm	templūm
<i>V.</i> servō	puěr	agēr	templūm
<i>A.</i> servō	puěrō	agrō	templō

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> servi	puěrl	ägrī	templā
<i>G.</i> servōrūm	puerōrūm	agrōrūm	templōrūm
<i>D.</i> servīs	puěrls	agrīs	templīs
<i>A.</i> servōs	puěrōs	agrōs	templā
<i>V.</i> servi	puěrl	agrī	templā
<i>A.</i> servīs.	puěrls.	agrīs.	templīs.

1. STEM.—In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in *o*.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe

1) That the stems are *servo*, *puero*, *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the stem-ending *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*, and *e* in *serve*,¹ that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a*, *i*, and *is* (for *o-a*, *o-i* and *o-is*),² and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *äger*.

¹ See 30, and 28, 1.

² See 32, II. 1 and 8.

3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending *o* (47, 2), are as follows:

SINGULAR.		
<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ūs, — ¹		ūm
<i>Gen.</i> I		I
<i>Dat.</i> ū		ō
<i>Acc.</i> ūm		ūm
<i>Voc.</i> ē, — ¹		ūm
<i>Abl.</i> ū		ō

PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> I		ā
<i>Gen.</i> ūrūm		ōrūm
<i>Dat.</i> Is		Is
<i>Acc.</i> ūs		ā
<i>Voc.</i> I		ā
<i>Abl.</i> Is.		Is.

4) That *puer* and *āger* differ in declension from *servus* in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.; Nom. *puer* for *puērus*, Voc. *puer* for *puēre*.

5) That *āger* inserts *e* before *r* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing.²

6) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 46, 2, 1).

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *SERVUS*: *dōmīnus*, master.—Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law.—Like *ĀGER*: *māgister*, master.—Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

4. NOUNS IN *er* AND *ir*.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *āger*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer*.

1) Nouns in *ir*: *vir*, *vīri*, man.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger*: *armīger*, *armīgēri*, armor-bearer; *signīfer*, *signīfēri*, standard-bearer.

3) *Adulter*, adulterer; *Celtīber*, Celtiberian;³ *gēner*, son-in-law; *Iber*, Spaniard;³ *Līber*, Bacchus; *lībēri*, children; *Mulcīber*, Vulcan;³ *presbīter*, elder; *sōcer*, father-in-law; *vesper*, evening.

5. DEUS.—Declined thus: Sing. *deūs*, *deī*, *deō*, *deūm*, *deūs*, *deō*: Plur. N. and V. *deī*, *dīs*, *dī*; G. *deōrūm*, *deūm*; D. and A. *deīs*, *dīs*, *dīs*, Acc. *deōs*.

¹ The endings of the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*.

² In *puer*, *e* belongs to the stem, and is accordingly retained in all the cases; but in *āger* it is inserted in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., as *agr* would be difficult to pronounce.

³ *Celtiber* and *Iber* have *e* long in the Gen., and *Mulciber* sometimes drops *e*.

6. LOCATIVE.—Names of Towns and a few other words have a Locative Singular in **I**: *Corinthi*, at Corinth; *Ephesi*, at Ephesus; *humi*, on the ground.

52. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **I** for *ii* by contraction in the Gen. Sing., without change of accent: *ingēni* for *inge'niī*, of talent.

2. **I** for *ie*, common in proper names in *iūs*, without change of accent: *Mercū'rī* for *Mercū'rie*, Mercury. Also in *fili* for *filiē*, son; *gōnī* for *gōnie*, guardian spirit.

3. **U**s for *e* in the Voc. of *deus*, god, rare in other words.

4. **Um** for *ōrūm*, common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure: *talentūm* for *talentōrum*, of talents; also in a few other words: *deūm* for *deōrum*; *libērūm* for *libērōrum*; *Argivūm* for *Argivōrum*.

53. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Feminine* :—(1) See 42, II., but observe that many names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, and *trees*, follow the gender of their endings. (2) Most names of gems and ships are feminine: also *alvus*, belly; *cardōsus*, sail; *cōlus*, distaff; *hūrus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve. (3) A few Greek feminines.

2. *Neuter* :—*pēlāgus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), common people.

54. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **os** and **on** are of Greek origin, and are declined in the singular as follows :

Delos, f.¹ *Delos*. **Androgeos**, *Androgeos*. **Ilion**, *Ilium*.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> Delōs	<i>Andrōgeōs</i>	<i>Iliōm</i>
<i>G.</i> Delī	<i>Androgeō, I</i>	<i>Iliī</i>
<i>D.</i> Delō	<i>Androgeō</i>	<i>Iliō</i>
<i>A.</i> Delōm	<i>Androgeōm, ɔ</i>	<i>Iliōm</i>
<i>V.</i> Delō	<i>Androgeōs</i>	<i>Iliōm</i>
<i>A.</i> Delō.	<i>Androgeō.</i>	<i>Iliō.</i>

1. The Plural of nouns in *os* and *on* is generally regular, but certain Greek endings occur, as *oe* in the Nom. Plur., and *ōn* in the Gen.

2. Most Greek nouns generally assume the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, and are declined like *servus* and *regnum*. Many in *os* or *on* have also a form in *us* or *um*.

3. Greek nouns in *eūs*. See 68 and 68, 1.

4. *Panthūs* has Voc. *Panthū*; *pēlāgus*, Acc. Plur., *pēlāgē*.

¹ M stands for *masculine*, F for *feminine*, and N for *neuter*.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes :

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **L**.¹

CLASS I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL : **B** or **P**.

Princeps, m., ²	<i>a leader, chief.</i>	Case-Endings.
----------------------------	-------------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> princeps,	<i>a leader,</i>	s
<i>G.</i> principis,	<i>of a leader,</i>	is
<i>D.</i> principi,	<i>to, for a leader,</i>	i
<i>A.</i> principēs,	<i>a leader,</i>	ēs
<i>V.</i> princeps,	<i>O leader,</i>	s
<i>A.</i> principēs,	<i>with, from, by a leader,</i>	ē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> principes,	<i>leaders,</i>	ēs
<i>G.</i> principium,	<i>of leaders,</i>	ūm
<i>D.</i> principibūs,	<i>to, for leaders,</i>	ibūs
<i>A.</i> principēs,	<i>leaders,</i>	ēs
<i>V.</i> principes,	<i>O leaders,</i>	ēs
<i>A.</i> principibūs,	<i>with, from, by leaders.</i>	ibūs.

1. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In this Paradigm observe

1) That the stem is *princep*, modified before an additional syllable to *princēp*. See 30 and 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are appended to the stem without change. See 47, 2.

2. VARIABLE RADICAL VOWEL.—In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *ē* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and that of *i* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*, *principis*, and *jūdex*, *jūdīcis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps*, the original form of the radical vowel is *e* and in *jūdex*, *i*. For a similar change in the radical vowel, see *mīlēs*, *mīlītis* (58) and *carmēn*, *carmīnis* (60). See also *ōpūs*, *ōpēris* (61).

¹ For Gender see 99–115.

² See foot-note p. 17.

3. In monosyllables in *ē* the stem ends in *i*. See *urēs*, 64.

4. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 86, 88.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: D OR T.

Lapis, m., *stone*. *Aetas*, f., *age*. *Miles*, m., *soldier*.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> lāpīs	aetās	mīlēs
<i>G.</i> lapīdīs	aetātīs	mīltīs
<i>D.</i> lapīdī	aetātī	mīltī
<i>A.</i> lapīdēm	aetātēm	mīltēm
<i>V.</i> lāpīs	aetās	mīlēs
<i>A.</i> lapīdē	aetātē	mīltē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> lapīdēs	aetātēs	mīltēs
<i>G.</i> lapīdīm	aetātīm	mīltīm
<i>D.</i> lapīdībūs	aetātībūs	mīltībūs
<i>A.</i> lapīdēs	aetātēs	mīltēs
<i>V.</i> lāpīdēs	aetātēs	mīltēs
<i>A.</i> lapīdībūs.	aetātībūs.	mīltībūs.

Nepos, m., *grandson*. *Virtus*, f., *virtue*. *Caput*, n., *head*.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> nēpōs	virtūs	cāpūt
<i>G.</i> nepōtīs	virtūtīs	capitīs
<i>D.</i> nepōtī	virtūtī	capitī
<i>A.</i> nepōtēm	virtūtēm	capūt
<i>V.</i> nēpōs	virtūs	cāpūt
<i>A.</i> nepōtē	virtūtē	capitē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capitē
<i>G.</i> nepōtīm	virtūtīm	capitīm
<i>D.</i> nepotībūs	virtutībūs	capitībūs
<i>A.</i> nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capitē
<i>V.</i> nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capitē
<i>A.</i> nepotībūs.	virtutībūs.	capitībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In these Paradigms observe

- 1) That the stems are *lāpīd*, *aetātī*, *mīltī*, *nēpōtī*, *virtūtī* and *cāpūtī*.
- 2) That *mīlēs* has the variable vowel, ē, ī, and *cāpūtī*, ī, ī. See 57, 2.
- 3) That the dental d or t is dropped before s: *lāpis* for *lapidis*, *aetās* for *aetatis*, *mīlēs* for *miles*, *virtūs* for *virtutis*. See 86.

4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter cāpūt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.

5) That the *neuter, cāpūt*, has no case-ending in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing., *š* in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur., and the case-endings of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

2. NEUTER STEMS IN *at* drop *t* in the Nom. Sing. and end in *š*: Nom., *poēma*, Gen., *poemātis*; Stem, *poēmat*. These nouns sometimes have *is* for *būs* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *poemātis* for *poemati**būs***.

3. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 69, 78-84.

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: C OR Č.

Rex, m., <i>king.</i>	Judex, m. & f., <i>judge.</i>	Radix, f., <i>root.</i>	Dux, m. & f., <i>leader.</i>
--------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> rex	jūdex	rādix	dux
<i>G.</i> rēgīs	judicīs	radicīs	dūcīs
<i>D.</i> regī	judicī	radicī	dūcī
<i>A.</i> regēm	judicēm	radicēm	dūcēm
<i>V.</i> rex	judex	radix	dux
<i>A.</i> regē	judicē	radicē	dūcē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> regēs	judicēs	radicēs	dūcēs
<i>G.</i> regēm	judicēm	radicēm	dūcēm
<i>D.</i> regēbūs	judicēbūs	radicēbūs	dūcēbūs
<i>A.</i> regēs	judicēs	radicēs	dūcēs
<i>V.</i> regēs	judicēs	radicēs	dūcēs
<i>A.</i> regēbūs.	judicēbūs.	radicēbūs.	dūcēbūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdēc*, *radēc* and *dūc*—*jūdēc* with the variable vowel—*i*, *ě*. See 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That *s* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem and forms *x*. See 38.

2. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION.—See NOUNS IN *X*: 92-98.

60. STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID: L, M, N, OR R.

Sol, m., <i>sun.</i>	Consul, m., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, m., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, m., <i>father.</i>
-------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> sōl	consūl	passēr	pātēr
<i>G.</i> solīs	consūlīs	passērīs	pātērīs
<i>D.</i> solī	consūlī	passērī	pātērī

<i>A.</i> solēm̄	consūlēm̄	passērēm̄	patrēm̄
<i>V.</i> sōl	consūl̄	passēr̄	patēr̄
<i>A.</i> solē	consūlē	passērē	patrē
PLURAL.			
<i>N.</i> solēs	consūlēs	passērēs	patrēs
<i>G.</i>	consūlēm̄	passērēm̄	patrēm̄
<i>D.</i> solibūs	consulibūs	passeribūs	patribūs
<i>A.</i> solēs	consūlēs	passērēs	patrēs
<i>V.</i> solēs	consūlēs	passērēs	patrēs
<i>A.</i> solibūs.	consulibūs.	passeribūs.	patribūs.

Pastor, m., Leo, m., Virgo, f., Carmen, n.,
shepherd. *lion.* *maiden.* *song.*

SINGULAR.			
<i>N.</i> pastōr	leo	virgo	carmēn
<i>G.</i> pastōrīs	leōnīs	virgōnīs	carmīnīs
<i>D.</i> pastōrī	leōnī	virgōnī	carmīnī
<i>A.</i> pastōrēm̄	leōnēm̄	virgōnēm̄	carmēn
<i>V.</i> pastōr	leo	virgo	carmēn
<i>A.</i> pastōrē	leōnē	virgōnē	carmīnē
PLURAL.			
<i>N.</i> pastōrēs	leōnēs	virgōnēs	carmīnēs
<i>G.</i> pastōrēm̄	leōnēm̄	virgōnēm̄	carmīnēm̄
<i>D.</i> pastōrībūs	leonibūs	virginibūs	carminibūs
<i>A.</i> pastōrēs	leōnēs	virgōnēs	carmīnēs
<i>V.</i> pastōrēs	leōnēs	virgōnēs	carmīnēs
<i>A.</i> pastōrībūs.	leonibūs.	virginibūs.	carminibūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *sōl*, *consūl*, *passēr*, *pātōr*, *pastōr*, *leōn*, *virgōn*, and *carmēn*.

2) That *virgo* (*virgōn*) has the variable vowel, ē, ī, and *carmēn*, ē, ī.

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. s, the usual case-ending for masc. and fem. nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastōr* shortens o, while *leōn* and *virgōn* drop n.

2. HIEMS, the only stem in m, takes s in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. Also *sanguīs* (for *sanguīns*), blood, and *Salāmīs* (for *Salāmins*), Salamis, which drop n before s.

3. PASSER, PATER.—Most nouns in er are declined like *passēr*, but those in ter, and a few others, are declined like *pātēr*. See 77, II.

4. LEO and VIRGO.—Most nouns in o are declined like *leo*, but those in do and go, with a few others, are declined like *virgo*. See 72 with exceptions.

5. FOUR STEMS IN ū change o to u. See 77, IV.

6. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 72, 75-77.

61. STEMS ENDING IN S.

Flos, m., flower.	Jus, n., right.	Opus, n., work.	Corpus, n., body.
----------------------	--------------------	--------------------	----------------------

SINGULAR.

N. flōs	jūs	ōpūs	corpūs
G. flōris	jūris	opērīs	corpōris
D. florī	jurī	opērī	corpōrī
A. florēm	jus	opūs	corpūs
V. flos	jus	opūs	corpūs
A. florē	jurē	opērē	corpōrē

PLURAL.

N. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
G. florūm	jurām	opērām	corpōrām
D. floribūs	juribūs	operibūs	corporibūs
A. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
V. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
A. floribūs.	juribūs.	operibūs.	corporibūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *flos*, *jus*, *ōpēs*, and *corpōs*.

2) That *ōpūs* has the variable vowel, ē, ī, and *corpūs*, ū, ū.

3) That s of the stem becomes r between two vowels: *flos*, *flōris* (for *flosis*). See 35.

4) That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 3).

2. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 79, 80, 82-84.

CLASS II.—I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN I.—Nouns in Is,—Abl. Sing. in I, or in ī or ū.

Tussis, f., cough.	Turris, f., tower.	Ignis, m., fire.	Case-Endings.
-----------------------	-----------------------	---------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. tussīs	turrīs	ignīs	īs
G. tussīs	turrīs	ignīs	īs
D. tussī	turrī	ignī	ī
A. tussīm	turrīm, īm	ignīm	īm, īm

<i>V.</i> <i>tussis</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>tussi</i>	<i>turri</i> , <i>ë</i>	<i>igni</i> , <i>ë</i>	<i>i</i> , <i>ë</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> <i>tusses</i>	<i>turres</i>	<i>ignes</i>	<i>ës</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>tussium</i>	<i>turriam</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>iëm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>tussibus</i>	<i>turribus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>ibüs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>tusses</i> , <i>is</i>	<i>turres</i> , <i>is</i>	<i>ignes</i> , <i>is</i>	<i>ës</i> , <i>is</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>tusses</i>	<i>turres</i>	<i>ignes</i>	<i>ës</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>tussibus</i> .	<i>turribus</i> .	<i>ignibus.</i>	<i>ibüs.</i>

I. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1. That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.
2. That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending *i*, which disappears in certain cases.
3. That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Acc. and Abl. Sing.

II. Like *TUSSIS*—Acc. *im*, Abl. *I*—are declined

1. *Buris*, plough-tail; *ravis*, hoarseness; *suis*, thirst.
2. In the Sing. (1) Names of *rivers* and *places* in *is* not increasing in the Gen.: *Tibëris*, *Hispälis*. See 629. (2) Greek nouns in *is*, G. *is*, and some others.

III. Like *TURRIS*—Acc. *im*, *ëm*; Abl. *I*, *ë*—are declined

Clavis, key; *fëbris*, fever; *messis*, harvest; *nëvis*, ship; *puppis*, stern; *restis*, rope; *sëcuris*, axe; *sëmentis*, seed-time; *strigilis*, strigil.

1. *Pare*, part, sometimes has *partim* in the Acc.
2. *Arëris* or *Arär*, the Saône, and *Ligër*, the Loire, have Acc. *im*, *ëm*, Abl. *I*, *ë*.

IV. Like *IGNIS*—Acc. *ëm*, Abl. *I*, *ë*—are declined

Amnis, river; *anguis*, serpent; *ëvis*, bird; *bilis*, bile; *civis*, citizen; *classis*, fleet; *collis*, hill; *finis*, end; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *unguis*, nail, and a few others.

1. Adjectives in *ër* and *is* used substantively have the Abl. generally in *I*: *Septembér*, *Septembrì*, September; ¹ *familiäris*, *familiäri*, friend. But adjectives used as proper names, and *jüvénis*, youth, have *ë*: *Jüvënälis*, *Juvenale*, Juvenal.

2. *Imbér*, storm; *rüs*, country; *sors*, lot; *sëpellex*, furniture; *vespér*, evening, and a few others, sometimes have the Abl. in *I*.

3. Many names of towns have a Locative in *I*: *Carthágini*, at Carthage; *Tibüri*, at Tibur. See 45, 2; 48, 4.

¹ Names of months are adjectives used substantively, with *mense*, month, understood.

63. STEMS ENDING IN L—Neuters in ē, al, and ar.

Mare,	Animal,	Calcar,	Case-Endings.
sea.	animal.	spur.	

SINGULAR.

N. mārē	ānīmāl	calcār	ē ²
G. marīs	animālīs	calcārīs	īs
D. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
A. marē	ānīmāl	calcār	ē ²
V. marē	ānīmāl	calcār	ē ²
A. marī ¹	animālī	calcārī	ī

PLURAL.

N. mariā	animālīā	calcārīā	īā
G. mariūm	animālīūm	calcārīūm	īūm
D. mariūbūs	animālībūs	calcārībūs	ībūs
A. mariā	animālīā	calcārīā	īā
V. mariā	animālīā	calcārīā	īā
A. mariūbūs.	animālībūs.	calcārībūs.	ībūs.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1) That the stem-ending i is changed to ē in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. of *māre*, and dropped in the same cases of *ānīmāl* (for *animale*) and *calcār* (for *calcare*). See 28, 1; 31.

2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending i.

2. The following have ē in the Abl. Sing.:—(1) Names of towns in ē; *Praeneste*.—(2) Nouns in al and ar with a *short ī* in Gen.: *sāl*, *sālē*, salt; *nectār*, *nectāre*, nectar.—(3) *Fār*, *farre*, corn.—(4) Generally *rētē*, net, and in poetry sometimes *māre*.

64. STEMS ENDING IN L—Nouns in īs, ēs, and s (x) preceded by a Consonant,—Abl. Sing. in ē.

Hostis, M. & F., Nubes, F.,	Urbs, F.,	Arx, F.,
enemy.	cloud.	city.

SINGULAR.

N. hostīs	nūbēs	urbs	arx ²
G. hostīs	nubīs	urbīs	arcīs

¹ Sometimes *māre* in poetry.

² The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

³ X in *arx=cs*,—c belonging to the stem, and s being the Nom. ending.

<i>D.</i> host <i>ī</i>	nub <i>ī</i>	urb <i>ī</i>	arc <i>ī</i>
<i>A.</i> hostē <i>m</i>	nubē <i>m</i>	urbē <i>m</i>	arcē <i>m</i>
<i>V.</i> hostē <i>s</i>	nubē <i>s</i>	urbē <i>s</i>	arcē <i>s</i>
<i>A.</i> hostē <i>ō</i>	nubē <i>ō</i>	urbē <i>ō</i>	arcē <i>ō</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> hostē <i>s</i>	nubē <i>s</i>	urbē <i>s</i>	arcē <i>s</i>
<i>G.</i> hostiū <i>m</i>	nublū <i>m</i>	urblū <i>m</i>	arcilū <i>m</i>
<i>D.</i> hostiū <i>būs</i>	nublū <i>būs</i>	urblū <i>būs</i>	arcilū <i>būs</i>
<i>A.</i> hostē <i>s, Is</i>	nubē <i>s, Is</i>	urbē <i>s, Is</i>	arcē <i>s, Is</i>
<i>V.</i> hostē <i>s</i>	nubē <i>s</i>	urbē <i>s</i>	arcē <i>s</i>
<i>A.</i> hostiū <i>būs.</i>	nublū <i>būs.</i>	urblū <i>būs.</i>	arcilū <i>būs.</i>

1. STEMS.—These Paradigms show a combination of *i*-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host*; *urbi, urb*; *aci, arc*. The *i*-stem appears especially in the endings of the Gen. and Acc. Plur. *iūm, ēs, Is*. The stem of *nubēs* seems to be *nūbēs, nūbi, nūb*.

65. ENDINGS *iūm, Is*.—Like the preceding Paradigms, the following classes of words have *iūm* in the Gen. Plur., and *is* with *ēs* in the Acc. Plur.

1. Most nouns in *ns* and *rs*:¹ *cliens, clientium, clientes, is*, client; *ars, artium, artes, is*, art; *cohors, cohortium, cohortes, is*, cohort.

2. Monosyllables in *s* and *īs* preceded by a consonant,² and a few in *s* and *īs* preceded by a vowel:³ *urbs, urbium, urbes, is*, city; *arx, arcium, arces, is*, citadel; *nox, noctium, noctes, is*, night.

3. Many nouns not increasing in the genitive:

1) Most nouns in *ēs* and *īs* not increasing:⁴ *nūbēs, nūbium, nūbes, is*, cloud; *āvis, avium, aves, is*, bird.

2) *Cāro*, flesh; *imbēr*, storm; *lintēr*, boat; *ūlēr*, leathern sack; *veniēr*, belly; and generally *Insūbēr*, Insubrian.

4. Many nouns in *ās* and *īs* (Plur. *ātēs* and *ītēs*). Thus

1) Names of nations: *Arpīnas, Arpīndīum, etc.; Samnis, Samnītīum, etc.*

2) *Optīmītes* and *Pēndītes*, and occasionally other nouns in *as*.

¹ Some of these often have *īm* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *pōrens*, parent, generally has.

² Except (*ops*) *ōpis* and the Greek nouns, *grype, lynx, sphynx*.

³ Namely, *faua, glīs, līs, mīs, nīs, noa, ūs* (oasis), *vīs*, generally *faua* and *mīs*.

⁴ But *cīnis, jūvēnis, strūs, vātes*, have *īm*; *āpis, mensis, sēdes, vōlūcris, īm* or *īm*; *compea, īm*.

66. SPECIAL PARADIGMS.

Sus, m. & f., Bos, m. & f., Nix, f., Senex, m., Vis, f.,
swine. *ox, cow.* *snow.* *old man.* *force.*

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i>	<i>sūs</i>	<i>bōs¹</i>	<i>nix</i>	<i>sēnēx</i>	<i>vīs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>sūls</i>	<i>bōvīs</i>	<i>nīvīs</i>	<i>senīs</i>	<i>vīs²</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>sūl</i>	<i>bovī</i>	<i>nīvī</i>	<i>senī</i>	<i>vī³</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>sučm</i>	<i>bověma</i>	<i>nivěma</i>	<i>seněm</i>	<i>vīma</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>sus</i>	<i>bos</i>	<i>nix</i>	<i>senex</i>	<i>vīs</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>suč</i>	<i>bovč</i>	<i>nivč</i>	<i>senč</i>	<i>vī</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i>	<i>sučs</i>	<i>bověs</i>	<i>nivěs</i>	<i>seněs</i>	<i>virěs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>sučma</i>	<i>{ bovīčma</i>	<i>nivīčma</i>	<i>senīčma</i>	<i>virīčma</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>{ sučbūs</i>	<i>{ bōlbūs¹</i>	<i>nivībūs</i>	<i>senībūs</i>	<i>virībūs</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>sučs</i>	<i>bověs</i>	<i>nivěs</i>	<i>seněs</i>	<i>virěs</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>sučs</i>	<i>bověs</i>	<i>nivěs</i>	<i>seněs</i>	<i>virěs</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>{ sučbūs</i>	<i>{ bōlbūs</i>	<i>nivībūs.</i>	<i>senībūs.</i>	<i>virībūs.</i>
	<i>{ sučbūs.</i>	<i>{ bōlbūs.</i>			

1. STEMS.—These are *su*; *bōv*; *nīg* (*nix* = nigs), *nīv*, *nīvi*; *sēnēc*, *sēn*; *vīs*, *vī* (sing.), *virī* (for *visi*, plur.). See 35.

2. Sus, and *grūs* (crane), the only u STEMS in this declension, are declined alike except in the Dat. and Abl. Pl., where *grūs* is regular: *grūbūs*.

3. JUPITER, *Jupiter*.—Declined thus: *Jūpīčr*, *Jōvīs*, *Jovī*, *Jověm*, *Jupīčr*, *Jovč*. STEMS *Jūpīčr* and *Jovč*.

67. CASE-ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> s— ³	— ³	īs, ēs, s	č— ³
<i>G.</i> īs	īs	īs	īs
<i>D.</i> ī	ī	ī	ī
<i>A.</i> ēm	—	īm, ēm	č—
<i>V.</i> s	—	īs, ēs, s	č—
<i>A.</i> č	č	ī, č	ī

¹ *Bōs*=*bova*, *bous*; *bōbūs*, *bubūs*=*bovībus*, *boubus*.

² The Gen. and Dat. Sing.—*vīs*, *vī*—are rare.

³ The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> ēs	š	ēs	iš
<i>G.</i> ūm	ūm	iūm	iūm
<i>D.</i> Ibūs	Ibūs	Ibūs	Ibūs
<i>A.</i> ēs	š	ēs, Is	iš
<i>V.</i> ēs	š	ēs	iš
<i>A.</i> Ibūs.	Ibūs.	Ibūs.	Ibūs.

1. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

- 1) *Ei*, for *i*, in the Dat. Sing.: *aerē* for *aeri*.
- 2) *Eia*, for *is*, in the Acc. Plur.: *cīveis* for *civis, cives*.
- 3) GREEK ENDINGS. See 68.

GREEK NOUNS.

68. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek. The following are examples:

Lampas, f., Phryx, m. & f., Heros, m., Case-Endings.
torch. *Phrygian.* *hero.*

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> lampās	Phryx	hērōs	s
<i>G.</i> lampādīs, ēs	Phrýgis, ēs	herōis	is, ēs
<i>D.</i> lampādī	Phrygi	herōi	i
<i>A.</i> lampādēs, š	Phrygēs, š	herōēs, š	ēs, š
<i>V.</i> lampās	Phryx	herōs	s
<i>A.</i> lampādē	Phrygē	herōē	ē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> lampādēs, ēs	Phryges, ēs	herōēs, ēs	ēs, ēs
<i>G.</i> lampādīs	Phrygīs	herōīs	ūm
<i>D.</i> lampādībēs	Phrygībēs	herōībēs	Ibūs
<i>A.</i> lampādēs, ēs	Phryges, ēs	herōēs, ēs	ēs, ēs
<i>V.</i> lampādēs, ēs	Phryges, ēs	herōēs, ēs	ēs, ēs
<i>A.</i> lampādībēs.	Phrygībēs.	herōībēs.	Ibūs.

Pericles, m., Paris, m., Dido, f., Orpheus, m.,
Pericles. *Paris.* *Dido.* *Orpheus.*

SINGULAR.¹

<i>N.</i> Pērīclēs	Pärīs	Didō	Orphēus ²
<i>G.</i> Periclēs, I	Parīdīs, ēs	Didūs, önkīs	Orph-ees, eī, I

¹ The Plural is of course wanting.

² *Ei* a diphthong in the Nom. and Voc.: *ei* sometimes a diphthong in the Gen. and Dat.

D. Pericli	Paridī	Didō, ònī	Orph-eī, I, eō
A. Periclēm, eā, òm	{ Paridēm, ā Parim, im	Didō, ònēm	Orpheā, eūm
V. Periclēs, ēs, ē	Parī	Didō	Orpheu
A. Periclē.	Paridē.	Didō, ònē.	Orpheō.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe that these paradigms fluctuate in certain cases,—(1) between the Latin and the Greek forms: *lampādīs*, ēs; *lampādēm*, ā; *hērōas*, ās,—(2) between different declensions: *PERICLES*, between Dec. I., *Periclēn*, *Periclē*, Dec. II., *Periclē* (Gen.), and Dec. III., *Periclēs*, etc.: *ORPHEUS*, between Dec. II., *Orphēt*, *Orphēt*, etc., and Dec. III., *Orpheōs*, etc.

2. NOUNS IN ūs have Gen. yōs, ūs, Acc. yōm, ūn: *Othrys*, *Othryōs*, *Othrym*, *Othryn*.

3. THE VOCATIVE SING. drops s,—(1) in nouns in eus, ūs and in proper names in ās, Gen. *antis*; *Atlas*, *Aīla*,—(2) generally in nouns in is and sometimes in other words; *Pātī*.

4. GENITIVE PLUR.—The ending òn occurs in a few titles of Books: *Mētāmorphōeēs* (title of a poem), *Metamorphoseōn*.

5. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLUR.—The ending sī, before vowels sīn, occurs in poetry: *Troādes*, *Troasin*.

6. A few neuters used only in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. have ūs in the Sing. and ē in the Plur.: *mēlōs*, *melē*, song.

SYNOPSIS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. NOUNS ENDING IN A VOWEL.

69. Nouns in ā :¹ Genitive in ātis : Stem in āt :
poēmā, *poem*, poemātis, poēmāt.

70. Nouns in ē : Genitive in īs : Stem in ī :
mārē, *sea*, māris, mārl.

71. Nouns in I :¹ Genitive in īs : Stem in ī :
sīnāpī, *mustard*, sīnāpis, sīnāpl.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. Itis,—compounds of mēli: *oxymēlli*, *oxymēltis*, *oxymel*.

2. Many nouns in i are indeclinable.

72. Nouns in ū : Genitive in ūnis : Stem in ūn :
leo, *lion*, leōnis, leōn.

¹ These are of Greek origin.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ōnis** :—most national names: *Măcădo*, *Macedōnis*, Macedonian.
 2. **īnis**:¹—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, man; *nēmo*, nobody; *turbo*, whirlwind; and nouns in *do* and *go*: *grando*, *grandīnis*, hail; *virgo*, *virgīnis*, maiden; except—*harpāgo*, *ōnis*; *līgo*, *ōnis*; *praedo*, *ōnis*, also *cōmēdo*, *cūdo*, *mango*, *spādo*, *ūnēdo*, *ūdo*.
 3. **nis** :—*cōro*, *carnis* (for *carñis*¹), flesh. See 65, 8, 2).
 4. **ēnis** :—*Anio*, *Aniēnis*, river Anio; *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*.
 5. **īs** :—few Greek feminines: *Dīdo*, *Didūs*. See 68.

73. Nouns in **y'**: Gen. in **yis** (yos, ūs) : Stem in **ȳ** :
m̄sy, copperas, misyis (yos, ys), *misy.*

II. NOUNS ENDING IN A MUTE OR LIQUID.

74. Nouns in **c**: only *ālēc*, *alēcis*, pickle; *lāc*, *lactis*, milk.

75. Nouns in 1: Genitive in lis: Stem in 1:

1. *Fel, fells, gall*; *mel, mellis, honey*.
 2. Neuters in *äl*: Genitive in *älis*: Stem in *älly*:

<i>änymäl animal</i>	<i>animälis</i>	<i>animäly</i>
----------------------	-----------------	----------------

76. Nouns in n :	Genitive in nis :	Stem in n :
paeān, <i>paeān</i> ,	paeānis,	paeān.
flūmēn, <i>stream</i> .	flūmēnis.	flūmēn. <i>fn.</i>

1. Nouns in ὄν have the variable radical vowel—ά, ι, υ. See 60, 1, 2).
 2. There are a few Greek words in ὄν, Gen. in ὄνις, ontis, St. in ὄν, ont: *aedōn*, *aedōnis*, nightingale; *Xenōphōn*, *Xenophontis*, Xenophon.

77. Nouns in **r**: Genitive in **ris**: Stem in **r**:
carcēr, *prison*, carcēris, carcēr.

- I. Nouns in *ar*: (1) *är*, G. *äris*, St. *äri*; *calcär*, *calcäris*, spur; but a few have G. *äris*, St. *är*; *nectär*, *nectäris*, nectar: (2) *är*, G. *äris*, St. *äri*; *lär*, *läris*, house; *pär*, *päris*, pair: (3) *Fär*, *farris*, corn; *hëpär*, *hepäris*, liver.

II. Nouns in **er**. Some drop **e** in the Genitive.

1. Those in *ter*: *páter*, *patris*, father; except *láter*, *latrís*, tile; *čér*, *itinéris*, way; *Júpíter*, *Jövis*, and Greek nouns; *cráter*, *craltris*, bowl.

2. *Imbér* and names of months in *bér*: *imbér*, *imbris*, shower; *Sep-tembér*, *Septembritis*, September.

¹ Stem in *ōn*, *īn*. See 60, 1, 2).

² Nouns in γ are of Greek origin, and are often indeclinable.

III. Nouns in **ōr**: G. **ōris**, St. **ōr**: *pastor, pastōris*, shepherd; but a few have G. **ōris**, St. **ōr**: *arbor, arbōris*, tree; *aequor, aequor*, sea; *marmor, marmor*, marble. But *cōr, cordis*, heart.

IV. Four in **ūr**: G. **ōris**, St. **ōr**; *ēbur, ēbur*, ivory; *fēmur, fēmur*, thigh; *jēcur, jēcur*, liver; *rōbur, rōbur*, strength; but *fēmur* has also *femīnis*, and *jēcur, jecīnōris, jecīnōris*, and *jōcīnōris*.

78. Nouns in ūt: Genitive in **ūtis**: Stem in **ūt**, **It**:
cāpūt, head, **caplītis,** **capūt, It.**

III. NOUNS ENDING IN **s** PRECEDED BY A VOWEL.

79. Nouns in as: Genitive in **ātis**: Stem in **āt**:
aetās, age, **aetātis,** **aetāt.**

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ātis** :—*ānās, anātis*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns.
2. **ādis** :—*vās, vādis*, surety; *Arcās, Arcadian*, and fem. Greek nouns;¹ *lampās, lampādis*, torch.
3. **āris** :—*mās, māris*, a male;—stem, *mās, māri*. See 35.
4. **āsis** :—*vās, vāsis*, vessel.²
5. **assis** :—*as, assis*, an as (a coin).
6. **antis** :—only masc. Greek nouns; *ādāmās, antis*, adamant.

80. Nouns in ēs: Genitive in **is**: Stem in **i**:³
nūbēs, cloud, **nubis,** **nubi.**

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **edis** :—(1) **ēdis**: *hēres, herēdis*, heir; *merces, merces*, reward.—(2) **ēdis**: *pes, pēdis*, foot.
2. **aedis** :—*praeis, praedēs*, surety.
3. **ēris** :—*Cērēs, Cerēris*.⁴
4. **aeris** :—*aes, aeris*, copper.⁴
5. **etis** :—(1) **ētis**: *quies, rest*, with compounds, *inqüies, rēquies*, and a few Greek words: *lēbes, lāpes*.—(2) **ētis**: *ābies, fir-tree; āries, ram; pāries, wall.*
6. **essis** :—*bes, bessis*, two-thirds.

81. Nouns in ēs: Genitive in **ītis**: Stem in **ēt**, **It**:
milēs, soldier, **milītis,** **milēt, It.**

¹ Greek nouns sometimes have *ddōs* for *ddis*.

² *Vās* is the only stem in *s* which does not change *s* to *r* between two vowels. See 61, 1, 8).

³ But see 64, 1.

⁴ See 61, 1, 8).

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ōtis* :—*interpres*, interpreter; *s̄ges*, crop; *t̄ges*, covering.
2. *īdis* :—*obes*, hostage; *præses*, president. See 57, 2.

82. Nouns in *is*: Genitive in *is*: Stem in *I*:

<i>āvls</i> , <i>bird</i> ,	<i>avis</i> ,	<i>avī</i> .
-----------------------------	---------------	--------------

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ōris* :—*cīn̄is*, *cīn̄ris*,¹ ashes; *cūcūmis*, cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vōm̄s*, ploughshare.
2. *īdis* :—*cōp̄s*, cup; *cassis*, helmet; *cuspis*, spear; *līpis*, stone; *prōmulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek² words: as *t̄yrannis*, *īdis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ībis*, and *tigris*.
3. *īnis* :—*poll̄s* or *poll̄ēn*, flour; *sanguis*, blood.
4. *īris* :—*gl̄s*, *gl̄ris*,³ dormouse.
5. *īssis* :—*sem̄is*, *semīsis*, half an as: stem, *semīss̄*, *semīss*.
6. *ītis* :—*līs*,⁴ strife; *Dis*, *Quīris*, *Samnis*.

83. Nouns in *ōs*: Genitive in *ōris*: Stem in *ōs*:

<i>mōs</i> , <i>custom</i> ,	<i>mōris</i> ,	<i>mōs</i> .
------------------------------	----------------	--------------

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ōtis* :—*cos*, *cōtis*, whetstone; *dos*, dowry; *n̄pos*, grandson; *sacerdos*, priest; and a few Greek words.
2. *ōdis* :—*custos*, *custōdis*, guardian. See 36.
3. *ōis* :—a few masc. Greek nouns: *hēros*, hero; *Mīnos*, *Tros*.
4. *ōris* :—*arbōs* or *arbōr*, tree.
5. *ōssis* :—*ōs*, *ossis*, bone: stem, *ossi*, *oss*.
6. *ōvis* :—*bōs*, *bōvis*, ox. See 66.

84. Nouns in *us*: Genitive in *ōris* or *ōris*: Stem in *ōs* or *ōs*.

I. *ōris* :—*lātūs*, *latōris*, side: stem, *līt̄s*. So also: *ācūs*, *foedus*, *fūnus*, *gēnus*, *glōmus*, *mūnus*, *ōlus*, *ōnus*, *ōpus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scōlus*, *sīdus*, *ulcus*, *Vēnus*, *viscus*, *vulnus*.

II. *ōris* :—*corpōs*, *corpōris*, body: stem, *corpōs*. So also *dēcūs*, *dēdēcus*, *fācīnus*, *fēnus*, *frīgus*, *lēpus*, *lītus*, *nōmūs*, *pectus*, *pēcūs*, *pēnus*, *pīgnus*, *sterēsus*, *tempus*, *tergus*.

¹ Stem *cīn̄is*, *cīn̄er* for *cīn̄es* with variable vowel *i*, *ē*. See 28, 85, and 57, 2.

² Greek nouns sometimes have *īdos* or even *ōs* for *īdis*; *Sālāmīs* has *Sālāmīnis*; *Simōts*, *Simōntis*.

³ Stem *gl̄s*, *gl̄ri* for *gl̄si*, 85.

⁴ Stem *līt̄*, *līt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ūris* :—(1) *ūris* : *crūs*, leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, soup; *mus*, mouse; *pus*, pus; *rūs*, country; *tus* (thus), incense; *tellus*, earth.
—(2) *ūris* : *Līgūs*, *Līgūris*, Ligurian. See 61.
2. *ūtis* :—*jūventūs*, youth; *sālus*, safety; *sēnectus*, old age; *servitūs*, servitude; *virtus*, virtue. See 36.
3. *ūdis* :—(1) *ūdis* : *incūs*, anvil; *pālūs*, marsh; *subscus*, dovetail.—
(2) *ūdis* : *pēcūs*, *pecūdis*, a head of cattle.
4. *audis* :—*fraus*, *fraudis*, fraud; *laus*, praise. See 65, 2, foot-note.
5. *uis* :—*grūs*, *gruis*, crane; *eūs*, swine.
6. *untis* :—a few Greek names of places: *Tr̄pezūs*, *untis*.
7. *ōdis* :—Greek compounds in *pūs*: *tr̄pūs*, *tripōdis*, tripod.
8. *eos* :—Greek nouns in *eūs*, when of this declension. See 68.

85. Nouns in **ÿs**:¹ Gen. in **yis**, **yoſ**, **ÿs**: Stem in **ÿ**:
Othrys, Othryos, Othrÿ.

IV. NOUNS ENDING IN **S** PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

86. Nouns in **bs**: Genitive in **bis**: Stem in **bi**:²
urbs, *city*, urbis, urbi.

87. Nouns in **ms**: Genitive in **mis**: Stem in **m**:
hiems, *winter*, hiēmis, hiēm.

88. Nouns in **eps**: Genitive in **ipis**: Stem in **ep**, **ip**.
princeps, *prince*, princ̄pis. princ̄ep, ip.

1. But *aueps*, *aucūpis*, fowler.

2. Other nouns in **ps** retain the stem-vowel unchanged: *mērops*, *merōpis*, bee-eater.

3. *Gryps*, *gryphis*, griffin.

89. Nouns in **ls**: Genitive in **ltis**: Stem **lti**:
puls, *broth*, pultis, pulti.

90. Nouns in **ns**: Genitive in **ntis**: Stem in **nti**:³
mens, *mind*, mentis, menti.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

dis :—*frons*, *frondis*, leaf; *glans*, acorn; *jūglans*, walnut. See 65, 2.

¹ These are of Greek origin; a few of them have **ÿds**: *chīdmys*, *chlamÿdis*, cloak.

² Disyllables have the stem in **b**.

³ Disyllables have the stem in **t**.

91. Nouns in rs : Genitive in rtis : Stem in rti :
ars, art. artis, arti.

V. NOUNS ENDING IN X.

92. Nouns in **ax**: Genitive in **ācis**: Stem in **āc**:
pax, peace, pācis, pāc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ācis* :—*fax, flcis*, torch ; and a few Greek nouns.
 2. *actis* :—a few Greek names of men : *Astyānax*.

93. Nouns in **ex**: Genitive in **Icis**: Stem in **Ic**, **ęc**:
jūdex, *judge*, judicis, judic, *etc.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

- EXCEPTIONS.** — *See* **Notes**.

 1. **ecis** :—(1) *ēcis*: *alex*, pickle; *vervez*, wether.—(2) *ēcis*: *nex*, murder; *fēnīsex*, mower.
 2. **aecis** :—*faex*, *faccis*, lees.
 3. **egis** :—(1) *ēgis*: *lez*, law; *rez*, king, and their compounds.—(2) *ēgis*: *grex*, flock; *āquilex*, water-inspector.
 4. **ectilis** :—*sūpellex*, *sūpellectilis*, furniture.¹
 5. **igis** :—*rēmex*, *remigis*, rower. See 28, 2, 1).
 6. **is** :—*sōnēx*, *sēnis*, old man. See 66, 1.

94. Nouns in ix: Genitive in Ic is : stem in Ic :
rādix, root, radicis, radic.

Exceptions.—Genitive in

1. **Icis**—*appendix*, appendix; *cālix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *pix*, pitch; *sālix*, willow, and a few others.
 2. **Igis**—*strix*, screech-owl; and a few Gallic names: *Dumnōrix*, *Orgētōrix*.
 3. **Ivis**—*nix*, *nōvis*, snow. See 66.

95. Nouns in **ox**: only *vox*, *vōcis*, voice; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

There are also a few national names in ox, Gen. in ḥcis or ḥgis. Cappādoz, Cappadōcīs; Allōbrox, Allobrōgīs.

96. Nouns in **ux**: Genitive in **ūcis**: Stem in **ūc**:
dux, *leader*, dūcis, dūc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **lūcīs** := *lux, lūcis*, light; *Pollux*.

¹ Stem, *sūpellec*, *sūpellectūl*.

2. *aucis* :—*faux* (def.) *faucis*, throat.

3. *ugis* :—(1) *ūgis* : *frux*, *frūgis*, fruit.—(2) *ūgis* : *conjux*, *conjūgīs*, spouse.

97. Nouns in **yx** : from the Greek, variously declined : *Eryx*, *Erȳcis*, Eryx ; *bombyx*, *bombȳcis*, silkworm ; *Styx*, *Stȳgis*, Styx ; *coccyx*, *coccȳgis*, cuckoo ; *onyx*, *onȳchīs*, onyx.

98. Nouns in **x** preceded by a consonant :

Genitive in **cis** : Stem in **cī** :

arx, *citadel*, *arcis*, *arcī*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

glis :—A few Greek nouns : *phālanx*, *phalangis*, phalanx.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns of the Third Declension in

o, **or**, **os**, **er**, and **es** increasing in the genitive,¹

are masculine : *sermo*, discourse ; *dōlōr*, pain ; *mōs*, custom ; *aggēr*, mound ; *pēs*, genitive *pēdis*, foot.

100. EXCEPTIONS IN **O**.—*Feminine*, viz. :

1. Nouns in **o**, Gen. *īnis*, except *cardo*, *ordo*, *turbo*, masc., *cūpido* and *margo*, masc. or fem.

2. *Cāro*, flesh, and the Greek *Argo*, echo, an echo.

3. Most abstract and collective nouns in **io** : *rātio*, reason ; *concio*, an assembly.

101. EXCEPTIONS IN **OR**:

1. *Feminine* :—*arbōr*, tree.

2. *Neuter* :—*ādōr*, spelt ; *aequor*, sea ; *cor*, heart ; *marmor*, marble.

102. EXCEPTIONS IN **OS**:

1. *Feminine* :—*arbōs*, tree ; *cos*, whetstone ; *dos*, dowry ; *ēos*, dawn.

2. *Neuter* :—*ōs*, mouth ; *ōs*, bone ; and a few Greek words : *chaos*.

103. EXCEPTIONS IN **ER**:

1. *Feminine* :—*lintēr*, boat (sometimes masc.).

2. *Neuter* :—(1) *cādāvēr*, corpse ; *ūer*, way ; *tūber*, tumor ; *über*, udder ; *vēr*, spring ; *verber*, scourge,—(2) botanical names in **er**, Gen. *ēris* : *ācēr*, maple-tree ; *pāpāver*, poppy.

¹ That is, having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.

104. EXCEPTIONS IN ES:

1. *Feminine* :—*compēs*, fetter; *mercēs*, reward; *mergēs*, sheaf; *quiēs*, rest (with its compounds); *sēgēs*, crop; *tēgēs*, mat; sometimes *alēs*, bird, and *quādrūpēs*, quadruped.
2. *Neuter* :—*aes*, copper.

105. Nouns of the Third Declension in as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive, and s preceded by a consonant,

are feminine : *aetās*, age ; *nāvīs*, ship ; *chlāmīs*, cloak ; *pax*, peace ; *nūbēs*, cloud ; *urbs*, city.

106. EXCEPTIONS IN AS:

1. *Masculine* :—*ās*, an as (a coin), *vās*, surety, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *antis*.
2. *Neuter* :—*vās*, vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *ātis*.

107. EXCEPTIONS IN IS AND VS.—Masculine:

1. Nouns in *ālis*, *ollis*, *cis*, *mis*, *nis*, *guis*, *quis* : *nātālis*, birthday ; *ignis*, fire ; *sanguis*, blood. But a few of these are occasionally feminine : *cānīs*, *amnis*, *cīnis*, *fīnis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axīs*, axle ; *būris*, plough-tail ; *callīs* (f.), path ;¹ *ensis*, sword ; *lāpis*, stone ; *mensis*, month ; *orbīs*, circle ; *postis*, post ; *pulvis*, dust ; *sentīs*, brier ; *torris*, brand ; *vectīs*, lever,² and a few others.
3. Names of mountains in *ys* : *Othrīs*.

108. EXCEPTIONS IN X.—Masculine:

1. Greek masculines : *cōraz*, raven ; *thōraz*, cuirass.
2. Nouns in *ex* and *unx* ; except the feminines : *faex*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, (prep.) *sūpellex*.
3. *Cūlix*, cup ; *fornix*, arch ; *phoenīx*, phoenix ; *trādux*, vine-layer, and a few nouns in *yx*.
4. Sometimes : *calx*, heel ; *calx*, lime ; *lynx*, a lynx.

109. EXCEPTIONS IN ES:

1. *Masculine* :—*ācīnācēs*, cimeter ; sometimes *pālumbēs*, dove ; and *vēprēs*, thorn-bush.
2. *Neuter* :—a few Greek nouns : *cācoēlēs*, desire ; *hippōmānēs*, hippocmane.

110. EXCEPTIONS IN S PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.—Masculine:

1. *Dens*, tooth ; *fons*, fountain ; *mons*, mountain ; *pons*, bridge ; generally *ādēps*, fat, and *rīdens*, cable.

¹ Sometimes feminine.

² For nouns in *is* masculine by signification, see 62, I.

2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masc. noun understood: *ōriens* (sol), east; *confluens* (amnis), confluence; *tridens* (raster), trident; *quadrans* (ās), quarter.
3. *Chālybs*, steel; *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few other Greek words.
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpens*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *An̄mans*, animal, is masc., fem., or neuter.

111. Nouns of the Third Declension in

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us,

are neuter: *poēmū*, poem; *mārē*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *ān̄imāl*, animal; *carmēn*, song; *cāpūt*, head; *corpūs*, body.

112. EXCEPTIONS IN L AND AR.—*Masculine*:

Mugīl, mullet; *sōl*,¹ salt; *sōl*, sun; *lār*, hearth; *sālār*, trout.

113. EXCEPTIONS IN N:

1. *Masculine*:—*peclēn*, comb; *rēn*, kidney; *liēn*, spleen; and Greek masculines in *an*, *en*, *in*, *on*: *paeōn*, paean; *cīnōn*, rule.
2. *Feminine*:—*aēdōn*, nightingale; *alcyōn* (halcyon), kingfisher; *icōn*, image; *sindōn*, muslin.

114. EXCEPTIONS IN UR.—*Masculine*:

Furfür, bran; *turtür*, turtle-dove; *vultür*, vulture.

115. EXCEPTIONS IN US:

1. *Masculine*:—*lēpūs*, hare; *mūs*, mouse; and Greek nouns in *pus*.
2. *Feminine*:—*tellūs*, earth; *frau*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in *us*, Gen. *utis* or *udis*: *virtūs*, virtue; *pālūs*, marsh.

FOURTH DECLENSION: U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

ūs,—*masculine*; ū,—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .	Cornu, <i>horn</i> .	Case-Endings.
-------------------------	----------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
G. fructūs	cornūs	ūs	ūs
D. fructūl	cornū	ūl	ū
A. fructūm	cornū	ūm	ū
V. fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
A. fructū	cornū	ū	ū

¹ Sometimes *neuter* in the singular.

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> fructus	cornu <u>ā</u>	ūs	uă
<i>G.</i> fructu <u>ūm</u>	cornu <u>ūm</u>	u <small>ūm</small>	u <small>ūm</small>
<i>D.</i> fructib <u>ūs</u>	cornib <u>ūs</u>	ib <u>ūs</u> (<u>ūbūs</u>)	ib <u>ūs</u> (<u>ūbūs</u>)
<i>A.</i> fructus	cornu <u>ā</u>	ūs	uă
<i>V.</i> fructus	cornu <u>ā</u>	ūs	uă
<i>A.</i> fructib <u>ūs.</u>	cornib <u>ūs.</u>	ib <u>ūs</u> (<u>ūbūs</u>). ib <u>ūs</u> (<u>ūbūs</u>).	ib <u>ūs</u> (<u>ūbūs</u>).

1. STEM.—In nouns of the Fourth Declension the stem ends in ū: *fructū, cornū*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS.—The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending ū, weakened to ī in ibūs, but retained in ūbūs. See 80.

117. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. Ubūs for ibūs, used regularly in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of *Acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; *artus*, joint; *lacus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *pēcu*, cattle; *quercus*, oak; *spēcus*, den; *tribus*, tribe; *vēru*, spit: occasionally in a few other words, as *portus*, *sīnus*, and *tōnītrus*.
2. Uīs, the uncontracted form for us, in the Gen.: *fructīs* for *fructus*.
3. U for ui, in the Dat. by contraction: ī*quīlatū* for *equitatui*, cavalry.

118. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Feminine* :—(1) *ācus*, needle; *cōlus*, distaff; *dōmus*, house; *mānus*, hand; *portīcus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe,—(2) *īdus*, ides; *Quin-quātrūs*, feast of Minerva; generally *pēnus*, store, when of this decl.; rarely *spēcus*, den,—(3) see 42, II.

2. *Neuter* :—*sēcūs* (*sexus*), sex; rarely, *spēcus*, den.

119. SECOND AND FOURTH DECLENSIONS.—Some nouns are partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second.

1. *Dōmus*, *P.*, house, has a Locative form *domī*, at home, and is otherwise declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> dōmūs	dōmūs
<i>G.</i> domūs	domu <u>ūm</u> , domōrūm
<i>D.</i> domūl (domō)	domib <u>ūs</u>
<i>A.</i> domūm	domōs, domūs
<i>V.</i> domūs	domūs
<i>A.</i> domō (domū)	domib <u>ūs</u> .

2. Certain names of trees in us, as *cupressus*, *fīcus*, *laurus*, *pīnus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in us and u: *N.* *laurus*, *G.* *laurus*, *D.* *lauro*, *A.* *laurum*, *V.* *laurus*, *A.* *lauru*, &c. So also *cōlus*, distaff.

8. A few nouns, especially *sénatus* and *túmulus*, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the genitive ending *i* of the second: *senáti*, *tumulti*.

FIFTH DECLENSION: E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*,—*femine*, and are declined as follows :

Dies, day.	Res, thing.	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>G.</i> diēi	rēi	eī
<i>D.</i> diēi	rēi	eī
<i>A.</i> diēm	rēm	ēm
<i>V.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>A.</i> diē	rē	ē
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>G.</i> diērūm	rērūm	ērūm
<i>D.</i> diēbūs	rēbūs	ēbūs
<i>A.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>V.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>A.</i> diēbūs.	rēbūs.	ēbūs.

1. STEM.—The stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ē*: *die*, *re*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS.—The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending *ē*, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) in the ending *eī*, when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *ēm*.

3. IRREGULAR ENDINGS:—*ē* or *i* for *eī* in the Gen. and Dat.: *ācie* for *acīci*; *pernīcīi* for *pernīcīēi*.

4. DEFECTIVE.—Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur., and many admit no plural whatever.

121. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.—MASCULINE: *Dies*, day, and *mēridies*, mid-day, though *dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

122. The Five Declensions, which are only varieties of one general system of inflection, have been produced by the union of the different final letters of the stem with the following:

CASE-ENDINGS FOR ALL NOUNS.

		SINGULAR.	
		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>s</i> —		<i>m</i> —
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ls</i> , <i>l¹</i>		<i>ls</i> , <i>l</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>l</i>		<i>l</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>m</i> , <i>ěm</i> ²		<i>m</i> —
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>s</i> —		<i>m</i> —
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>d</i> , <i>ěd</i> ³		<i>d</i> , <i>ěd</i>
		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ss</i> , <i>l⁴</i>		<i>š</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>úm</i> , <i>rúm</i> ¹		<i>úm</i> , <i>rúm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bús</i> , <i>lbús</i> , <i>ls</i> ⁴		<i>bús</i> , <i>lbús</i> , <i>ls</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ms</i> , <i>ems</i> ²		<i>š</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ss</i> , <i>I</i>		<i>š</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bús</i> , <i>lbús</i> , <i>ls</i> ⁴ .		<i>bús</i> , <i>lbús</i> , <i>ls</i> .

123. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems so as to produce the five declensions may be seen in the following

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF DECLENSIONS.

I. Mensa.	II. Servo.	III. Reg.	IV. Fructu.	V. Re.
SINGULAR.				
<i>N.</i> { <i>mensa-</i>	<i>servo-s</i>	<i>reg-s</i>	<i>fructu-s</i>	<i>re-s</i>
{ <i>mensā</i>	<i>servūs</i>	<i>rex</i>	<i>fructūs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>G.</i> { <i>mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-is</i>	<i>fructu-is</i>	<i>re-i</i>
{ <i>mensae</i>	<i>servI</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>fructūs</i>	<i>rēl</i>
<i>D.</i> { <i>mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-i</i>	<i>fructu-i</i>	<i>re-i</i>
{ <i>mensae</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>regI</i>	<i>fructul</i>	<i>rēl</i>
<i>A.</i> { <i>mensa-m</i>	<i>servo-m</i>	<i>reg-em</i>	<i>fructu-m</i>	<i>re-m</i>
{ <i>mensām</i>	<i>servūm</i>	<i>reg-ěm</i>	<i>fructūm</i>	<i>rēm</i>
<i>V.</i> { <i>mensa-</i>	<i>servo-</i>	<i>reg-s</i>	<i>fructu-s</i>	<i>re-s</i>
{ <i>mensā</i>	<i>servě</i> ⁵	<i>rex</i>	<i>fructūs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>A.</i> { <i>mensa-d</i>	<i>servo-d</i>	<i>reg-ed</i>	<i>fructu-d</i>	<i>re-d</i>
{ <i>mensā</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>regě</i>	<i>fructū</i>	<i>rē</i>

¹ The endings *i* and *rūm* are used with stems in *a*, *o*, and *e*; *is* and *im* with other stems.

² The endings *m* and *me* are used with vowel stems, *ěm* and *ems* (with connecting vowel *ě*) with consonant stems. The plural endings *ms* and *ems* are formed by adding *s* to the singular. *M* is then dropped, and the preceding vowel is lengthened in compensation; hence *de*, *de*, *de*, etc. See 27.

³ The ending *d* was originally used with vowel stems, and *ěd* (with connecting vowel *ě*) with consonant stems. *D* was afterwards dropped, and the preceding vowel, if short, was lengthened, except *ě* in Dec. III., which was only a connecting vowel.

⁴ The endings *i* and *is* are used with stems in *a* and *o*; *ěi* with other stems; *běs* with stems in *u* and *e*; *lběs* (with connecting vowel *ě*) with consonant stems.

⁵ Nouns in *ue* of Dec. II. change the stem-vowel *o* into *e*.

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i>	<i>{ mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-es</i>	<i>fructu-es</i>	<i>re-es</i>
	<i>mensae</i>	<i>servi</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>fructūs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>{ mensa-rum</i>	<i>servo-rum</i>	<i>reg-um</i>	<i>fructu-um</i>	<i>re-rum</i>
	<i>mensārum</i>	<i>servōrum</i>	<i>regūm</i>	<i>fructūm</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>{ mensa-is</i>	<i>servo-is</i>	<i>reg-ibus</i>	<i>fructu-bus</i>	<i>re-bus</i>
	<i>mensis</i>	<i>serviſ</i>	<i>regibūs</i>	<i>fructibūs</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>{ mensa-ms</i>	<i>servo-ms</i>	<i>reg-ems</i>	<i>fructu-ms</i>	<i>re-ms</i>
	<i>mensās</i>	<i>servōs</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>fructūs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>{ mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-es</i>	<i>fructu-es</i>	<i>re-es</i>
	<i>mensae</i>	<i>servi</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>fructūs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>{ mensa-is</i>	<i>servo-is</i>	<i>reg-ibus</i>	<i>fructu-bus</i>	<i>re-bus</i>
	<i>mensis</i>	<i>serviſ</i>	<i>regibūs.</i>	<i>fructibūs.</i>	<i>rēbūs.</i>

124. GENERAL TABLE OF GENDER.

I. Gender independent of ending.¹ Common to all declensions.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, ISLANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS, and WORDS and CLAUSES used as Indeclinable Nouns.

II. Gender determined by Nominative Ending.²

DECLEMN. I.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
as, es.	a, e.	

DECLEMN. II.

er, ir, us, os.		um, on.
-----------------	--	---------

DECLEMN. III.

o, or, os, er, es in- creasing in the gen- itive.	as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the gen- itive, s preceded by a consonant.	a, e, i, y, o, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
---	---	--

DECLEMN. IV.

us.		u.
-----	--	----

DECLEMN. V.

es.	
-----	--

¹ For exceptions, see 48.

² For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined: *respublica* = *res publica*, republic, the public thing; *jusjurandum* = *jūs jūrandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined: *päterfamilias* = *päter familias* (49, 1), or *päter familiae*, the father of a family.

126. PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> rēspūblicā	<i>jūsjūrandūm</i>	<i>päterfamilias</i>
<i>G.</i> rēspūblicae	<i>jūrisjūrandū</i>	<i>patrifamilias</i>
<i>D.</i> rēspūblicae	<i>jurijurandō</i>	<i>patrifamilias</i>
<i>A.</i> rempublicām	<i>jusjurandūm</i>	<i>patremfamilias</i>
<i>V.</i> respūblicā	<i>jusjurandūm</i>	<i>paterfamilias</i>
<i>A.</i> rēpublicā	<i>jurejurandō</i>	<i>patrēfamilias</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> respūblicae	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>G.</i> rēspūblicarūm		<i>patrumfamilias</i>
<i>D.</i> rēbuspūblicis		<i>patribusfamilias</i>
<i>A.</i> respūblicās	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>V.</i> respūblicāe	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>A.</i> rēbuspūblicis		<i>patribusfamilias.</i>

1. The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately: *res publica*; *päter familias* or *familiae*.

2. *Paterfamilias* sometimes has *familiarum* in the plural: *patresfamiliarum*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes:

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS have but one form for all cases.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS want certain parts.

III. HETEROCLITES (*hētērōclīta*¹) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (*hētērōgēnea*²) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

¹ From ἄλλος, *another*, and κλίσις, *inflection*, i. e., of different declensions.

² From ἄλλος, *another*, and γένος, *gender*, i. e., of different genders.

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns:

1. *Fas*, right; *nōfas*, wrong; *instar*, equality; *mānē*, morning; *nihil*, nothing; *pondō*, pound; *sēcūs*, sex.
2. The letters of the alphabet, *a*, *b*, *c*, *alphā*, *bēlā*, etc.
3. Foreign words: *Jacob*, *Ilibēri*; though these are often declined.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

130. PLURAL WANTING.—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *justitia*, justice; *aurum*, gold.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:
 - 1) Most names of persons and places: *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.
 - 2) Abstract Nouns: *fides*, faith; *justitia*, justice.
 - 3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.
 - 4) A few others: *mēridies*, midday; *spēcimēn*, example; *sūpellex*, furniture; *vēr*, spring; *vespera*, evening, etc.
2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families*, *classes*; names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality; *Scipiōnes*, the Scipios; *aera*, vessels of copper; *āvaritiae*, instances of avarice; *ōdia*, hatreds.

In the poets, the *plural* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the singular.

131. SINGULAR WANTING.—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are:
 - 1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *mājors*, forefathers; *postēri*, descendants; *gēmini*, twins; *libēri*, children.
 - 2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphi*, Delphi.
 - 3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchāndalia*, *Olympia*, *Sāturnalia*.
 - 4) *Arma*, arms; *dīvitiae*, riches; *exēquiae*, funeral rites; *extiviae*, spoils; *īdus*, ides; *indūtiae*, truce; *insūdīae*, ambuscade; *mānes*, shades of the dead; *minae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *mūnia*, duties; *nuptiae*, nuptials; *rēliquiae*, remains.
2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *ūnus ex* with the plural: *unus ex libēris*, one of the children, or a child.
3. The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate

villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. PLURAL WITH CHANGE OF MEANING.—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural. Thus:

SINGULAR.

Aedes, <i>temple</i> ;	
Auxilium, <i>help</i> ;	
Carcēr, <i>prison, barrier</i> ;	
Castrum, <i>castle, hut</i> ;	
Comitium, <i>name of a part of the Roman forum</i> ;	
Cōpia, <i>plenty, force</i> ;	
Facultas, <i>ability</i> ;	
Finis, <i>end</i> ;	
Fortina, <i>fortune</i> ;	
Gratia, <i>gratitude, favor</i> ;	
Hortus, <i>garden</i> ;	
Impēdimentum, <i>hindrance</i> ;	
Littēra, <i>letter of alphabet</i> ;	
Ludus, <i>play, sport</i> ;	
Mōs, <i>custom</i> ;	
Nātālis (diēs), <i>birth-day</i> ;	
Opēra, <i>work, service</i> ;	
Pars, <i>part</i> ;	
Rostrum, <i>beak of ship</i> ;	
Säl, <i>salt</i> ;	

PLURAL.

aedes, (1) <i>temples</i> , (2) <i>a house</i> . ¹	
auxilia, <i>auxiliaries</i> .	
carcēres, <i>barriers of a race-course</i> .	
castra, <i>camp</i> .	
comitia, <i>the assembly held in the comitium</i> .	
copiae, (1) <i>stores</i> , (2) <i>troops</i> .	
facultates, <i>wealth, means</i> .	
fines, <i>borders, territory</i> .	
fortūnae, <i>possessions, wealth</i> .	
gratiae, <i>thanks</i> .	
horti, (1) <i>gardens</i> , (2) <i>pleasure-grounds</i> .	
impēdimenta, (1) <i>hindrances</i> , (2) <i>baggage</i> .	
littērae, (1) <i>letters of alphabet</i> , (2) <i>epistles, writing, letters, literature</i> .	
ludi, (1) <i>plays</i> , (2) <i>public spectacle</i> .	
mōres, <i>manners, character</i> .	
nātāles, <i>pedigree, parentage</i> .	
opērae, <i>workmen</i> .	
partes, (1) <i>parts</i> , (2) <i>a party</i> .	
rostra, (1) <i>beaks</i> , (2) <i>the rostra or tribunes in Rome</i> (adorned with beaks).	
säles, <i>witty sayings</i> .	

133. DEFECTIVE IN CASE.—Some nouns are defective in case. Thus:

1. In the Nom., Dat., and Voc. Sing. : (Ops), ὄpis, *help*; (vix or vīcis), vīcīs, *change*.
2. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. : (Daps), dāpis, *food*; (dītio), dītiōnis, *sway*; (frux), frūgis, *fruit*; (internēcio), internēciōnis, *destruction*; (polliis), pollīnis, *flour*.
3. In the Gen., Dat. and Abl. Plur. : most nouns of the fifth declension. See 120, 4.

So also many neuters: fär, fäl, mäl, püs, rüs, tüs; especially Greek neuters in ῥε, which want these cases in the singular also: ἕρος, μῆλος.

¹ *Aedes* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

4. In the Gen. Plur.: many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables: *nex*, *pax*, *piz*; *cör*, *cöe*, *röe*; *sdl*, *söl*, *luz*.

184. NUMBER AND CASE.—Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other: *fors*, chance, has only *fors* and *forte*; *lues*, pestilence, has *luēs*, *luem*, *lue*. Many verbal nouns in *u* have only the ablative singular: *juseu*, by order; *mandātu*, by command; *rögātu*, by request.

III. HETEROOOLITES.

185. Of. DECLENSIONS II. and IV. are a few nouns in use.
See 119.

136. Of Declensions II. and III. are

1. *Jugērum*, an acre; generally of the second Decl. in the Sing., and of the third in the Plur.: *jugērum, jugēri*; plural, *jugēra, jugērum, jugeribus*.

2. *Vās*, a vessel; of the third Decl., in the Sing. and of the second in the Plur.: *vās*, *vāsīs*; plural, *vādea*, *vāsōrum*.

8. Plural names of festivals in *alia*: *Bachändlia*, *Saturnalia*; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *drum* of the second. *Ancile*, a shield, and a few other words have the same peculiarity.

137. Of Declensions III. and V. are

1. *Requies*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requis* of the fifth.

Famē, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the ablative, *famā*, of the fifth (not *famē* of the third).

188. FORMS IN ia AND ies.—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *ies* of Decl. V.: *luxuria*, *luxuries*, luxury; *materia*, *materies*, material.

139. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *conditus*, *conditum*, an attempt; *eventus*, *eventum*, event.

140. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *jūventūs* (*ūtis*), youth; poetic, *jūventa* (*ae*): *sēnectūs* (*ūtis*), old age; poetic, *sēneca* (*ae*): *pauperīs* (*ātis*), poverty; poetic, *pauperīes* (*ēi*).

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

141. MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

Jōcus, m., jest; plural *joci*, m., *joca*, n.

Locus, m., place; " *loci*, m., topics, *loca*, n., places.

142. FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

<i>Carbārus</i> , f., linen;	plural <i>carbūsi</i> , f., <i>carbāsa</i> , n.
<i>Margārita</i> , f., pearl;	" <i>margaritae</i> , f., <i>margarita</i> , n.
<i>Ostrea</i> , f., oyster;	" <i>ostreas</i> , f., <i>ostrea</i> , n.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender. Thus:

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:

Caelum, n., heaven; plural *caeli*, m.

2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:

Frēnum, n., bridle; plural *freni*, m., *frena*, n.

Rastrum, n., rake; " *rastri*, m., *rastra*, n.

3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:

Epūlum, n., feast; plural *epūlæ*, f.

144. FORMS IN US AND UM.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine, and one in *um* neuter: *clīpeus*, *clīpeum*, shield; *commentārius*, *commentārium*, commentary.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCLITES.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *cōnditus* (*us*), *cōnditum* (*i*), effort; *menda* (*ae*), *mendum* (*i*), fault.

—————♦♦♦—————

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. THE ADJECTIVE is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good : *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bōnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bōnus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS : A AND O STEMS.

148. Bōnus, *good*.

SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> bōnūs	bōnā	bōnūma
<i>Gen.</i> bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i> bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i> bonūma	bonām	bonūma
<i>Voc.</i> bonō	bonā	bonūma
<i>Abl.</i> bonō	bonā;	bonō;

PLURAL.

NOM.	bonī	bonae	bonā
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrūm	bonōrūma	bonōrūma
<i>Dat.</i>	bonōs	bonōs	bonōs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonōs	bonō
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonō
<i>Abl.</i>	bonōs	bonōs	bonōs.

1. BONUS is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bōno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bōna* in the Fem.

149. Liber, *free*.

SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> libēr	libērā	libērūm
<i>Gen.</i> libērī	libērae	libērī
<i>Dat.</i> libērō	libērae	libērō
<i>Acc.</i> libērūma	libērām	libērūma
<i>Voc.</i> libēr	libērā	libērūm
<i>Abl.</i> libērō	libērā	libērō;

PLURAL.

NOM.	libērī	libērae	libērā
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrūm	liberōrūma	liberōrūm
<i>Dat.</i>	libērīs	libērīs	libērīs
<i>Acc.</i>	libērōs	libērās	libērā
<i>Voc.</i>	libērī	libērae	libērā
<i>Abl.</i>	libērīs	libērīs	libērīs.

1. *Liber* is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

150. Aeger, sick.

SINGULAR.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> aegr̄ēr	aegr̄ā	aegr̄ūm
<i>Gen.</i> aegr̄ī	aegr̄ae	aegr̄ī
<i>Dat.</i> aegr̄ō	aegr̄ae	aegr̄ō
<i>Acc.</i> aegr̄ūm	aegr̄ām	aegr̄ūm
<i>Voc.</i> aeger	aegr̄ā	aegr̄ūm
<i>Abl.</i> aegr̄ō	aegr̄ā	aegr̄ō;

PLURAL.		
NOM.	AEGRAE	AEGRĀ
<i>Gen.</i> aegr̄ūm	aegr̄ūm	aegr̄ūm
<i>Dat.</i> aegr̄is	aegr̄is	aegr̄is
<i>Acc.</i> aegr̄ōs	aegr̄ās	aegr̄ā
<i>Voc.</i> aegr̄ī	aegr̄ae	aegr̄ā
<i>Abl.</i> aegr̄is	aegr̄is	aegr̄is.

1. *Aeger* is declined in the Masc. like *äger* (51) and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

2. Most adjectives in *ér* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *ér* and *ür* are declined like *liber*:

1) *Asper*, rough; *läcer*, torn; *miser*, wretched; *prosper*, prosperous; *tēner*, tender; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it: *dexter*, *dextēra* or *dext̄ra*.

2) *Sātūr*, sated; *satur*, *satūra*, *saturum*.

3) Compounds in *fér* and *gér*: *mortifér*, deadly; *äliger*, winged.

151. IRREGULARITIES.—These nine adjectives have in the singular *iūs* in the genitive and *i* in the dative:

Aliūs, *ð*, *üd*, another; *nullus*, *a*, *um*, no one; *sōlus*, alone; *tōtus*, whole; *ullus*, any; *ūnus*, one; *allōr*, *-lērā*, *-lērūm*, the other; *üter*, *-tra*, *-trūm*, which (of two); *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trūm*, neither.¹

1. The Regular Forms occasionally occur in some of these adjectives.
2. *I* in *iūs* is sometimes short; generally so in *älterius*.
3. *Aliūs* contracts the genitive *älliūs* into *älīus*.
4. Like *üter* are declined its compounds: *uterquā*, *utērōis*, *utērilibēt*, *utērcunguēt*. In *älterüter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *älterius utrius*; and sometimes only the latter, as *älterutrius*.

¹ For the Declension in full see *ünus*, 175.

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in **i**, and are declined as follows :

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N.</i> acér	acrís	acr̄o
<i>G.</i> acrís	acrís	acrís
<i>D.</i> acr̄i	acr̄i	acr̄i
<i>A.</i> acr̄em	acr̄em	acr̄o
<i>V.</i> acér	acrís	acr̄o
<i>A.</i> acr̄i	acr̄i	acr̄i ;

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> acr̄es	acr̄es	acr̄iē
<i>G.</i> acr̄iūm	acr̄iūm	acr̄iūm
<i>D.</i> acr̄ibūs	acr̄ibūs	acr̄ibūs
<i>A.</i> acr̄es, is	acr̄es, is	acr̄iē
<i>V.</i> acr̄es	acr̄es	acr̄iē
<i>A.</i> acr̄ibūs	acr̄ibūs	acr̄ibūs.

1. Like *Acer* are declined:

1) *Alacer*, lively; *campester*, level; *cōlōber*, famous; *cōlēr*,¹ swift; *ēques-ter*, equestrian; *pāluster*, marshy; *pēdester*, pedestrian; *pūter*, putrid; *sālūber*, healthful; *silvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *vōlūcer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months: *Oktōber*, brīs.²

2. The Masculine in *is*, like the Fem., also occurs: *sālūbris*, *silvestris*, for *salūber*, *silvester*.

¹ This retains *e* in declension: *color*, *cōlēria*, *cōlēre*; and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

² See also 77, II. 2.

3. These forms in *er* are analogous to those in *er* of Dec. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in inserting *e* before *r*: *ācer* for *acoris*, stem, *ācri*.

4. *Acer* is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *māre* (63) in the Neut., except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Masc. where it ends in *er*, and in the Abl. Sing. where it ends in *i*.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows:

 *Tristis, sad.*

Tristior, more sad.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. tristis	tristō	N. triſtior	tristiūſ
G. tristis	tristis	G. triſtioris	tristiōriſ
D. tristi	tristi	D. triſtiori	tristiōri
A. tristēma	tristō	A. triſtiorēma	tristiūſ
V. tristis	tristō	V. triſtior	tristiūſ
A. tristi	tristi;	A. triſtiorō (I)	tristiōriō (I);

PLURAL.

N. tristes	tristiā	N. triſtiorēs	tristiōrā
G. tristēma	tristiāma	G. triſtiorēma	tristiōrāma
D. triſtibūſ	tristiibūſ	D. triſtioribūſ	tristiōribūſ
A. tristes, Is	tristiā	A. triſtiorēs	tristiōrā
V. tristes	tristiā	V. triſtiorēs	tristiōrā
A. triſtibūſ	tristiibūſ.	A. triſtioribūſ	tristiōribūſ.

1. *Tristis* and *Tristia* are declined like *ācris* and *ācre*.

2. *TRISTIOR* is the comparative (160) of *tristis*.

3. STEMS.—The stem of *tristis* is *tristi*; that of *tristior* was originally *tristite*, but it has been modified to *tristiūſ* (61, 1) in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. Neut., and to *tristiōr* in the other cases (35).

4. Like *TRISTIOR*, comparatives, as consonant stems, generally have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, sometimes in *i*, the Nom. Plur. Neut. in *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *um*. But

5. COMPLURES, several, has Gen. Plur. *complūrium*; Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. Neut. *complūra* or *complūria*. See *Plūs*, 165, 1.

6. ABLATIVE IN *e*.—In poetry, adjectives in *is*, *e*, sometimes have the Abl. Sing. in *e*: *cognōmine* from *cognominis*, of the same name.

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings.

156. *Audax, audacious.**Félix, happy.*

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. audax	audax	N. <i>félix</i>	<i>félix</i>
G. audacis	audacis	G. <i>felicis</i>	<i>felicis</i>
D. audaci	audaci	D. <i>felici</i>	<i>felici</i>
A. audacem	audax	A. <i>felicem</i>	<i>felix</i>
V. audax	audax	V. <i>felix</i>	<i>felix</i>
A. audaci (S)	audaci (S);	A. <i>felici</i> (S)	<i>felici</i> (S);

PLURAL.

N. audaces	audaciā	N. <i>felices</i>	<i>felicēs</i>
G. audaciūm	audaciūm	G. <i>felicitūm</i>	<i>felicitūm</i>
D. audaciibūs	audaciibūs	D. <i>felicitibūs</i>	<i>felicitibūs</i>
A. audaciēs (Is)	andaciā	A. <i>felicēs</i> (Is)	<i>felicēs</i>
V. audaces	audaciā	V. <i>felices</i>	<i>felicēs</i>
A. audaciibūs	audaciibūs.	A. <i>felicitibūs</i>	<i>felicitibūs.</i>

1. STEMS.—Most Adjectives of One Ending are combinations of i-stems and consonant stems—the former appearing in the Abl. Sing. and in the Plural. The stems of *audax* and *felix* are *audaci*, *audaci*, and *felici*, *felici*.

157. *Amans, loving.**Prudens, prudent.*

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. āmans	āmans	N. <i>prudens</i>	<i>prudens</i>
G. amantis	amantis	G. <i>prudentis</i>	<i>prudentis</i>
D. amanti	amanti	D. <i>prudenti</i>	<i>prudenti</i>
A. amantēm	amans	A. <i>prudentēm</i>	<i>prudens</i>
V. amans	amans	V. <i>prudens</i>	<i>prudens</i>
A. amantē (I)	amantē (I);	A. <i>prudenti</i> (S)	<i>prudenti</i> (S);

PLURAL.

N. amantes	amantiā	N. <i>prudentes</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
G. amantiūm	amantiūm	G. <i>prudentiūm</i>	<i>prudentiūm</i>
D. amantiibūs	amantiibūs	D. <i>prudentiibūs</i>	<i>prudentiibūs</i>
A. amantēs (Is)	amantiā	A. <i>prudentēs</i> (Is)	<i>prudentiā</i>
V. amantes	amantiā	V. <i>prudentes</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
A. amantiibūs	amantiibūs.	A. <i>prudentiibūs</i>	<i>prudentiibūs.</i>

1. The stems are *āmanti*, *āmant*; *prudenti*, *prudent*.

2. The participle *āmans* differs in declension from the adjective *prudens* only in the Abl. Sing., where the participle usually has the ending S, and the adjective, I. Participles used adjectively may of course take I. A few adjectives have only e in general use:—(1) *pauper*, *paupere*, poor;

pūbes, pubēre, mature;—(2) those in *ēs*, *G. itis* or *īdis*: *āles, dēses, dīves, soespes, superates*;—(3) *cælebs, compōs, impōs, princeps*.

158. Vētus, old.

Měmor, mindful.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. vētūs	vētūs	měmōr	měmōr
G. vetōrl̄s	vetōrl̄s	memōrl̄s	memōrl̄s
D. vetōrl̄l	vetōrl̄l	memōrl̄l	memōrl̄l
A. vetōrl̄ma	vetūs	memōrl̄ma	memōr
V. vētūs	vetūs	memōr	memōr
A. vetōrl̄ (I)	vetōrl̄ (I);	memōrl̄	memōrl̄;

PLURAL.

N. vetōrl̄s	vetōrl̄s	memōrl̄s
G. vetōrl̄ma	vetōrl̄ma	memōrl̄ma
D. veteribūs	veteribūs	memoribūs
A. vetōrl̄s	vetōrl̄s	memōrl̄s
V. vetōrl̄s	vetōrl̄s	memōrl̄s
A. veteribūs	veteribūs.	memoribūs.

1. NEUTER PLURAL.—Many adjectives like *měmōr*, from the nature of their signification, want the Neut. Plur.: *abēr*, fertile, has *ubēra*, like *vētūs*, *vetēra*; all others have the ending *ia*, as *fēlicia*, *prūdentia*.

2. GENITIVE PLURAL.—Most adjectives have *ium*, but the following have *um*.

1) Adjectives of one ending with only *e* in the ablative singular (157, 2): *pauper*, *paupērum*.

2) Those with the genitive in *ēris*, *ōris*, *īris*: *vētus*, *vetērum*, old; *měmōr*, *memōrum*, mindful; *cīcūr*, *cicūrum*, tame.

3) Those in *ōeps*: *anceps*, *ancēpītum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have *um*: *īnōpe* (*ops*, *ōpum*), *īnōpum*, helpless.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be

I. INDECLINABLE: *frūgi*, frugal, good; *nēquād*, worthless; *millē*, thousand. See 176.

II. DEFECTIVE: (*cētērus*) *cētēra*, *cetērum*, the other, the rest; (*lūdicra*) *lūdicra*, *ludicrum*, sportive; (*sōns*) *sontis*, guilty; (*sēmīnex*) *sēmīnēcis*, half dead; *pauci*, *aē*, *a*, used only in the Plur. See also 158, I.

III. HETEROCLITES.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us*, *a*, *um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hūlārus* and *hūlāris*, joyful; *exānīmus* and *exānīmis*, lifeless.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree : *altus, altior, altissimus*, high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison :

- I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON—by endings.
- II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON—by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings :

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>iōr, iōr, iōs.</i>			<i>issimūs, issimā, issimūm:</i>		

Altus, altior, altissimus : high, higher, highest.
lēvis, levior, levissimus : light, lighter, lightest.

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel : *alto, altior, altissimus.*

163. IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus :

1. Adjectives in **er** add **rīmus** to the positive :¹ *ācer, acrior, acerrīmus, sharp.*

Vetus has *veterīmus*; *mātūrus*, both *maturīmus* and *maturissīmus*; *dexter, dextīmus.*

2. Six in **llis** add **līmus** to the stem :¹

Facīlis, difficīlis; easy, difficult.
simīlis, dissimīlis; like, unlike.
grācīlis, hūmīlis; slender, low:

facīlis, facilior, facillīmus. Imbecīllis has *imbecillīmus.*

¹ The superlative ending *is-simus* is probably compounded of *is* for *īo*, the original comparative ending (154, 8), and *simus* for *timus*; *īo-simus=īo-sīmus=ī-sīmus*. After *l* and *r*, the first element is omitted, and *s* assimilated: *facīlis, facil-simus, facillīmus; ācer, acor-simus, acer-rīmus.*

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives :

Extérus, exterior, **extrémus** and **extimus**, *outward*.
inférus, inferior, **infímus** and **imius**, *lower*.
súpérus, superior, **suprémus** and **summus**, *upper*.
postérus, posterior, **postrémus** and **postímus**, *next*.

164. Compounds in **dícus**, **fícus**, and **völus** are compared with the endings **entior** and **entíssimus**, as if from forms in *ens*:

Málédícus, maledicentior, maledicentíssimus, *slanderous*.
múnificus, munificentior, munificantíssimus, *liberal*.
bénévölus, benevolentior, benevolentíssimus, *benevolent*.

1. *Egēnus* and *próvidus* (needy and prudent), form the comparative and superlative from *égēns* and *providens*: hence *egentior*, *egentíssimus*, etc.

2. *Mirificíssimus* occurs as the superlative of *mirificus*, wonderful.

165. SPECIAL IRREGULARITIES OF COMPARISON.

Bónus ,	mělior ,	óptimus ,	<i>good</i> .
málus ,	pejor ,	pessímus ,	<i>bad</i> .
magnus ,	major ,	maxímus ,	<i>great</i> .
parvus ,	mínor ,	mínímus ,	<i>small</i> .
multus ,	plús ,	plúrimus ,	<i>much</i> .

1. *Plus* is neuter, and has in the singular only N. and A. *plus*, and G. *pluriš*. In the plural it has N. and A. *plürès* (m. and f.), *plürá* (n.), G. *pluríum*, D. and A. *pluríbus*.

2. *Divčs*, { **divitior**, **divitíssimus**, } *rich*.
 { **ditior**, **ditíssimus**, }
 frugi, **frugalior**, **frugálissimus**, *frugal*.
 nēquám, **nequier**, **nequíssimus**, *worthless*.

166. POSITIVE WANTING.

Ctěrior ,	ctímus ,	nearer .	prior ,	prímus ,	<i>former</i> .
dětěrior ,	děterrímus ,	worse .	pröprior ,	proxímus ,	<i>nearer</i> .
intěrior ,	intímus ,	inner .	ultěrior ,	ultímus ,	<i>farther</i> . ¹
öcior ,	öcissímus ,	swifter .			

167. COMPARATIVE WANTING.

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *möríus*, *meritíssimus*, deserving.

2. In these adjectives :

¹ These adjectives are formed from *cítrá*, *dě*, *intřá*, Greek *άκτε*, *præ* or *pro*, *pröpře*, *ultře*.

Diversus, diversissimus, <i>different.</i>	nōvus, novissimus, <i>new.</i>
falsus, falsissimus. <i>false.</i>	sacer, sacerrimus, <i>sacred.</i>
inclitus, inclutissimus, <i>renowned.</i>	vetus, veterrimus, <i>old.</i>
invitus, invitissimus, <i>unwilling.</i>	

168. SUPERLATIVE WANTING.

1. In most verbals in *Ilis* and *bilis*: *dōclis, docilior, docile.*
2. In many adjectives in *ālis* and *īlis*: *cāptālis, capitalior, capital.*
3. In *ālācer, alacrior, active*; *caecus, blind*; *diūturnus, lasting*; *longinquus, distant*; *ōptimus, rich*; *prōclivis, steep*; *prōpinguis, near*; *salutāris, salutary*, and a few others.
4. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

Adōlescens,	ādolescentior,	mīnimus nātu, ¹	young.
jūvēnis,	junior,	mīnimus nātu,	young.
sēnex,	senior,	māximus natu,	old.

169. WITHOUT TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

1. Many adjectives, from the nature of their signification, especially such as denote *material, possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time*: *aureus, golden*; *pāternus, paternal*; *Rōmānus, Roman*; *aestīvus, of summer*.
2. Most adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those in *quus*: *ūdōneus, suitable; noxius, hurtful.*
3. Many derivatives in *ālis, āris, īlis, ūlus, īcus, īnus, ūrus: mortālis* (*mors, mortal*).
4. *Albus, white; claudus, lame; fērus, wild; lassus, weary; mirus, wonderful*, and a few others.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive: *arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus, arduous.*

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admōdum, valdē, oppidō, very; imprimis, ap̄primis*, in the highest degree: *valde magna, very great. Pēr* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very*; *perdifficilis, very difficult; praeclārus, very illustrious.*

2. Strengthening Particles are also sometimes used,—(1) With the comparative: *ētiam, even, multō, longē, much, far: ētiam diligētior, even more diligent; multō diligētior, much more diligent,—(2) With the superlative: multō, longē, much, by far; quām, as possible: multō or longē diligētissimus, by far the most diligent; quām diligētissimus, as diligent as possible.*

¹ Smallest or youngest in age. *Natu* is sometimes omitted.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes :

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS : *ūnus*, one ; *duō*, two.

2. ORDINAL NUMBERS : *prīmus*, first ; *sēcundus*, second.

3. DISTRIBUTIVES : *singūlī*, one by one ; *bīnī*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added :

1. MULTIPLICATIVES.—These are adjectives in *plex*, G. *płcis*, denoting so many fold : *simplex*, single ; *dúplex*, double ; *tríplex*, threefold.

2. PROPORTIONALS.—These are declined like *bōnus*, and denote so many times as great : *dúplus*, twice as great ; *tríplus*, three times as great.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.

1. *ūnus*, *una*, *unum*,
2. *duō*, *duae*, *duo*,
3. *trēs*, *triā*,
4. *quattuōr*,
5. *quinquē*,
6. *sex*,
7. *septēm*,
8. *octō*,
9. *nōvēm*,
10. *dēcēm*,
11. *undēcēm*,
12. *duōdēcēm*,
13. *trēdēcēm*,¹
14. *quattuordēcēm*,
15. *quindēcēm*,
16. *sēdēcēm or sexdē-*
cēm,¹
17. *septendēcēm*,¹

ORDINALS.

- prīmūs*,² *first*,
- sēcundus*,² *second*,
- tertius*, *third*,
- quartus*, *fourth*,
- quintus*, *fifth*,
- sextus*,
- septimus*,
- octāvus*,
- nōnus*,
- dēcēmus*,
- undēcēmus*,
- duōdēcēmus*,
- tertius decimūs*,²
- quartus decimūs*,
- quintus decimūs*,
- sextus decimūs*,
- septēm decimūs*,

DISTRIBUTIVES.

- singūlī*, *one by one*.
- bīnī*, *two by two*.
- terni* (*trīni*).
- quāterni*.
- quīni*.
- sēni*.
- septēni*.
- octōni*.
- nōvēni*.
- dēni*.
- undēni*.
- duōdēni*.
- terni dēni*.
- quāterni dēni*.
- quīni dēni*.
- sēni dēni*.
- septēni dēni*.

¹ Sometimes with the parts separated : *dēcem et tres*; *dēcem et sex*, etc.

² *Prior* is used instead of *primus* in speaking of two, and *alter* is often used for *secundus*.

³ Sometimes *decimus* precedes with or without *et* : *decimus et tertius* or *decimus tertius*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
18. duōdēvīginti, ¹	duōdēvīcēsīmus, ⁵	duōdēvīcēni.
19. undēvīginti, ¹	undēvīcēsīmus, ⁵	undēvīcēni.
20. vīginti,	vīcēsīmus, ⁶	vīcēni.
21. {vīginti ūnus, {ūnus ēt vīginti, ²	vicesīmus pīmus, ūnus et vicesīmus ³ ,	vicēni singūli. singūli et vicēni.
22. {vīginti duo, {duo ēt vīginti,	vicesīmus secundus, alter et vicesīmus, trīcēsīmus, ⁴	vicēni bīni. bīni et vicēni. trīcēni.
30. trīgintā,	quādrāgēsīmus,	quādrāgēni.
40. quādrāgintā,	quinquāgēsīmus,	quinquāgēni.
50. quinquāgintā,	sexāgēsīmus,	sexāgēni.
60. sexāgintā,	septuāgēsīmus,	septuāgēni.
70. septuāgintā,	octōgēsīmus,	octōgēni.
80. octōgintā,	nōnāgēsīmus,	nōnāgēni.
90. nōnāgintā,	centēsīmus,	centēni.
100. centūm,	centēsīmus pīmus,	centēni singūli.
101. {centum ūnus, {centum et ūnus, ³	centēsīmus et pīmus	centēni et singūli.
200. dūcenti, ae, ³ ā,	dūcentēsīmus,	dūcēni.
300. trēcenti,	trēcentēsīmus,	trēcēni.
400. quādrēgenti,	quādrēgentēsīmus,	quādrēngēni.
500. quingenti,	quingentēsīmus,	quingēni.
600. sexcenti,	sexcentēsīmus,	sexcēni.
700. septingenti,	septingentēsīmus,	septingēni.
800. octingenti,	octingentēsīmus,	octingēni.
900. nongenti,	nongentēsīmus,	nongēni.
1,000. millē,	millēsīmus,	singūla millia.
2,000. duo millia, ⁴	bīs millesīmus,	bīna millia.
10,000. dēcem millia,	dēciēs millesīmus,	dēna millia.

¹ Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo*; *decem et novem*; so 28, 29; 38, 39, etc., either by subtraction from *trīgintā*, etc., or by addition to *vīginti*; *duodētrīgintā* or *octo et vīginti*.

² If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

³ In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum vīginti* or *milles et centum vīginti*, 1120.

⁴ Sometimes *bīna millia* or *bīs mille*.

⁵ Sometimes expressed by addition, like the corresponding cardinals: *octōēsīmus decimūs* and *nonūs decimūs*.

⁶ Sometimes written with *g*: *vīgesīmus*; *trigesīmus*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
100,000. centum millia,	centiēs millesimus,	centēna millia.
1,000,000. dēciēs centēna mil- lia, ¹	decies centies mil- lia, ¹	dēciēs centēna millia.

1. ORDINALS with *Pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

2. DISTRIBUTIVES are used

1) To show the number of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece*; *ternos dēnarios accēperunt*, they received each three denarii, or three apiece. Hence:

2) To express Multiplication: *decies centēna millia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bina castra*, two camps. Here for *singūli* and *terni*, *uni* and *trīni* are used: *unae littērae*, one letter; *trīnae littērae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes in reference to objects spoken of in pairs: *bini scyphi*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of *cardinals*: *bina hastilia*, two spears.

3. Poets use numeral-adverbs (181) very freely in compounding numbers: *bis sex*, for duodēcim; *bis septem*, for quattuordēcim.

4. *Sexteni* and *mille* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is in English.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

Unus, one.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
N. unūs	unā	unūm	unī	unae	unā
G. unlūs	unlūs	unlūs	unlōrum	unlārum	unlōrum
D. unlī	unlī	unlī	unls	unls	unls
A. unūm	unām	unūm	unōs	unās	unā
V. unē	unā	unūm	unī	unae	unā
A. unō	unā	unō;	unls	unls	unls.

Duo, two.

N. duō	duae	duō	trēs, m. and f.	triā, n.
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum ²	trīum	triūm

¹ Literally ten times a hundred thousand; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centēna millia*: *centiēs centēna millia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centēna millia* is understood and only the adverb is expressed, and sometimes *centum millia* is used.

² *Duōrum* and *duārum* are sometimes shortened to *duēm*.

<i>D.</i>	<i>duōbūs</i>	<i>duābūs</i>	<i>duōbūs</i>	<i>trībūs</i>	<i>trībūs</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>duōs</i>	<i>duō</i>	<i>duō</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>triā</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>duō</i>	<i>due</i>	<i>duō</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>triā</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>duōbūs</i>	<i>duābūs</i>	<i>duōbūs.</i>	<i>trībūs</i>	<i>trībūs.</i>

1. The plural of *unus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun; *uni Ubii*, the Ubii alone; but in the strict numeral sense of *one*, it is used only with such nouns as, though plural in form, are singular in sense: *una castra*, one camp; *unae littorae*, one letter.

2. Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

3. *Multi*, many, and *plurimi*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the sing. But in the poets the sing. occurs in the sense of *many a*: *multa hostia*, many a victim.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dūcenti*, *trēcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bōnus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

178. *Mille* as an adjective is indeclinable: as a substantive it is used in the singular only in the nominative and accusative, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *māre* (68); *millia*,¹ *millium*, *millibūs*.

With the substantive *Mille*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the genitive: *mille hōmīnum*, a thousand men (of men); but it is in the same case as *mille*, if a declined numeral intervenes: *tria millia trēcenti milites*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bōnus* and distributives like the plural of *bonus*, but the latter often have *ūm* for *ōrum* in the genitive; *bīnūm* for *binōrum*.

180. NUMERAL SYMBOLS.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	9.	IX.	17.	XVII.
2.	II.	10.	X.	18.	XVIII.
3.	III.	11.	XI.	19.	XIX.
4.	IV.	12.	XII.	20.	XX.
5.	V.	13.	XIII.	21.	XXI.
6.	VI.	14.	XIV.	22.	XXII.
7.	VII.	15.	XV.	30.	XXX.
8.	VIII.	16.	XVI.	40.	XL.

¹ This according to Corssen is the proper form, though the word is often written with one *l*: *mitta*.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
50.	L.	200.	CC.	900.	DCCCC.
60.	LX.	300.	CCC.	1,000.	CIO, or M.
70.	LXX.	400.	CCCC.	2,000.	CIOCIO, or MM.
80.	LXXX.	500.	IO, or D.	10,000.	CCIOO.
90.	XC.	600.	DC.	100,000.	CCCIICOO.
100.	C.	700.	DCC.	1,000,000.	CCCCIOOOO.
101.	CL.	800.	DCCC.		

1. LATIN NUMERAL SYMBOLS are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IO or D = 500; CIO or M = 1,000.¹

2. IN THE COMBINATION OF THESE SYMBOLS, except IO, observe

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 4 (5 - 1); VI = 6 (5 + 1).

3. IN THE COMBINATION OF IO observe .

1) That each O (inverted C) after IO increases the value tenfold: IO = 500; IOC = $500 \times 10 = 5,000$; IOCC = $5,000 \times 10 = 50,000$.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as O stands after it: IO = 500; CIO = $500 \times 2 = 1,000$; IOC = 5,000; CCIOC = $5,000 \times 2 = 10,000$.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IO = 500; IOC = 600; IOCC = 700.

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs. For convenience of reference we add the following table:

1. sěměl, once	11. unděcies	17. septiesděcies
2. bis, twice	12. duďděcies	18. { duďděcies
3. těr, three times	13. { terděcies	octiesděcies
4. quătér	trödecies	19. { unděvěcies
5. quinquiēs	14. { quăterděcies	nōviesděcies
6. sexiēs	quattuordecies	20. věcies
7. septies	15. { quinquiesděcies	21. sěmel et věcies
8. octies	quindecies	22. bis et věcies
9. nōvies	16. { sexiesděcies	30. trěcies
10. děcies	sēdecies	40. quădrāgies

¹ Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol: $\overline{II} = 2,000$; $\overline{V} = 5,000$.

50. quinquāgies	200. dūcenties	900. nōningenties ¹
60. sexāgies	300. trēcenties	1,000. millies ²
70. septuāgies	400. quādringenties	2,000. bis millies
80. octōgies	500. quinqenties	10,000. decies millies
90. nōnāgies	600. sexcenties	100,000. centies millies
100. centies	700. septingenties	1,000,000. millies millies.
101. centies semel	800. octingenties	

1. In Compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicies*; the tens, however, with or without *et* sometimes precede: *vicies et bis* or *vicies bis*, but not *bis vicies*.

2. Another Class of numeral adverbs in *ūm* or *ō* is formed from the ordinals: *primum*, *primo*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium*, *tertio*, for the third time.



CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. THE PRONOUN is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ēgo*, I; *tū*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns : *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns : *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns : *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns : *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns : *quīs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns : *dīquīs*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are :

¹ Also written *nongenties*.

² *Millies* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times*.

Ego, I.

Tu, thou. Sui, of himself, etc.¹

SINGULAR.

N. ēgō	tū	
G. mei	tūi	sui
D. mihi	tībi	sībi
A. mē	tē	sē
V.	tū	
A. mē;	tē;	sē;

PLURAL.

N. nōs	vōs	
G. nostrūm {	vestrūm {	sui
nostrī	vestrī	
D. nōbis	vōbis	sībi
A. nōs	vōs	sē
V.	vōs	
A. nōbis.	vōbis.	sē.

1. STEMS.—The stems in the Sing.² are *me*, *te*, *se*; in the Plur. *no*, *vo*, *so*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS of Pronouns differ considerably from those of Nouns.

3. GENITIVE.—*Mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, and *vestrī*, are in form strictly Possessive Pronouns and are in the Gen. Sing., but by use they have become Personal. *Nostrī* and *vestrī* have also become Plural. *Nostrūm* and *vestrūm* for *nostrūrum* and *vestrūrum* are also Possessives. See *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, etc., 185.

4. SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.—Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

5. REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

6. EMPHASIS FORMS in *mē* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egōmē*, I myself; *tēmet*, etc. But the Nom. *tu* has *tētē* and *tūtēmet*, for *tūmet*.

7. REDUPLICATED FORMS:—*Seē*, *tētē*, *mēmē*, for *se*, *te*, *me*.

8. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS:—*Mis* for *mei*; *tis* for *tui*; *mē* for *mihi*; *mēd*, and *mepis* for *me*; *tēd* for *te*; *sed* for *se*.

9. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: *mēcūm*, *tēcūm*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

¹ *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nom. is not used.

² Except in the Nom. *Tu* is related to *te*, but *ego* is an entirely independent form.

(meūs, ā, ūm, *my*; nostēr, trā, trūm, *our*;
 tuus, a, um, *thy, your*; vester, tra, trum, *your*;
 suus, a, um, *his, her, its*; suus, a, um, *their*.

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Voc. Sing. Masc. generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

2. Emphatic forms in *ptē* and *mēt* occur: *suapte, suāmet*.

3. Other possessives are: (1) *cujus, a, um*,¹ whose, and *cujus, a, um*,² whose! declined like *bonus*, and (2) the Patrials, *nostrās*, G. *ātis*, of our country, *vestrās*, G. *ātis*, of your country, and *oujds*,¹ G. *ātis*, of whose country, declined as adjectives of Decl. III.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hic, istē, illē, is, ipsē, idem.

They are declined as follows:

I. Hic, this.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic	haec	hōc	hi	hae	haec
G. hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
D. hūc	hūc	hūc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A. hunc	hanc	hōc ²	hōs	hās	haec
A. hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.

II. Istē, that, that of yours. See 450.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. istē	istā	istēd	istī	istae	istā
G. istīlūs	istīlūs	istīlūs	istōrūm	istārūm	istōrūm
D. istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A. istēm	istēm	istēd ²	istōs	istās	istā
A. istō	istā	istē;	istīs	istīs	istīs.

III. Illē, he or that, is declined like istē.

¹ From the relative *qui*, *cujus*. See 187.

² From the interrogative *quid*, *cujus*. See 188.

³ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> is	eă	id	ei, ii	eae	eă
<i>G.</i> ejüs	ejüs	ejüs	eörüm	eärüm	eörüm
<i>D.</i> ei	ei	ei	eis, ilis	eis, ilis	eis, ilis
<i>A.</i> eüm	eäm	id ¹	eös	eäš	eă
<i>A.</i> eö	eă	eö;	eis, ilis	eis, ilis	eis, ilis.

V. *Ipsë, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> ipsë	ipsă	ipsüm	ipsi	ipsae	ipsă
<i>G.</i> ipsiüs	ipsiüs	ipsiüs	ipsörüm	ipsärüm	ipsörüm
<i>D.</i> ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>A.</i> ipsüm	ipsäm	ipsüm	ipsös	ipsäs	ipsă
<i>A.</i> ipsö	ipsă	ipsö;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

VI. *Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> idäm	eädäm	idäm	{ eildäm ²	eaedäm	eädäm
			{ iildäm		
<i>G.</i> ejusdäm	ejusdäm	ejusdäm	eörundäm	eärundäm	eörundäm
<i>D.</i> eildäm	eildäm	eildäm	{ eisdäm	eisdäm	eisdäm ³
			{ iisdäm	iisdäm	iisdäm
<i>A.</i> eundäm	eandäm	idäm	eosdäm	easdäm	eädäm
<i>A.</i> eödäm	eädäm	eödäm;	{ eisdäm	eisdäm	eisdäm ³
			{ iisdäm	iisdäm	iisdäm.

1. The STEMS are as follows:

- 1) Of *HIC*—*ho*, *ha*.²
- 2) Of *ISTE* and *ILLE*, for *istus* and *illus*—*isto*, *ista*, and *illo*, *illa*.
- 3) Of *IS*—*i*, *eo*, *ea*.
- 4) Of *IPSE*, for *ipseus*—*ipso*, *ipea*.
- 5) *IDEM*, compounded of *is* and *däm*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *idem* to *idem* and *iidem* to *iidem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *däm*.

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

² *Eldäm* and *eisdäm* are the approved forms, but *iildäm* and *iisdäm* are retained in many editions. *Idäm* and *iidäm* are in poetry dissyllables, and are often written *idem* and *iidem*.

³ By the addition of *s* in certain cases, *ho* and *ha* become *hi* and *hae*, as in *hi-c* and *hae-c*.

2. *Hic*, for *hi-ce*, is compounded with the demonstrative particle *ce*, meaning *here*. The forms in *o* have dropped *e*, while the other forms have dropped the particle entirely. But *ce* is often retained for emphasis; *hice*, *hujusce*, *hosce*, *hōrunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hōrunc* (*e* dropped). *Ce*, changed to *ci*, is generally retained before the interrogative *ne*: *hicne*, *hoscne*.

3. **ILLIC AND ISTIC.**—The particle *ce*, generally shortened to *o*, except after *s*, is sometimes appended to *ille* and *iste*: *illic* for *ille*, *illaec* for *illa*, *illōc* or *illūc* for *illud*, *illūsusce*, etc.

4. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS:

1) Of *Hic*: *hices* for *hice*, *hi*; *haec* for *hae*.

2) Of *Ista* and *ILLE*: forms in *i*, *ae*, *i* for *īas* and *i* in the Gen. and Dat.: *illi* for *illius*, *istas* for *istius* or *isti*; also forms from *ollus* for *ille*: *olla*, *ollis*, etc.

3) Of *Is*: *ēt¹*, *ea¹*, *ēt¹* Dat. for *ēt*; *ibūs*, *ebūs*, *ibūs*, for *ētē*.

4) Of *IPSE*, compounded of *is* and *pē* (*is-pse* = *ipse*); the uncontracted forms: Acc. *eumpse*, *eampse*, Abl. *eopse*, *eapse*; with *re*: *re eapse*, *reapse* for *re ipsa*, in reality; also *ipseus*, *a*, *um*, etc., for *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

5) **SYNCOPATED FORMS**, compounded of *ecce* or *ēn*, *lo*, *see*, and some cases of demonstratives, especially the Acc. of *ille* and *is*; *ecclūm* for *ecce eum*; *ecclē* for *ecce eos*; *ellūm* for *ēn illum*; *ellām* for *en illam*.

5. **DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES**: *tālis*, *a*, such; *tantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *tōt*, so many; *llitus*, *a*, *um*, so great. *Tot* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

For *tālis*, the Gen. of a demonstrative with *mōdi* (Gen. of *modus*, measure, kind), is often used: *hujusmōdi*, *ejusmōdi*, of this kind, such.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows :

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quōd</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G. cujūs</i>	<i>cujūs</i>	<i>cujūs</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>	<i>quārūm</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>
<i>D. cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>
<i>A. quēm</i>	<i>quām</i>	<i>quōd²</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>A. quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i> ;	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>

1. **STEMS.**—The stem is *quo*, *qua³*.

¹ Sometimes *et* as a diphthong.

² The Vocative is wanting. See 186, I. Foot-note.

³ *Quo* becomes *oo*, *cu* in *cujus* and *cui*. *Qui* and *quae* are formed from *quo* and *qua* like *hē* and *hae* in *hē-c* and *hae-c* from *he* and *ha*.

2. ANCIENT and RARE FORMS: *quojus* and *quoi* for *cujus* and *cui*; *qui* for *quo*, *qua*; *quis* (*queis*) for *quibus*.

3. *Cum*, when used with the *ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

4. *Quicunque* and *Quisquis*, *whoever*, are called from their signification *general relatives*. *Quicunque* (*quicunque*) is declined like *qui*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms: *quisquis*, *quidquid* (*quicquid*), *quōquā*.

5. The parts of *Quicunque* are sometimes separated by one or more words: *qua re cumque*.

6. RELATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, such as; *quantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *quōt*, as many as; *quōtus*, *a*, *um*, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *qualiscumquā*, etc.

For *Quālis* the genitive of the relative with *mōdi* is often used: *cujus-mōdi*, of what kind, such as; *cujuscumquāmōdi*, *cūcūimōdi* (for *cujuscujus-mōdi*), of whatever kind.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quis and *qui* with their compounds.

I. Quis, who, which, what?

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> <i>quis</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>	<i>quārūm</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>quēm</i>	<i>quām</i>	<i>quīd</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i> .

II. *Qui*, which, what? is declined like the relative *qui*.

1. *Quis* is generally used substantively, and *Qui*, adjectively.

2. STEM.—From the stem, *quo*, *qua*, are formed,—(1) The relative *qui*,—(2) The interrogatives *quis* and *qui*,—(3) The indefinites *quiſ* and *qui*.

3. *Quis* and *QUEM* are sometimes feminine. *Qui*, for *quo*, *qua*, occurs in the sense of *how?* The other ancient forms are the same as in the relative. See 187, 2.

4. COMPOUNDS of *quis* and *qui* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quienam*, *quinam*, *equis*, etc. But *equis* has sometimes *equa* for *equas*.

5. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, what? *quantus*, *a*, *um*, how great? *quōt*, how many? *quōtus*, *a*, *um*, of what number? *ūter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? See 151.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite person or things. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. But

1. After *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *nūm*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *quā*: *si quae*, *si quā*.

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites*:

alīqūls,	alīquā,	alīquid	or alīquōd,	some, some one.
quispiām,	quaepiam,	quidpiam ¹	or quodpiam,	some, some one.
quīdām,	quaedam,	quiddam	or quoddam,	certain, certain one.
quisquām,	quaequam,	quidquam ¹		any one.

II. *The General Indefinites*:

quisquē,	quaeque,	quidque ¹	or quodque,	every, every one.
quīvis,	quaevīs,	quidvis	or quodvis,	any one you please.
quilibēt	quaellbet,	quidlibet	or quodllbet,	any one you please.

1. These compounds are generally declined like the simple *quis* and *qui*, but have in the Neut. Sing. both *quod* and *quid*, the former used *adjectively*, the latter *substantively*.

2. *Aliquis* has *aliqua* instead of *aliqwas* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Aliqui* for *aliquis* occurs.

3. *Quidam* may change *m* to *n* before *d*: *quendam* for *quondam*.

4. *Quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

5. *Unus* prefixed to *quisque* does not affect its declension: *unusquisque*, *unaquaque*, etc.

•••

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lēgit*, he reads.

¹ Sometimes written respectively, *quippiam*, *quicquam*, *quioque*.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes :

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action : *servūm verbērāt*, he beats the slave.¹

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object : *puēr currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices :

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,²—which represents the subject as acting or existing : *pātēr fūlūm āmāt*, the father loves his son ; *est*, he is.

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing : *filiūs ā pātēr āmātūr*, the son is loved by his father.

1. INTRANSITIVE VERBS generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive. See 301, 1.

2. DEPONENT VERBS³ are Passive in form, but not in sense : *lōquōr*, to speak. But see 225.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods⁴ are either Definite or Indefinite :

I. The DEFINITE or FINITE MOODS make up the Finite Verb ; they are :

1. THE INDICATIVE Mood,—which either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the fact ; *lēgit*, he is reading ; *lēgitnē*, is he reading ?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE Mood,—which expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc. : *lēgāt*, he may read, let him read.

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *verbērat*, beats : *beats (what?) the slave*.

² *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

³ So called from *dēponō*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning.

⁴ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

But the Subjunctive may be variously translated, as we shall see in the Syntax.

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lēgē*, read thou.

II. The INDEFINITE Moods express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. THE INFINITIVE,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb without any necessary reference to person or number: *lēgērē*, to read.

2. The GERUND,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in *ING*: *āmandī*, of loving; *āmandī causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The SUPINE,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *āmātūm*, to love, for loving; *āmātū*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The PARTICIPLE,—which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the *Futuro*—*āmans*, loving; *āmātūrūs*, about to love;—and two in the Passive, the Perfect—*āmātūs*, loved, and the Gerundive¹—*āmandūs*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *āmō*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *āmābām*, I was loving.
3. Future: *āmābō*, I shall love.

III. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *āmāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *āmāvērām*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *āmāvērō*, I shall have loved.

¹ Also called the *Future Passive Participle*.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. PRESENT PERFECT and HISTORICAL PERFECT.—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. PRINCIPAL and HISTORICAL.—Tenses are also distinguished as

- 1) *Principal* :—Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.
- 2) *Historical* :—Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. TENSES WANTING.—The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS.—There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,¹ and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.¹

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.

āre,

Conj. II.

ēre,

Conj. III.

ēre,

Conj. IV.

īre.

201. STEM AND PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb. They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem*.²

202. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.³

203. *SUM, I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

¹ As in Nouns. See 44.

² For treatment of stems, see 249–257.

³ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sūm, *I am*.—STEMS, ēs, fu.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
sūm,Pros. Inf.
essō,Perf. Ind.
ful,Supine.
—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

SINGULAR.

sūm, ²	<i>I am,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou art,³</i>
est,	<i>he is ;</i>

sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
estīs,	<i>you are,</i>
sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

ērām,	<i>I was,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was ;</i>

ērāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erātīs,	<i>you were,</i>
erant,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

ērō,	<i>I shall be,</i>
erōs,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>
erōt,	<i>he will be ;</i>

ērīmūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
erītīs,	<i>you will be,</i>
erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

ful,	<i>I have been,</i>
fuistī,	<i>thou hast been,</i>
fuīt,	<i>he has been ;</i>

fulmūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuistīs,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuērunt	{
fuērō,	<i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been ;</i>

fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērātīs,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been ;</i>

fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērītīs,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ *Sum* has two Verb-Stems, while regular verbs have only one.² *Sum* is for *ēsum*, *ēram* for *ēam*. Whenever *s* of the stem *ēs* comes between two vowels, *e* is dropped, as in *sunt*, *ērāt*, or *s* is changed to *r*, as in *ēram*, *ēro*. See 85.³ Or *you are*; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be.

SINGULAR.

sím,	<i>I may be,¹</i>
síš,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>
sít,	<i>he may be ;</i>

PLURAL.

símüs,	<i>we may be,</i>
síšis,	<i>you may be,</i>
sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be.

essém,	<i>I might be,</i>
essés,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>
essét,	<i>he might be ;</i>

essémüs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essétils,	<i>you might be,</i>
essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have been.

fuěřím,	<i>I may have been,</i>
fuěřis,	<i>thou mayest have been,</i>
fuěřít,	<i>he may have been ;</i>

fuěřímüs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuěřitls,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuěrint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been.

fuissém,	<i>I might have been,</i>
fuissés,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>
fuissét,	<i>he might have been ;</i>

fuissémüs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissétils,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. čs, *be thou,*| estč, *be ye.*FUT. estč, *thou shall be,²*
estč, *he shall be;³*| estčtč, *ye shall be,*
suntč, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. essč, *to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. fuissč, *to have been.*FUT. fütürüs essč, *to be about to be.* FUT. fütürüs, *about to be.*

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es*; all others from the stem *fu*.

2. RARE FORMS:—förem, föres, föret, förent, föré, for *essem*, *esses*, *eset*, *esent*, *futurus esse*; siem *síe*, *síet*, *síent*, or *fuám*, *fuád*, *fuät*, *fuant*, for *sim*, *síš*, *sít*, *sínt*.

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, I. 2.

² The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres., or with *let*: *be thou*; *let him be.*

³ *Futurus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive: *futurus, a, um esse.*

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.

Amō, I love—STEM, āma.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
āmō,Pres. Inf.
āmārē,Perf. Ind.
āmāvī,Supine.
āmātānn.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.

āmō,

I love,

āmāmāns,

PLURAL.

āmās,

thou lovest,

āmātis,

we love,

āmāst,

he loves;

āmānt,

you love,

they love.

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

āmābām,

I was loving,

āmābāmāns, we were loving,

āmābās,

thou wast loving,

āmābātis, you were loving,

āmābāt,

he was loving;

āmābānt,

they were loving.

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

āmābō,

I shall love,

āmābimāns, we shall love,

āmābīs,

thou will love,

āmābitis, you will love,

āmābīt,

he will love;

āmābūnt, they will love.

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

āmāvī,

I have loved,

āmāvīmāns, we have loved,

āmāvīstī,

thou hast loved,

āmāvīstis, you have loved,

āmāvīt,

he has loved;

āmāvīrūnt, ērō, they have loved.

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

āmāvērām,

I had loved,

āmāvērāmāns, we had loved,

āmāvērās,

thou hadst loved,

āmāvērātis, you had loved,

āmāvērāt,

he had loved;

āmāvērānt, they had loved.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall, or will have loved.

āmāvērō,

I shall have loved,

āmāvērīmāns, we shall have loved,

āmāvērīs,

thou will have loved,

āmāvērītis, you will have loved,

āmāvērīt,

he will have loved;

āmāvērīnt, they will have loved.

¹ The final *a* of the stem disappears in *amo* for *ama-o*, *amem*, *ames*, etc., for *ama-im*, *ama-is*, etc. Also in the Pass. in *anor* for *ama-or*, *amer*, etc., for *ama-ir*, etc. See 32, II. 1, 8); 32, II. 2.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can love.

SINGULAR.

āmēm,	<i>I may love,</i>	āmēmūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
āmēs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>	āmētis,	<i>you may love,</i>
āmēt,	<i>he may love;</i>	āment,	<i>they may love.</i>

PLURAL.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should love.

āmārēm,	<i>I might love,</i>	āmārēmūs,	<i>we might love,</i>
āmārēs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>	āmārētis,	<i>you might love,</i>
āmārēt,	<i>he might love;</i>	āmārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have loved.

āmāvērīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	āmāvērīmūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
āmāvērīs,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>	āmāvērītis,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
āmāvērīt,	<i>he may have loved;</i>	āmāvērīnt,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have loved.

āmāvissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	āmāvissēmūs,	<i>we might have</i>
āmāvissēs,	<i>thou mightst have</i>	āmāvissētis,	<i>loved,</i>
	<i>loved,</i>	āmāvissētis,	<i>you might have loved,</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmā,	<i>love thou;</i>	āmātē,	<i>love ye.</i>
FUT. āmātō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	āmātōtē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. āmārō,	<i>to love.</i>	PRES. āmāmās, ¹	<i>loving.</i>
PERF. āmāvissētē,	<i>to have loved.</i>		
FUT. āmātārūs, ²	<i>essē, to be about to love.</i>	FUT. āmātārūs, ³	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

GEN. āmandī,	<i>of loving,</i>		
DAT. āmandō,	<i>for loving,</i>		
ACC. āmandūma,	<i>loving,</i>	ACC. āmātāma,	<i>to love,</i>
ABL. āmandō,	<i>by loving.</i>	ABL. āmātā,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ For declension, see 157.² Decline like bonus, 148.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.

Amör, I am loved.—STEM, ãma.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

Pres. Inf.

Perf. Ind.

ämör,

ämär,

ämätüs süm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

ämör

PLURAL.

ämämär

ämäris, or rö

ämämimi

ämätür;

ämamtür.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

ämäbär

ämäbamär

ämäbaris, or rö

ämäbamimi

ämäbatür;

ämäbamantür.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

ämabör

ämäbimär

ämäböris, or rö

ämäbimini

ämäbitür;

ämäbuntür.

PASTOR.

*I have been or was loved.*ämätüs süm¹

ämäti stämüs

ämätüs es

ämäti eastis

ämätüs est;

ämäti sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*ämätüs öräm¹

ämäti örämüs

ämätüs öräs

ämäti örätis

ämätüs örät;

ämäti örant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*ämätüs örö¹

ämäti örümüs

ämätüs örös

ämäti öritis

ämätüs örít;

ämäti örunt.

¹ *Fui, fuisti, etc., are sometimes used for sum, es, etc.: amätüs fui for amätüs sum. So fuéram, fuéras, etc., for éram, etc.: also fuéro, etc., for éro, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ämör	ämömaür
ämörös, or rö	ämömaimI
ämötür;	ämementür.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be loved.

ämärör	ämärömür
ämärörös or rö	ämärömaimI
ämärötür;	ämärömentür.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ämätüs sīma ¹	ämäti sīmüs
ämätüs sis	ämäti sītis
ämätüs sit;	ämäti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been loved.

ämätüs essēma ¹	ämäti essēmüs
ämätüs essēs	ämäti essētis
ämätüs essēt;	ämäti essēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ämärö, be thou loved;	ämämaimI, be ye loved.
FUT. ämätör, thou shalt be loved, ämätör, he shall be loved;	ämantör, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ämärl, to be loved.	PARTICLE.
PERF. ämätüs essë ¹ , to have been loved.	PERF. ämätüs, having been loved.
FUT. ämätüm iri, to be about to be loved.	GER. ² ämandüs, to be loved, de- serving to be loved.

¹ *Futurum, futris, etc., are sometimes used for sīm, sis, etc., etc.—So also *futissim*, *futisses*, etc., for *essēm*, *essēs*, etc., etc.; rarely *futisse* for *esse*.*

² GER.=Gerundive. See 196, 4.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

207. ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneō, *I advise.*—STEM, mōne.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērō,	mōnuī,	mōnītāma.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneō
mōnēs
mōnēt;

PLURAL.

mōnēmaūs
mōnētis
mōnēmt.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mōnēbāma
mōnēbās
mōnēbāt;

mōnēbāmaūs
mōnēbātis
mōnēbānt.

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

mōnēbōs
mōnēbōs
mōnēbōt;

mōnēbīmaūs
mōnēbītis
mōnēbūnt.

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised.

mōnuī
mōnuīstī
mōnuīst;

mōnuīmaūs
mōnuīstis
mōnuīrant, or ērō.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mōnuērāma
mōnuērās
mōnuērāt;

mōnuērāmaūs
mōnuērātis
mōnuērānt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have advised.

mōnuērōs
mōnuērīs
mōnuērīt;

mōnuērīmaūs
mōnuērītis
mōnuērīnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mõneām	mõneāmās
mõneās	mõneātis
mõneāt;	mõneāmt.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should advise.

mõnērēm	mõnērēmās
mõnērēs	mõnērētis
mõnērēt;	mõnērēnt.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mõnučrim	mõnučrimās
mõnučris	mõnučritis
mõnučrit;	mõnučrint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have advised.

mõnuissčm	mõnuissčmaas
mõnuissčs	mõnuissčtis
mõnuissčt;	mõnuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. mõnē, advise thou; | mõnētē, advise ye.

Fut. mõnētō, thou shalt advise, | mõnētōtē, ye shall advise,
mõnētō, he shall advise; | mõnēntō, they shall advise.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mõnērē, to advise.

Praf. mõnuissč, to have advised.

Fut. mõnītarūs essē, to be
about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. mõnemās, advising.

Fut. mõnītarūs, about to advise.

GERUND.

Gen. mõnēndī, of advising,

Dat. mõnēndō, for advising,

Acc. mõnēndām, advising,

Abl. mõnēndō, by advising.

SUPINE.

Acc. mõnītām, to advise,

Abl. mõnītā, to advise, be advised.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.

Möneör, *I am advised.*—STEM, möne.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

möneör,

Pres. Inf.

mönërl,

Perf. Ind.

mönltüs süm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

möneör

mönërlis, or rö

mönëtür;

PLURAL.

mönëmrür

mönëmmäni

mönentür.

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mönëbär

mönëbärlis, or rö

mönëbätür;

mönëbämür

mönëbämäni

mönëbantür.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

mönëbör

mönëbörli, or rö

mönëblitür;

mönëbämär

mönëbämäni

mönëbuntür.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*mönltüs süm¹

mönltüs és

mönltüs est;

mönli sümüs

mönli estüs

mönli sumat.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*mönltüs öräma¹

mönltüs öräas

mönltüs öräät;

mönli örämaüs

mönli öräatis

mönli öräant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*mönltüs örö¹

mönltüs öris

mönltüs örit;

mönli örimüs

mönli öritüs

mönli örunat.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mõneär̄r	mõneämür
mõneär̄is, or rō	mõneämäml
mõneästür;	mõneamtür.

IMPERFECT.

<i>I might, could, would, or should be advised.</i>	
mõnēr̄er̄	mõnēr̄ämür
mõnēr̄er̄is, or rō	mõnēr̄ämäml
mõnēr̄estür;	mõnērentür.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

<i>mõnltüs sīm¹</i>	<i>mõnltI sīmūs</i>
<i>mõnltüs sīs</i>	<i>mõnltI sītīs</i>
<i>mõnltüs sīt;</i>	<i>mõnltI sint.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I might, could, would, or should have been advised.</i>	
<i>mõnltüs essēm¹</i>	<i>mõnltI essēmūs</i>
<i>mõnltüs essēs</i>	<i>mõnltI essētīs</i>
<i>mõnltüs essēt;</i>	<i>mõnltI essent.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mõnēr̄ō, *be thou advised*; | mõnēmäml, *be ye advised*.FUT. mõnētōr̄, *thou shalt be advised*, | mõnētōr̄, *he shall be advised* | mõnēntōr̄, *they shall be advised*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mõnēr̄l, *to be advised*.PERF. mõnltüs essē¹, *to have been advised*.FUT. mõnltümärl, *to be about to be advised*.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mõnltüs, *advised*.PERF. mõnemdlüs, *deserving to be advised*.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgō, *I rule.*—STEM, rēg.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. rēgō,	Pres. Inf. rēgōrō,	Perf. Ind. rexī, ¹	Supine. rectūmā, ¹
---------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgō

rēgl̄s

rēgl̄t;

PLURAL.

rēgīmāns

rēgit̄s

rēgunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rēgēbām̄

rēgēbās

rēgēbāt̄;

rēgēbām̄s

rēgēbāt̄s

rēgēbānt̄.

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

rēgām̄

rēgēs

rēgēt̄;

rēgēm̄s

rēgēt̄s

rēgēnt̄.

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

rexī

rexist̄l̄

rexit̄;

rexim̄s

rexist̄s

rexērant̄, or ūrō.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexērām̄

rexērās

rexērāt̄;

rexērām̄s

rexērāt̄s

rexērānt̄.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rexērō

rexērīs

rexērīt̄;

rexērīm̄s

rexērīt̄s

rexērīnt̄.

¹ See 218, III. 1; 258, I. 1; 258, II. 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgām
rēgās
rēgāt;PLURAL.
rēgāmās
rēgātis
rēgamt.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*rēgērēm
rēgērēs
rēgērēt;rēgērēmās
rēgērētis
rēgērent.

PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*rexērēm
rexērēs
rexērēt;rexērēmās
rexērētis
rexērint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*rexissēm
rexissēs
rexissēt;rexissēmās
rexissētis
rexissenent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, rule thou; | rēgītē, rule ye.

FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule, | rēgītōtē, ye shall rule,
rēgītō, he shall rule; | rēgāmantō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.

PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.

FUT. rectārēs essē, to be about
to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgens, ruling.

FUT. rectārēs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. rēgendī, of ruling,

Dat. rēgendō, for ruling,

Acc. rēgendūm, ruling,

Abl. rēgendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectāma, to rule,

Abl. rectā, to rule, be ruled.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.

Rěgör, *I am ruled.*—STEM, rěg.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
rěgör,Pres. Inf.
rěgI,Perf. Ind.
rectus¹ stum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

rěgör
rěgoris, or rö
rěgtür;

PLURAL.

rěgimaur
rěgimali
rěguntür.

IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*rěgebär
rěgebäris, or rö
rěgebätür;rěgebamur
rěgebamali
rěgebantür.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be ruled.*rěgar
rěgoris, or rö
rěgstür;rěgemiur
rěgimali
rěgentür.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*rectus stum¹
rectus ēs
rectus est;recti stumus
recti estis
recti sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rectus ērāma²
rectus ērās
rectus ērāt;recti ērāmūs
recti ērātis
recti ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rectus ērd²
rectus ēris
rectus ērit;recti ērīmūs
recti ērītis
recti ērunt.¹ See 209, foot-notes.² See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgār-	rēgāmār-
rēgārīs, or rō	rēgāmīmī
rēgātūr;	rēgamātūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be ruled.

rēgērōr	rēgērēmār
rēgērērīs, or rō	rēgērēmīmī
rēgērētūr;	rēgēremātūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sīm ¹	rectī sīmās
rectūs sīs	rectī sītīs
rectūs sīt;	rectī sīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēmā ¹	rectī essēmās
rectūs essēs	rectī essētīs
rectūs essēt;	rectī essemt.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. rēgērō, *be thou ruled*; | rēgāmīmī, *be ye ruled*.Fut. rēgētōr, *thou shalt be ruled*, | rēgētōr, *he shall be ruled*; | rēgāmātōr, *they shall be ruled*.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. rēgī, *to be ruled*.Perf. rectūs essē¹, *to have been ruled*.Fut. rectāmīs irī, *to be about to be ruled*. | GER. rēgendūs, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled*.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.

Audiō, *I hear.*—STEM, *audi.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
audiō,Pres. Inf.
audiōř,Perf. Ind.
audiōvī,Supine.
audiōvīma.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.

audiō
audiōs
audiōt;PLURAL.
audiōvīmās
audiōvītis
audiōvīmant.

IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing.*audiōbām
audiōbās
audiōbāt;audiōbāmās
audiōbātis
audiōbānt.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*audiōm
audiōs
audiōt;audiōmās
audiōtis
audiōmant.

PERFECT.

*I heard or have heard.*audiōvī
audiōvīstī
audiōvīt;audiōvīmās
audiōvīstis
audiōvīmant, or řrō.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*audiōvīrām
audiōvīrās
audiōvīrāt;audiōvīrāmās
audiōvīrātis
audiōvīrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*audiōvīrō
audiōvīrīs
audiōvīrīt;audiōvīrīmās
audiōvīrītis
audiōvīrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

SINGULAR.

audiām
audiās
audiāt;

PLURAL.

audiāmūs
audiātis
audiānt.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*audīrēm
audīrēs
audīrōt;audīrēmūs
audīrētis
audīrent.

PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*audivērīm
audivērīs
audivērīt;audivērīmūs
audivērītis
audivērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*audivissēm
audivissēs
audivissēt;audivissēmūs
audivissētis
audivissēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, *hear thou*; | audītō, *hear ye.*FUT. audītō, *thou shalt hear,* | audītōtō, *ye shall hear,*
audītō, *he shall hear;* | audīmantō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīrō, *to hear.*PRES. audivissē, *to have heard.*FUT. audītarūs *essē, to be*
about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiēm, *hearing.*FUT. audītarūs, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

GEN. audiēndī, *of hearing.*DAT. audiēndō, *for hearing.*ACC. audiēndūm, *hearing.*ABL. audiēndō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

ACC. audīttūm, *to hear.*ABL. audītū, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiör, I am heard.—STEM, audi.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
audiör,Pres. Inf.
audiör,Perf. Ind.
auditüs süm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audiör
audiöris, or rö
auditür;

PLURAL.

audiörär
audiöraini
auditürtür.

IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*audiörär
audiöräris, or rö
audiöratür;audiörämär
audiörämäni
audiörantür.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*audiör
audiöris, or rö
auditür;audiörämär
audiörämäni
auditentür.

PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*auditüs süm¹
auditüs es
auditüs est;auditı sümüs
auditı estis
auditı sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*auditüs öräm¹
auditüs öräs
auditüs örät;auditı örämüs
auditı örätis
auditı örant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*auditüs örö¹
auditüs öräs
auditüs örät;auditı örömüs
auditı örätis
auditı örunt.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be heard.

SINGULAR.

audiār
audiāris, or rē
audiatār;

PLURAL.

audiāmūr
audiāmīl
audiantār.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be heard.

audirēr
audirēris, or rē
audirētār;

audirēmūr
audirēmīl
audirēntār.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

auditās sīm¹
auditās sis
auditās sít;

auditī sīmūs
auditī sītis
auditī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been heard.

auditās essēm¹
auditās essēs
auditās essēt;

auditī essēmūs
auditī essētis
auditī essemēt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audirē, *be thou heard*; | audiāmīl, *be ye heard*.FUT. auditōr, *thou shalt be heard*, |
auditār, *he shall be heard*; | audiāntōr, *they shall be heard*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audiārī, *to be heard*.PFR. auditās essē, ¹ *to have been* | *heard*.FUT. auditāmīl īrī, *to be about* | *to be heard*.

PARTICIPLE.

PFR. auditās, *heard*.GER. audiāndās, *to be heard*,
deserving to be heard.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

213. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Principal Parts are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings, including final *a*, *e* or *i*, of the stem:¹

I.	<i>o,</i>	<i>are,</i>	<i>avi,</i>	<i>ātum.</i>
II.	<i>eo,</i>	<i>ēre,</i>	<i>ēvi,</i>	<i>ētum.</i>
		<i>2. In most verbs:</i>		
III.	<i>eo,</i>	<i>ēre,</i>	<i>ui,</i>	<i>ītum.</i>
		<i>1. In consonant stems:</i>		
IV.	<i>o,</i>	<i>ēre,</i>	<i>si,</i>	<i>tum.</i>
	<i>o,</i>	<i>ēre,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>tum.</i>
	<i>io,</i>	<i>īre,</i>	<i>īvi,</i>	<i>ītum.</i>

EXAMPLES.

I.	<i>Amo,</i>	<i>āmāre,</i>	<i>amāvi,</i>	<i>amātum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
II.	<i>1. Dēleo,</i>	<i>delēre,</i>	<i>delēvi,</i>	<i>delētum,</i>	<i>to destroy.</i>
	<i>2. Mōneo,</i>	<i>monēre,</i>	<i>monuī,</i>	<i>monītum,</i>	<i>to advise.</i>
III.	<i>1. Carpo,</i>	<i>carpēre,</i>	<i>carpāi,</i>	<i>carptum,</i>	<i>to pluck.</i>
	<i>2. Acuo,</i>	<i>ācuēre,</i>	<i>acuī,</i>	<i>acūtum,</i>	<i>to sharpen.</i>
IV.	<i>Audio,</i>	<i>audīre,</i>	<i>audiīvi,</i>	<i>audītum,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>

214. COMPOUNDS.—Compounds of verbs with dissyllabic supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts :

I. When the Present of the compound has *i* for *e* of the simple verb :

1. The Perfect and Supine generally resume the *e*:²

<i>Rēgo,</i>	<i>regēre,</i>	<i>rexī,</i>	<i>rectum,</i>	<i>to rule.</i>
<i>Di-rigo,</i>	<i>dirigēre,</i>	<i>direxī,</i>	<i>directum,</i>	<i>to direct.</i>

2. But sometimes only the Supine resumes the *e*:³

<i>Tēneo,</i>	<i>tenēre,</i>	<i>tenuī,</i>	<i>tentum,</i>	<i>to hold.</i>
<i>Dē-tineo,</i>	<i>detinēre,</i>	<i>detinuī,</i>	<i>detentum,</i>	<i>to detain.</i>

II. When the Present of the compound has *a* for *a* of the simple verb :

1. The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect and the supine takes *e*,² sometimes *a*:

¹ We class *ēvi* and *ētum* with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *ītum* are derived: thus the full forms in *mōneo* would be *monēvi*, *monītum*. By dropping *e* in *monēvi*, and by changing the consonant *v* into its corresponding vowel *u*, we have *monuī*. So by weakening *ē* into *i* in *monītum*, we have *monitum*.

² The favorite vowel before two consonants or a double consonant. See 28, 2.

Cäpio,	capäre,	cäpi,	captum,	<i>to take.</i>
Ac-cipio,	accipäre,	accäpi,	acceptum,	<i>to accept.</i>

2. But sometimes the Perfect retains i and the Supine takes e : ¹				
Räpio,	rapäre,	rapui,	raptum,	<i>to seize.</i>
Di-ripiio,	diripäre,	diripui,	direptum,	<i>to tear asunder.</i>

For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I. 4; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

215. ENTIRE CONJUGATION.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that all the forms of any regular verb, through all the moods and tenses of both voices, arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems :

I. The PRESENT SYSTEM, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises

1. The *Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.
2. The *Present and Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.
3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.
4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.
5. The *Present Active Participle*.
6. The *Gerund and the Gerundive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the ending rĕ of the Active or ri of the Passive in Conj. I. II. and IV. and ērĕ of the Active or i of the Passive in Conj. III.: *āmārĕ*, present stem **AMĀ**; *mōnērĕ*, **MONE**; *rēgērĕ*, **REG**; *audīrĕ*, **AUDI**.

II. The PERFECT SYSTEM, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active voice

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative*.
2. The *Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive*.
3. The *Perfect Infinitive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping i: *amāvi*, perfect stem **AMAV**; *monui*, **MONU**.

III. The SUPINE SYSTEM, with the Supine as its basis, comprises

1. The *Supines in ūm and ū, the former of which with īrī forms the Future Infinitive Passive*.
2. The *Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles*, the for-

¹ The favorite vowel before two consonants or a double consonant. See 28, 2.

mer of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System*.

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping *um*: *amātum*, supine stem **AMAT**; *monītum*, **MONIT**.

216. These three Systems of Forms are seen in the following Synopsis of Conjugation.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

217. FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

āmō, āmārē, āmāvī, āmātūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *āma*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. āmō	āmēm	āmā	āmārē	
Imp. āmābām	āmārēm			
Fut. āmābō		āmātō		āmans.

Gerund, āmandī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, *āmāv*.

Perf. āmāvī	āmāvērlīm		āmāvissē.	
Plup. āmāvērām	āmāvissēm			
F.P. āmāvērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *āmāt*.

Fut.		āmātūrūs	essē	āmātūrūs.
		<i>Supine</i> ,	āmātūm,	āmātū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

āmōr, āmārī, āmāttūs stūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *āma*.

Pres. āmōr	āmēr	āmārē	āmārī	
Imp. āmābār	āmārēr			
Fut. āmābōr		āmātōr		

Gerundive, āmandūs.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *āmāt*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> āmātūs sūm	āmātūs sīn		āmātūs essē	
<i>Plup.</i> āmātūs ērām	āmātūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> āmātūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			āmātūm Irī	

218. SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneō, mōnērō, mōnuī, mōnītūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *mōne*.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneō	mōneām	mōnē	mōnērō	mōnēnsa.
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbām	mōnērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbō		mōnēstō		

Gerund, mōnēndī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM: STEM, *mōnu*.

<i>Perf.</i> mōnuī	mōnuērīm		mōnuissē	
<i>Plup.</i> mōnuērām	mōnuissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnuērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *mōnīt*.

<i>Fut.</i>			mōnītūrūs essē	mōnītūrūs.
			<i>Supine</i> , mōnītūm, mōnītū.	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneōr, mōnērī, mōnītūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *mōne*.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneōr	mōneār	mōnērō	mōnērī	
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbār	mōnērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbōr		mōnēstōr		

Gerundive, mōnēndūs.3. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *mōnīt*.

<i>Perf.</i> mōnītūs sūm	mōnītūs sīm		mōnītūs essē	mōnītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> mōnītūs ērām	mōnītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnītūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			mōnītūm Irī	

219. THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *rēg.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. rēgō	rēgām	rēgō	rēgērē	
Imp. rēgēbām	rēgērēm			
Fut. rēgām		rēgītō		rēgens.

Gerund, rēgendī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, *rex.*

Perf. rexī	rexērīm		rexissē	
Plup. rexērām	rexissēm			
F. P. rexērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *rect.*

Fut.		rectūrūs essē	rectūrūs.
<i>Supine, rectūm, rectū.</i>			

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgor, rēgī, rectūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *rēg.*

Pres. rēgor	rēgār	rēgērē	rēgi	
Imp. rēgēbār	rēgērēr			
Fut. rēgār		rēgītōr		

Gerundive, rēgendūs.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *rect.*

Perf. rectūs sūm	rectūs sīm		rectūs essē	rectūs.
Plup. rectūs ērām	rectūs essēm			
F. P. rectūs ērō				
Fut.			rectūm irī	

220. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō, audirō, audivī, auditūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *audi*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. audiō	audiām	audi	audiře	
Imp. audiēbām	audiřem			
Fut. audiām		auditō		audiens.

Gerund, audiendi, dō, etc.3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, *audīv*.

Perf.	audīvī	audīvěřím		audīvissě
Plup.	audīvěřām	audīvissěm		
F. P.	audīvěřō			

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *audīt*.

Fut.			auditūrūs essě	auditūrūs.
			Supine, auditūm, auditū.	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiōr, audīrī, auditūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *audi*.

Pres.	audiōr	audiär	audiře	audiři
Imp.	audiēbär	audiřer		
Fut.	audiär		auditör	

Gerundive, audiendūs.3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *audīt*.

Perf.	auditūs sūm	auditūs sīm		auditūs essě	auditūs.
Plup.	auditūs ěřām	auditūs essěm			
F. P.	auditūs ěřō				
Fut.				auditūm īři	

THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **io**, **ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels. These verbs are

1. The following with their compounds:

Cäpio, to take; *cūpio*, to desire; *fäcio*, to make; *fōdio*, to dig; *fūgio*, to flee; *jäcio*, to throw; *pärio*, to bear; *quäatio*, to shake; *räpio*, to seize; *säpio*, to be wise.

2. The compounds of the obsolete *lūcio*, to entice, and *spēcio*, to look; *allicio*, *ēlicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*, etc.; *aspicio*, *conspicio*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs: *grādior*, to go; *mōrior*, to die; *pātior*, to suffer. See 225.

222. ACTIVE VOICE.

Cāpio, I take.—STEM, *cāp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
cāpiō,

Pres. Inf.
cāpērē,

Perf. Ind.
cēpī,

Supine.
captūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PRES.	<i>cāpiō</i> , <i>cāpis</i> , <i>cāpīt</i> ;	<i>cāpīmūs</i> , <i>cāpītūs</i> , <i>cāpiunt</i> .
IMP.	<i>cāpiēbām</i> , -iēbās, -iēbāt;	<i>cāpiēbāmūs</i> , -iēbatīs, -iēbant.
FUT.	<i>cāpiām</i> , -iēs, -iēt;	<i>cāpiēmūs</i> , -iētīs, -iēnt.
PERF.	<i>cēpī</i> , -istī, -it;	<i>cēpīmūs</i> , -istīs, -ērunt, or ērē.
PLUP.	<i>cēpērām</i> , -ērās, -ērāt;	<i>cēpērāmūs</i> , -ērātīs, -ērant.
FUT. PERF.	<i>cēpērō</i> , -ērīs, -ērit;	<i>cēpērīmūs</i> , -ērītīs, -ērint.

PLURAL.

S U B J U N C T I V E .

PRES.	<i>cāpiām</i> , -iās, -iāt;	<i>cāpiāmūs</i> , -iātīs, -iānt.
IMP.	<i>cāpērēm</i> , -ērās, -ērēt;	<i>cāpērēmūs</i> , -ērētīs, -ērent.
PERF.	<i>cēpērīm</i> , -ērīs, -ērit;	<i>cēpērīmūs</i> , -ērītīs, -ērint.
PLUP.	<i>cēpissēm</i> , -issēs, -issēt;	<i>cēpissēmūs</i> , -issētīs, -issēnt.

I M P E R A T I V E .

PRES.	<i>cāpē</i> ;	<i>cāpītē</i> .
FUT.	<i>cāpītō</i> ,	<i>cāpītōtē</i> ,
	<i>cāpītō</i> ;	<i>cāpiuntō</i> .

I N F I N I T I V E .

PRES.	<i>cāpērē</i> .
PERF.	<i>cēpissē</i> .
FUT.	<i>captūrūs</i> 'essē.

P A R T I C I P L E .

PRES.	<i>cāpiens</i> .
FUT.	<i>captūrūs</i> .

G E R U N D .

Gen.	<i>cāpiendī</i> .
Dat.	<i>cāpiendō</i> .
Acc.	<i>cāpiendīm</i> .
Abl.	<i>cāpiendō</i> .

S U P I N E .

Acc.	<i>captūm</i> .
Abl.	<i>captū</i> .

223. PASSIVE VOICE.

Cápior, *I am taken.*—STEM, *cáp.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

cápiōr,

Pres. Inf.

cápī,

Perf. Ind.

captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

PRES.	cápiōr, cápērīs, cárptūr;	cápīmār, cápīmīnī, cárpiuntūr.
IMP.	cápiébār, -iébārlīs, -iébātūr;	cápiébāmār, -iébāmīnī, -iébāntūr.
FUT.	cápiār, -iérīs, -iétūr;	cápīmūr, -iémīnī, -iēntūr.
PERF.	captūs sūm, és, est;	captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
PLUP.	captūs érām, érās, érāt;	captī érāmūs, érātīs, érant.
FUT. PERF.	captūs érō, érīs, érit;	captī érīmūs, érītīs, érunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	cápiār, -iárlīs, -iátūr;	cápīmār, -iámīnī, -iāntūr.
IMP.	cápērōr, -érērlīs, -érētūr;	cápērēmār, -érēmīnī, -érēntūr.
PERF.	captūs sīm, sīa, sīt;	captī sīmūs, sītīs, sīnt.
PLUP.	captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;	captī essēmūs, essētīs, essēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	cápērō;	cápīmīnī.
FUT.	cápītōr, cápītōr;	cárpiuntōr.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	cápī.	
PERF.	captūs essē.	PERF. captūs.
FUT.	captūm IR.	GER. cárpiendūa.

224. SYNOPSIS.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cápiō, cápērō, cápī, captūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *cáp.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. cápiō	cápīmār	cápērō	cápērē	
Imp. cápiébām	cápērēmār			
Fut. cápiām	cápītōr			

Gerund, cárpiendi, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM: STEM, *cēp*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpl̄	cēpēr̄im		cēpissē	
<i>Plup.</i> cēpērām	cēpissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> cēpērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *capt.*

<i>Fut.</i>			| captūrūs essē | captūrūs.	
			<i>Supine</i> , captūm, captū.	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

căpiōr, căpI, captūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *căpi*.

<i>Pres.</i> căpiōr	căpiār	căpēr̄e	căpI	
<i>Imp.</i> căpiēbār	căpēr̄			
<i>Fut.</i> căpiār		căpētōr		

Gerundive, căpiendūs.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *capt.*

<i>Perf.</i> captūs sūm	captūs sīm		captūs essē	captūs.
<i>Plup.</i> captūs ērām	captūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> captūs ērō			captūm ir̄	

DEONENT VERBS.

225. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

226. Hortor, *I exhort.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortōr, hortār̄, hortatūs sūm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *horta*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. hortör ¹	hortér	hortäré	hortäri	
Imp. hortäbär	hortärér			
Fut. hortäbör		hortätör		hortans.

Gerund, hortandl. *Gerundive*, hortandüs.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *hortät*.

Perf. hortätüs süm	hortätüs sám	hortätüs essé	hortätüs.
Plup. hortätüs ēräm	hortätüs essém		
F. P. hortätüs ērö			
Fut.		hortätürüs essé	hortätürüs.

Supine, hortätüm, hortätü.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

227. *Vereor, I fear.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

věreör, věrērl, věritüs süm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *věre*.

Pres. věreör	věreär	věrēré	věrērl	věrens.
Imp. věrēbär	věrērér			
Fut. věrēbör		věrētör		

Gerund, věrendl. *Gerundive*, věrendüa.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *věrit*.

Perf. věritüs süm	věritüs sám	věritüs essé	věritüs.
Plup. věritüs ēräm	věritüs essém		
F. P. věritüs ērö			
Fut.		věritürüs essé	věritürüs.

Supine, věritüm, věritü.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

228. *Sęquor, I follow.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sęquör, sęqui, sęcültüs süm.

¹ The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *hortör*, *hortäris*, *hortätär*, *hortämär*, *hortämäni*, *hortantär*. All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Gerundive*, which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. From the passive force the *Gerundive* cannot be used in intransitive Dep. verba, except in an impersonal sense. See 801, 1.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *sěqu.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. sěquör	sěquär	sěquérö	sěqui	sěquens.
Imp. sěquēbär	sěquérér			
Fut. sěquär		sěquiltör		

Gerund, sěquendi. *Gerundive*, sěquendüs.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *sěcüt.*

Perf. sěcütüs süm	sěcütüs süm	sěcütüs essë	sěcütüs.
Plup. sěcütüs čräm	sěcütüs essäm		
F. P. sěcütüs čró			
Fut.		sěcütürüs esse	sěcütürüs.

Supine, sěcütüm, sěcütü.229. Pätiör, *I suffer.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

pätiör, pätl, passüs süm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *päti.*

Pres. pätiör	pätiär	pätiör	päti	pätiens.
Imp. pätiēbär	pätiérér			
Fut. pätiär		pätiör		

Gerund, pätiendi. *Gerundive*, pätiendüs.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *pass.*

Perf. passüs süm	passüs süm	passüs essë	passüs.
Plup. passüs čräm	passüs easäm		
F. P. passüs čró			
Fut.		passürüs esse	passürüs.

Supine, passüm, passü.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

230. Blandior, *I flatter.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

blandiör, blandirł, blanditüs süm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *blandi.*

Pres. blandiör	blandiär	blandiré	blandirł	blandiens.
Imp. blandiēbär	blandirér			
Fut. blandiär		blandi-tör		

Gerund, blandiendi. *Gerundive*, blandiendüs.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *blandit.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Perf. <i>blanditūs sūm</i>	<i>blanditūs sīm</i>		<i>blanditūs essē</i>	<i>blanditūs.</i>
Plup. <i>blanditūs ērām</i>	<i>blanditūs essēm</i>			
F. P. <i>blanditūs ērō</i>				
Fut. <i></i>			<i>blanditūrūs esse</i>	<i>blanditūrūs.</i>

Supine, blanditūm, blanditū.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

281. The ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action :

Amatūrus sum, I am about to love.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Pres. <i>āmātūrūs sūm</i> ¹	<i>āmātūrūs sīm</i>	<i>āmātūrūs essē.</i>
Imp. <i>āmātūrūs ērām</i>	<i>āmātūrūs essēm</i>	
Fut. <i>āmātūrūs ērō</i>		
Perf. <i>āmātūrūs fuī</i>	<i>āmātūrūs fuērīm</i>	<i>āmātūrūs fuissē.</i>
Plup. <i>āmātūrūs fuērām</i>	<i>āmātūrūs fuissēm</i>	
Fut. Perf. <i>āmātūrūs fuērō</i> ¹		

282. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

Amandus sum, I must be loved.²

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Pres. <i>āmandūs sūm</i>	<i>āmandūs sīm</i>	<i>āmandūs essē.</i>
Imp. <i>āmandūs ērām</i>	<i>āmandūs essēm</i>	
Fut. <i>āmandūs ērō</i>		
Perf. <i>āmandūs fuī</i>	<i>āmandūs fuērīm</i>	<i>āmandūs fuissē.</i>
Plup. <i>āmandūs fuērām</i>	<i>āmandūs fuissēm</i>	
Fut. Perf. <i>āmandūs fuērō</i>		

283. The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum*; but as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amans est = amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

¹ The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amatūrus sum, ea, est.* The Fut. Perf. is exceedingly rare.

² Or, *I deserve (ought) to be loved.*

PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

234. Perfects in *āvi*, *ēvi*, *īvi*, and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *s* and *r*. Thus

A-i and **a-e** become *ā*: *āmaristi* (*amaisti*), *amasti*; *amavēram* (*amaeram*), *amāram*; *amarisse* (*amaisse*), *amasse*.

E-i and **e-e** become *ē*: *nēvi* (*to spin*), *nevisti* (*neisti*), *nesti*; *nevērunt* (*neerunt*), *nērunt*.

I-i becomes *i*: *audivisti* (*audiisti*), *audisti*; *audivissem* (*audiissem*), *audissem*.

1. Perfects in *īvi* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before *s*: *audīvi*, *audīi*, *audīit*, *audīeram*; *audīvisti*, *audiisti* or *audisti*.

2. Perfects in *ōvi*.—The perfects of *nosco*, to know, and *mōveo*, to move, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *r* and *s*: *nōvisti*, *nosti*.

3. Perfects in *īi* and *xi* sometimes drop *is*, or *sis*: *scripti*, *scripti*; *dixisse*, *dixe*; *accessistis*, *acceſtis*.

235. *Erē* for *ērunt*, as the ending of the third Pers. Pl. of the Perf. Ind. Act., is common in the historians.

The form in *ēre* does not drop *v*. In poetry *ērunt* occurs.

236. *Re* for *ris* in the ending of the second Pers. of the Pass. is rare in the Pres. Indic.

237. *Dio*, *duo*, *fao*, and *fer*, for *dice*, *dūce*, *fāce*, and *fōre*, are the Imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, *fācio*, and *fōrō*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

1. *Dice*, *dūce*, and *fāce*, occur in poetry.

2. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *fācio* which change *a* into *i*: *confice*.

238. *Undus* and *undi* for *endus* and *endi* occur as the endings of the Gerundive and Gerund of Conj. III. and IV.: *dicundus*, from *dico*, to say; *pōtiundus*, from *pōtior*, to obtain.

239. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in

1. *Ibam* for *iēbam*, in the Imp. Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scibam* for *sciēbam*. See Imp. of *eo*, to go, 295.

2. *Ibo*, *ibor*, for *iam*, *iar*, in the Fut. of Conj. IV.: *servibo* for *ser-viam*; *oppēribor* for *opperiar*. See Fut. of *eo*, 295.

3. *im* for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *ēdīm*, *edīs*, etc., for *ēdām*, *as*, etc.; *duim* (from *duo*, for *do*), for *dem*.—In *sīm*, *vēlīm*, *nōlīm*, *malīm* (204 and 293), *im* is the common ending.

4. **asso**, **esso**, and **so**, in the Fut. Perf., and **assim**, **essim**, and **sim**, in the Perf. Subj. of Conj. I. II. III.: *fazo* (*facso*) for *fēcēro*¹ (from *fācio*); *fazim* for *fēcērim*¹; *ausim* for *ausus sim* (for *ausērim*, from *audeo*). Rare examples are: *lēvasso* for *levavēro*; *prohibesso* for *prohibuēro*; *capso* for *cēpēro*; *axo* for *ēgēro*; *jusso* for *jussēro*; *occisit* for *occidērit*; *taxis* for *tēligēris*.

5. to and **mīno** for **tor**, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular, of the Fut. Imp. Pass. and Dep.: *arbīrāto*, *arbitrāmīno* for *arbi-trātor*; *ūtunto* for *ūtuntor*.

6. **ier** for **i** in the Pres. Pass. Infin.: *āmāriēr* for *amāri*; *vīdēriēr* for *vidēri*.

240. COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

I. PRESENT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
STEM, <i>āma</i> .	<i>mōne</i> .	<i>rēg</i> .	<i>audi</i> .
IND. PRES. <i>āmō</i> = <i>amao</i>	<i>mōned</i>	<i>rēgō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
	<i>amās</i> ²	<i>regis</i>	<i>audis</i>
IMP. <i>amābām</i>	<i>monēbām</i>	<i>regēbām</i>	<i>audiēbām</i>
	<i>amābās</i>	<i>regēbās</i>	<i>audiēbās</i>
FUT. <i>amābō</i>	<i>monēbō</i>	<i>regām</i>	<i>audiām</i>
	<i>amābīs</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>audiēs</i>
SUB. PRES. <i>amēm</i> = <i>amaim</i>	<i>moneām</i>	<i>regām</i>	<i>audiām</i>
	<i>amēs</i>	<i>regās</i>	<i>audiās</i>
IMP. <i>amārēm</i>	<i>monērēm</i>	<i>regērēm</i>	<i>audirēm</i>
	<i>amārēs</i>	<i>regērēs</i>	<i>audirēs</i>
IMP. PRES. <i>amā</i>	<i>monē</i>	<i>regē</i>	<i>audē</i>
FUT. <i>amātō</i>	<i>monētō</i>	<i>regitō</i>	<i>auditō</i>
INF. PRES. <i>amārē</i>	<i>monērē</i>	<i>regērē</i>	<i>audirē</i>
PAR. PRES. <i>amans</i>	<i>monens</i>	<i>regens</i>	<i>audiens</i>
GERUND. <i>amandl.</i>	<i>monendl.</i>	<i>regendl.</i>	<i>audiendl.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

IND. PRES. <i>amōr</i>	<i>moneōr</i>	<i>regōr</i>	<i>audiōr</i>
	<i>amārīs</i> (rē)	<i>regērīs</i> (rē)	<i>audirīs</i> (rē)
IMP. <i>amābār</i>	<i>monēbār</i>	<i>regēbār</i>	<i>audiēbār</i>
	<i>amābārīs</i> (rē)	<i>regēbārīs</i> (rē)	<i>audiēbārīs</i> (rē)
FUT. <i>amābōr</i>	<i>monēbōr</i>	<i>regār</i>	<i>audiār</i>
	<i>amabērīs</i> (rē)	<i>regērīs</i> (rē)	<i>audiērīs</i> (rē)
SUB. PRES. <i>amēr</i> = <i>amair</i>	<i>moneār</i>	<i>regār</i>	<i>audiār</i>
	<i>amērīs</i> (rē)	<i>regārīs</i> (rē)	<i>audiārīs</i> (re)
IMP. <i>amārēr</i>	<i>monērēr</i>	<i>regērēr</i>	<i>audirēr</i>
	<i>amarērīs</i> (rē)	<i>regerērīs</i> (rē)	<i>audirērīs</i> (rē)
IMP. PRES. <i>amārē</i>	<i>monērō</i>	<i>regērē</i>	<i>audirē</i>
FUT. <i>amātōr</i>	<i>monētōr</i>	<i>regitōr</i>	<i>auditōr</i>
INF. PRES. <i>amārī</i>	<i>monērī</i>	<i>regī</i>	<i>audirī</i>
GER. <i>amandūs.</i>	<i>monendūs.</i>	<i>regendūs.</i>	<i>audiendūs.</i>

¹ Remember that *r* in *ēro* and *ērim* was originally *s*. See 85, and foot-note 2, p. 70.

² In the same manner all the persons of both numbers may be compared.

II. PERFECT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
STEM,	āmdv.	mōnu.	rex.	audīv.
IND. PERF.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	audīvī
	amavistī	monuistī	existī	audivistī
PLUP.	amavērām	monuērām	rexērām	audivērām
	amavērās	monuērās	rexērās	audivērās
F. PERF.	amavērō	monuērō	rexērō	audivērō
	amavērīs	monuērīs	rexērīs	audivērīs
SUB. PERF.	amavērīm	monuērīm	rexērīm	audivērīm
	amavērīs	monuērīs	rexērīs	audivērīs
PLUP.	amavissēm	monuissēm	rexissēm	audivisaēm
	amavissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	audivisēs
INV. PERF.	amavissē.	monuissē.	rexissē.	audivissē.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

STEM,	āmat.	mōnū.	rect.	audīt.
INV. FUT.	amātūrūs essē	monlītūrūs essē	rectūrūs essē	auditūrūs essē
PAR. FUT.	amatūrūs	monitūrūs	rectūrūs	auditūrūs
SUPINE,	amātūm.	monlītūm.	rectūm.	auditūm.

PASSIVE VOICE.

IND. PERF.	amātūs sūm	monlītūs sūm	rectūs sūm	auditūs sūm
	amātūs ēs	monlītūs ēs	rectūs ēs	auditūs ēs
PLUP.	amātūs ērām	monlītūs ērām	rectūs ērām	auditūs ērām
	amātūs ērās	monlītūs ērās	rectūs ērās	auditūs ērās
F. PERF.	amātūs ērō	monlītūs ērō	rectūs ērō	auditūs ērō
	amātūs ērīs	monlītūs ērīs	rectūs ērīs	auditūs ērīs
SUB. PERF.	amātūs sīm	monlītūs sīm	rectūs sīm	auditūs sīm
	amātūs sīs	monlītūs sīs	rectūs sīs	auditūs sīs
PLUP.	amātūs essēm	monlītūs essēm	rectūs essēm	auditūs essēm
	amātūs essēs	monlītūs essēs	rectūs essēs	auditūs essēs
INV. PERF.	amātūs essē	monlītūs essē	rectūs essē	auditūs essē
FUT.	amātūm Irl	monlītūm Irl	rectūm Irl	auditūm Irl
PAR. PERF.	amātūs.	monlītūs.	rectūs.	auditūs.

1. From this Synopsis it will be seen :

1) That the Four Conjugations differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System*.

2) That even these differences have been produced in the main by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of endings.

3) That the Four Conjugations are thus only varieties of one general system of inflection.

ANALYSIS OF VERBAL ENDINGS.

241. The endings which are appended to the stems in the formation of the various parts of the finite verb contain three distinct elements :

1. The TENSE-SIGN : *ba* in *āmā-bā-m*, *rēg-č-bā-s*.
2. The MOOD-VOWEL : *a* in *mōne-a-s*, *rēg-a-s*.
3. The PERSONAL ENDING : *s* in *mōne-a-s*, *rēg-a-s*.

I. TENSE-SIGNS.

242. The Present is without any tense-sign : *āmā-s*.
So also the Future¹ in Conj. III. and IV.

243. The other tenses² have the following

TENSE-SIGNS.

IND.	IMP.	<i>ba</i> :	<i>āmā-bā-s</i> :	<i>rēg-č-bā-s</i> .
FUT.		<i>bi</i> :	<i>āmā-bi-s</i> :	<i>mōnč-bi-s</i> .
PLUP.		<i>čra</i> :	<i>āmāv-črā-s</i> :	<i>rex-črā-s</i> .
F. PERF.		<i>čri</i> :	<i>āmāv-črī-s</i> :	<i>audīv-črī-s</i> .
SUBJ. IMP.		<i>čra</i> :	{ <i>rēg-črē-s</i> , for <i>rēg-čra-i-s</i> . <i>āmā-črē-s</i> , for <i>āma-čra-i-s</i> . ³	
PERF.		<i>čri</i> :	<i>rex-črī-s</i> :	<i>audīv-črī-s</i> .
PLUP.		<i>issa</i> :	<i>rex-issē-s</i> , for <i>rex-issa-i-s</i> . ³	

II. MOOD-SIGNS.

244. The Indicative has no special sign to mark the Mood.

245. The Subjunctive has a long vowel—ā, ē,⁴ or ī⁵—

¹ This Future is in form a Present Subjunctive, though it has assumed in full the force of the Future Indicative. See foot-note 5 below.

² These are all compounded with the tenses of *sum* : Thus in *āmā-bām* and *āmā-bč*, the ending *bām* = *črām* is the Imperfect from the stem *bhu*, the old form of *fu* in *fui*, and *bč* = *črč* is the Future from the same stem. In *āmāv-črām* and *āmāv-črč*, the endings *črām* and *črč* are the Imperfect and Future of *sum* from the stem *čs*. In *rēg-črēm* the ending *črēm* is for *čsēm*, the ancient form of *češm*; in *rex-črīm*, *črīm* is for *čsēm* = *čtīm*, and in *rex-črēm*, *črēm* is for *češm*.

³ See foot-note 5 below.

⁴ This ē comes from *a-i*, of which the ī alone is the true Mood-Sign.

⁵ The Latin Subjunctive contains the forms of two distinct Moods,—the Subjunctive with the sign ā, and the Optative with the sign ī, sometimes

before the Personal Endings : *mōne-ā-mūs*, *ām-ē-mūs*, *s-i-mūs*. But

1. This vowel is shortened before final *m* and *t*, and sometimes in the Perfect before *s*, *mūs* and *tīs*: *mōneām*, *āmōt*, *sīt*, *fuērlīs*, *āmāvērlīmūs*, *āmāvērlītīs*.

246. The Imperative is distinguished by its Personal Endings. See 247, 3.

III. PERSONAL ENDINGS.

247. The Personal Endings are formed from ancient pronominal stems, and have, accordingly, the force of pronouns in English. They are as follows :

PERSON.	ACT.	PASS.	MEANING.
Sing. ¹	<i>First Pers.</i> ,	<i>m</i> ,	<i>I</i> .
	<i>Second,</i>	<i>s</i> ,	<i>thou, you.</i>
	<i>Third,</i>	<i>t</i> ,	<i>he, she, it.</i>
Plur. ²	<i>First,</i>	<i>mūs</i> ,	<i>we.</i>
	<i>Second,</i>	<i>tīs</i> ,	<i>you.</i>
	<i>Third,</i>	<i>nt</i> ,	<i>they.</i>

contained in *ə* for *a-i*. Thus: Subjunctive, *mōne-ā-mūs*, *audi-ā-tīs*; Optative, *s-i-mūs*, *rexer-ī-tīs*, *ām-ē-mūs* for *ama-i-mūs*, *rēgēr-ē-s*, for *rēgēra-i-s*. The Subjunctive and Optative forms, originally distinct, have in the Latin been blended into one Mood, called the Subjunctive, and are used without any difference of meaning. Thus the Mood in *mōne-ā-mūs*, a Subjunctive form, has precisely the same force as in *ām-ē-mūs*, an Optative form.

The 1st Pers. Sing. of Futures in *ām-rēgām*, *audiām*, etc.—is in form a Subjunctive, while the other Persons, *rēgēs*, *ēt*, etc., *audīs*, *ēt*, etc., are in form Optatives.

¹ In the Singular these Personal Endings contain each, (1) in the Active Voice one pronominal stem, *m*, I; *s*, thou, you; *t*, he; and (2) in the Passive two such stems—one denoting the Person, and the other the Passive Voice: thus in the ending *tūr*, *t* (*tu*) denotes the person, and *r*, the voice. *R* of the first person stands for *m-r*.

² In the Plural the Endings contain each, (1) in the Active two pronominal stems: *mū-s = m* (*mu*) and *s*, I and you, i. e. we; *tīs = t* (the original form for *s*, thou, as seen in *tu*, thou) and *s = s* and *s*, thou and thou, i. e. you; *nt = n* and *t*, he and he, i. e. they, and (2) in the Passive three such stems—the third denoting the Passive voice: thus in *ntūr*, *nt* (*ntu*) denotes the person and number, and *r*, the voice.

³ *Mīnī* was not originally a Personal Ending, but the Plural of a Passive Participle, not otherwise used in Latin, but seen in the Greek (*μενοί*). *Amāmīnī*, originally *āmāmīnī estīs*, means *you are loved*, as *amātī estīs* means *you have been loved*.

EXAMPLES.

āmābā-m,	amābā-r;	rēgō,	regō-r.
amābā-s,	amabā-ris;	regi-s,	regi-ris.
amābā-t,	amabā-tür;	regi-t,	regi-tür.
amabā-mūs,	amabā-mür;	regi-mūs,	regi-mür.
amabā-tīs,	amabā-mīnI;	regi-tīs,	regi-mīnI.
amābā-n̄t,	amabā-ntür;	regu-n̄t,	regu-ntür.

1. OMITTED.—The ending *m* is omitted in the Pres.¹ Perf., and Fut. Perf. Ind. of all the conjugations, and in the Fut. Ind. of Conj. I. and II. Accordingly in those forms the First Person ends in the connecting vowel *o*: *āmō*, *amabō*, *amavēro*; except in the Perfect, where it ends in *i*: *āmdvī*.

2. The Endings of the Perfect Act. are peculiar. They are the same as in *fūi*:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First Pers.</i> ,	<i>fu-i</i> ; ²	<i>fu-i-mūs</i> .
<i>Second</i> ,	<i>fu-is-ti</i> ;	<i>fu-is-tīs</i> .
<i>Third</i> ,	<i>fu-i-t</i> ;	<i>fu-ēru-nt</i> , or <i>ērē</i> .

3. The Imperative Mood has the following Personal Endings:

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
<i>Pres. Second Pers.</i> , — ³ ,	<i>tē</i> ;	<i>rē</i> ,
<i>Fut. Second</i> ,	<i>tō</i> ,	<i>tōr.</i>
<i>Third</i> ,	<i>tō</i> ,	<i>tōr</i> , <i>ntōr.</i>

248. Infinitives, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are formed with the following endings :

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Infinitive Present</i> ,	<i>rē</i> (<i>ērē</i>),	<i>rī</i> (<i>ērī</i>), <i>I</i> ,
<i>Perfect</i> ,	<i>issē</i> ,	<i>ūs essē</i> ,
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>ūrūs essō</i> ,	<i>ūm Irl.</i>

¹ Except in *ēum*, I am, and *inguām*, I say.

² *M* is omitted in the first person, and *tī*, an ancient form of *sī*, *s*, is used in the second. Otherwise the endings themselves are regular, but in the second person *tī* and *tīs* are preceded by *is*, and *ērunt* in *fu-ērunt*, is for *ērunt*, the full form for *sūnt*. Thus *fu-ērunt* is a compound of *fu* and *ērunt* for *sūnt*. *Fu-istis*, in like manner, may be a compound of *fu* and *istis* for *estis*, and *fu-isti*, of *fu* and *isti* for *esti* for *ēs*.

³ In the Present the ending is dropped in the Sing. Act., and the endings *tē* and *rē* are shortened from *tīs* and *rīs* of the Indicative by dropping *s* and changing final *i* into *ē*. See 28, 1. In the Future *tō* of the 2d pers. corresponds to *tī* of the Perfect Ind., *tō* and *ntō* of the 3d pers. to *t* and *nt*. *Tōr* and *ntōr* add *r* to *tō* and *ntō*. *Tōtē* doubles the pronominal stem.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Participle Present,</i>	ns.	
<i>Future,</i>	tūrīs.	
<i>Perfect,</i>		tūs.
<i>Gerundive,</i>		ndūs.
<i>Gerund,</i>	ndl.	
<i>Sugine,</i>	ūm, ū.	

FORMATION OF STEMS.

249. The three Special Stems are all formed from the Verb Stem.

I. PRESENT STEM.

250. The Present Stem is generally the same as the Verb Stem. Thus *āma*, *mōne*, *rēg*, and *audi*, are at once Present Stems and Verb Stems.

251. The Present Stem, when not identical with the Verb Stem, is formed from it by one of the following methods :

1. By inserting **n**—changed to **m** before **b** or **p**:

Frango;	<i>stem</i> , frag;	<i>pres. stem</i> , frang;	<i>to break.</i>
Fundo;	fud;	fund;	<i>to pour.</i>
Rumpo;	rup;	rump;	<i>to burst.</i>

2. By adding **n**, especially to vowel stems:

Síno;	<i>stem</i> , sī;	<i>pres. stem</i> , sīn;	<i>to permit.</i>
Sperno;	spēr, sprē;	sperm;	<i>to spurn.</i>
Temno;	tēm;	temn;	<i>to despise.</i>

3. By adding **a**, **e**, or **i**:

Jívō;	<i>stem</i> , jív;	<i>pres. stem</i> , júva;	<i>to assist.</i>
Vídō;	víd;	víde;	<i>to see.</i>
Cápio;	cáp;	cápi;	<i>to take.</i>
Vincio;	vínc;	vinci;	<i>to bind.</i>
Haurio;	haur for haus;	hauri;	<i>to draw.</i>

4. By adding **sc**,—to consonant stems **isc**:

Větřrasoo;	<i>stem</i> , větřra;	<i>pres. stem</i> , veterasc;	<i>to grow old.</i>
Cílesco;	cíle;	calesc;	<i>to become warm.</i>
Cresco;	crē;	cresc;	<i>to increase.</i>
Apiscor;	čp;	apisc;	<i>to obtain.</i>
Nanciscor;	nac;	nancisc; ¹	<i>to obtain.</i>

5. By adding **t**:

Plecto; *stem*, plč;

pres. stem, plect;

to braid.

¹ *N* is inserted and *sc* added. See 1 above.

6. By doubling the final consonant—**l**, **r**, or **t**:

Pello; *stem*, pel; *pres. stem*, pell; *to drive*.
 Curro; cur; curr; *to run*.
 Mitto; mit; mitt; *to send*.

7. By reduplication:

Gigno; *stem*, gēn; *pres. stem*, gīgēn, gign; *to beget*.
 Slisto; sta; sista, sist; *to place*.
 Sēro; sa; sīsa, sīs, sēr; *to sow*.

II. PERFECT STEMS.

252. Vowel Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **v**:

Amo (a-o), āmāvi, *stem*, āma; *perf. stem*, āmāv; *to love*.
 Dēleo, delēvi, dēle; dēlēv; *to destroy*.
 Audio, audīvi, audi; audīv; *to hear*.

1. Most stems in *e* and a few in *a* drop the final vowel and change *v* to *u*.

Mōneo, monui; *stem*, mōne; *perf. stem*, mōnev, mōnu; *to advise*.
 Crēpo(a-o), crēpui; crēpa; crēpav, crēpu; *to break*.

2. In verbs in *uo*, the Perfect Stem is the same as the Verb Stem:

Acuo, ācui; *stem*, acu; *perf. stem*, acu; *to sharpen*.

253. Many Liquid Stems, and a few others, form the Perfect Stem by adding **u**:

Alo, ālui; *stem*, āl; *perf. stem*, ālu; *to nourish*.
 Frēmo, frēmui; frēm; frēmu; *to rage*.
 Tēneo, tēnui; tēn; tēnu; *to hold*.
 Dōceo, dōcui; dōe; dōcu; *to teach*.

254. Most Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **s**:

Carpo, carpsai; *stem*, carp; *perf. stem*, carps; *to pluck*.
 Rēgo, rex; rēg; rex=regs; *to rule*.
 Scribo, scripsi; scrib; scrips=scribs; *to write*.

255. A few Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem without any suffix whatever. But of these

I. Some reduplicate the stem:¹

Cāno, cěčni; *stem*, cān; *perf. stem*, cěčn; *to sing*.

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*,—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples under 273, I.

2. The STEM-VOWEL *a* is generally weakened to *ē*, sometimes to *e*: cādo, cēčdī (for cēočdī), *to fall*.

¹ See list, 273, I.

3. REDUPLICATION WITH *Sp* OR *St.*—In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeo*, *spōpondi* (for *spōpondi*), to promise; *sto*, *stāti* (for *stāsti*), to stand.

4. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, to give; *sto*, to stand; *disco*, to learn; *posco*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*, to run: *re-spondeo*, *respondei* (redup. dropped), to answer; *circum-do*, *circum-dēdi* (redup. retained); *circum-sto*, *circum-stāti*, to encircle. The compounds of *do* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *i*: *ad-do*, *ad-dēdi* (for *ad-dēdi*), to add.

II. Some lengthen the Stem-Vowel:¹

<i>Emo, ēmi;</i>	<i>stem, ēm;</i>	<i>perf. stem, ēm;</i>	<i>to buy.</i>
<i>Ago, ēgi;</i>	<i>āg;</i>	<i>ēg;</i>	<i>to drive.</i>
<i>Ab-Igo, āb-ēgi;</i>	<i>ābilg;</i>	<i>ābēg;</i>	<i>to drive away.</i>

1. The stem-vowels *ă* and (in compounds) *i* generally become *ē*, as in *āgo* and *āb-igo*.

III. Some retain the stem unchanged:¹

<i>Ico, Ici;</i>	<i>stem, ic;</i>	<i>perf. stem, ic;</i>	<i>to strike.</i>
<i>Viso, visi;</i>	<i>vis;</i>	<i>vis;</i>	<i>to visit.</i>

1. Of the few verbs belonging to this class, nearly all have the stem-vowel long, either by nature or by position.

III. SUPINE STEM.

'256. Vowel Stems and most Consonant Stems form the Supine Stem by adding **t**:

<i>Amo = āmao,</i>	<i>āmātūm;</i>	<i>stem, āma, sup. st.</i>	<i>āmāt;</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Dēleo,</i>	<i>dēlētūm;</i>	<i>dēle,</i>	<i>dēlet;</i>	<i>to destroy.</i>
<i>Mōneo,</i>	<i>mōnītūm;</i>	<i>mōne,²</i>	<i>mōnīt;²</i>	<i>to advise.</i>
<i>Audio,</i>	<i>audītūm;</i>	<i>audi,</i>	<i>audit;</i>	<i>to hear.</i>
<i>Dico,</i>	<i>dictūm;</i>	<i>dic,</i>	<i>dict;</i>	<i>to say.</i>
<i>Campo,</i>	<i>carptūm;</i>	<i>carp,</i>	<i>carpt;</i>	<i>to pluck.</i>

257. Stems in **d** and **t**, most stems in **l** and **r**, and a few others, add **s** to the Verb Stem.

<i>Laedo, laesum;</i>	<i>stem, laed,</i>	<i>sup. st. laes³</i>	<i>(for laeds);</i>	<i>to hurt.</i>
<i>Plaudo, plausum;</i>	<i>plaud,</i>	<i>plaus</i>	<i>(for plauds);</i>	<i>to applaud.</i>
<i>Video, visum;</i>	<i>vīd,</i>	<i>vis</i>	<i>(for vids);</i>	<i>to see.</i>
<i>Verto, versum;</i>	<i>vert,</i>	<i>vers³</i>	<i>(forverts);</i>	<i>to turn.</i>
<i>Vello,⁴ vulsum;</i>	<i>vōl,</i>	<i>vuls⁵</i>	<i>(for vols);</i>	<i>to pluck.</i>
<i>Verro,⁴ versum;</i>	<i>ver,</i>	<i>vers;</i>		<i>to brush.</i>

¹ See lists, 278, II. and III.

² See 36.

⁴ See 251, 6.

³ See 218, foot-note.

⁵ See 28, and 298, 1.

258. EUPHONIC CHANGES IN STEMS.

I. BEFORE S IN THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

1. A GUTTURAL—**c**, **g**, **qu**¹ or **h**—generally unites with the **s** and forms **ss**, but is dropped after **l** or **r**: *dūco, duci* (*ducsi*), *dux*, to lead; *rēgo, rex* (*regsi*), *rex*, to rule; *cōquo, coxi* (*coquisi*), to cook; *traho, traxi* (*trahsi*), to draw; *algeo, alsi* (*algsi*), *als*, to be cold; *mergo, mersi* (*mergsi*), to dip; *mulceo, mulsum* (*mulcsum*), *muls*, to caress; *fīgo, fixum* (*figsum*), to fasten.

2. A DENTAL—**d** or **t**—is generally dropped, but sometimes assimilated: *claudio, clausi* (*claudsi*), *claus, clausum* (*claudsum*), *claus*, to close; *mittō*,² *mīsi* (*mitsi*), *missum* (*mitsum*), to send; *cēdo, cessi* (*cedsi*), *cessum* (*cedsum*), to yield.

3. **B** is changed to **p**: *scribo, scribei* (*scribsi*), *scrips*, to write; *nūbo, nupsei*, to marry.

4. **M** is sometimes assimilated, and sometimes strengthened with **p**: *prēmo, pressi* (*premsi*), *press, pressum* (*premsum*), to press; *sūmo, sumpei* (*sumsi*), to take.

5. **S**—changed to **r** in the Present—is sometimes dropped: *haereo* (*haeseo*), *haesi* (*haessi*), *haes, haesum* (*haessum*), to stick.

II. BEFORE T IN THE SUPINE STEM.

1. A GUTTURAL—**g**, **qu**¹ or **h**—becomes **o**: *rēgo, rectum* (*rectum*), *rect*, to rule; *cōquo, coctum* (*coqutum*), to cook; *traho, tractum* (*trahatum*), to draw.

2. **B** is changed to **p**, as in the Perfect: *scribo, scriptum* (*scribtum*), to write.

3. **M** is strengthened with **p**: *sūmo, sumpei* (*sumsi*), *sumptum* (*sumtum*), to take.

4. **V** is generally changed into its corresponding vowel, **u**: *volvo, völütum* (*volvtum*), to roll. If a vowel precedes, a contraction takes place—**a-u** becoming **au**, rarely **ā**; **o-u** becoming **ō**, and **u-u** becoming **ū**: *lävo, lautum, lautum, lötum*, to wash; *möveo, mortum, moutum, mötum*, to move; *jüvo, juvtum, juvtum, jütum*, to assist.

¹ Sometimes also **gu**: *extinguo, extinxri, extinctum*, to extinguish. *Vivo, viat, victum*, to live; *fluo, fluixri, fluixum*, to flow; and *struo, struxri, structum*, to build, form the Perfect and Supine from stems in **v** for **gv**.

² Stem *mit* (251, 6); in *mīsi*, **t** is dropped, but in *missum* assimilated.

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.¹

FIRST CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN *a*: PERFECT IN *vi* OR *ui*.I. STEM IN *a*: PERFECT IN *vi*.259. Principal Parts in : *o*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples :

Dōno,	donāre,	donāvi,	donātum,	<i>to bestow.</i>
Hōnōro,	honorāre,	honorāvi,	honorātum,	<i>to honor.</i>
Libōro,	liberāre,	liberāvi,	liberātum,	<i>to free.</i>
Nōmino,	nomināre,	nomināvi,	nominātum,	<i>to name.</i>
Pugno,	pugnāre,	pugnāvi,	pugnātum,	<i>to fight.</i>
Spēro,	sperāre,	sperāvi,	sperātum,	<i>to hope.</i>
Vōco,	vocāre,	vocāvi,	vocātum,	<i>to call.</i>

II. STEM IN *a*: PERFECT IN *ui*.260. Principal Parts in : *o*, *āre*, *ui*, *ītum*.²

Crēpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepītum.	<i>to creak.</i>
<i>Incrēpo, āre, ui (ātū), ītum (ātūm); discrēpo, āre, ui (ātū) —.</i>				

Cūbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubītum,	<i>to recline.</i> ³
Dōmo,	domāre,	domui,	domītum,	<i>to tame.</i>
Enēco,	ēnecāre,	enēcui,	enectum,	<i>to kill.</i> ⁴
Frīco,	fricāre,	fricui,	{ frictum, fricātum,	<i>to rub.</i>
Mīco,	mīcāre	mīcui,	—	<i>to glitter.</i>

Dimico, āre, ātū (ātū), ītum; ēmīco, āre, ui, ītum.

¹ The Perfect Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation. In this classification the regular or usual formation is first given with a few examples, then complete lists (1) of all the simple verbs which deviate from this formation, and (2) of such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

² Note deviations in the Supine. The ending *ui* may have been formed from *ātū* by dropping *a* and changing *e* to *u*, and the ending *ītum* from *ātum* by weakening *a* to *i*. See 218, foot-note. But in some of these verbs the Perfect and Supine may be formed from consonant stems. Thus *sōnūtū*, *sōnītum* may be formed from the liquid stem *sōn*, in *sōnō*, *sonēre*, like *dītū*, *dītum* from the liquid stem *dī* in *dīo*, *dīre*, to nourish. See 258.

³ Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbo*, etc., are of Conj. III. See 275, I.

⁴ The simple *nēco* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *ātū* and *ātum* occur.

Plico,	plicare,	$\begin{cases} \text{plicui}, \\ \text{plicāvi}, \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{plicūtum}, \\ \text{plicātum}, \end{cases}$	<i>to fold.</i>
--------	----------	---	--	-----------------

Dūplico, multūplico, rēplico, and supplico, are regular: *dre, dvi, dtum*.

Sēco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	<i>to cut.</i>
-------	---------	--------	---------	----------------

Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonūtum,	<i>to sound.</i>
-------	---------	--------	----------	------------------

Participle, *sonātūrus*. Most compounds want Sup. *Rēsōno* has Perf. *resonāvi*.

Tōno	tonāre,	tonui,	(tonūtum),	<i>to thunder.</i>
------	---------	--------	------------	--------------------

Vēto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetūtum,	<i>to forbid.</i>
-------	---------	--------	----------	-------------------

1. *Pōto, dre, dvi, dtum*, to drink, has also *pōtum* in the supine.

2. The Passive Participles *cēnātus* and *jārdtus* (*cēno*, to dine, and *jāro*, to swear) are active in signification, *having dined*, etc. *Pōtus*, from *pōto*, is also sometimes active.

CLASS II.—PERFECT IN i.

I. PERFECT IN i: WITH REDUPLICATION.

261. Principal Parts in o, āre, i, tum.

Do,	dāre,	dědi,	dātum,	<i>to give.</i>
-----	-------	-------	--------	-----------------

Sto,	stāre,	stěti,	stātum,	<i>to stand.</i>
------	--------	--------	---------	------------------

1. In *do* the characteristic *a* is short by exception: *ddbam, ddbō, ddrem*, etc. Four compounds of *do*—*circundo*, *passundo*, *editido*, and *vēnundo*—are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are dissyllabic and of the Third Conj. (273, I.) The basis of the dissyllabic compounds is *do*, to place, originally distinct from *do*, to give.

2. Compounds of *sto* are conjugated like the simple verb, if the first part is a disyllable, otherwise they take *stēti* for *stēti*: *adsto, adstāre, adstēti, adstātum*. *Disto* wants Perf. and Sup.

II. PERFECT IN i: WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

262. Principal Parts in : o, āre, i, ātum, or tum.

Jēvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	<i>to assist.</i>
-------	---------	-------	--------	-------------------

Participle *jāvōtūrus*, but in compounds *jātūrus* is also used.

Lāvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	$\begin{cases} \text{lāvātum}, \\ \text{lātum}, \\ \text{lōtum}, \end{cases}$	<i>to wash.</i>
-------	---------	-------	---	-----------------

1. In poetry *lāvo* is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lāvo, lavāra, lāvi*, etc.

2. In *jāvō* and *lāvo*, the stems are *jēvo* and *lāvō*, strengthened in the Present to *juvā* and *lavā*. See 251, 3; also 253, II. 4.

263. DEONENT VERBS.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular.

Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus sum,	<i>to endeavor.</i>
--------	---------	--------------	---------------------

Hortor,	hortāri,	hortātus sum,	<i>to exhort.</i>
---------	----------	---------------	-------------------

Miror,	mirāri,	mirātus sum,	<i>to admire.</i>
--------	---------	--------------	-------------------

SECOND CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN e: PERFECT IN vi OR ui.

I. STEM IN e: PERFECT IN vi.

264. Principal Parts in: eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.¹

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Compleo, complēre, complēvi, complētum, to fill.

So other compounds of *pleo*; as *expleo*, *imleo*.

Dēleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum, to destroy.

Fleo, flēre, flēvi, flētum, to weep.

Neo, nēre, nēvi, nētum, to spin.

1. *Ableo*, *abolēre*, *abolēvi*, *abolētum*, to destroy, is compounded of *ab* and *leo* (not used). The other compounds of *leo* generally end in *esco*, and are of the third conjugation. See *dbleso*, 277.

2. *Vleo*, *viēre*, *viētum*, to weave, bend, is rare, except in the participle *viētus*.

II. STEM IN e: PERFECT IN ui.

265. Principal Parts in: eo, ēre, ui, itum.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

Dēbeo,	debēre,	debui,	debitum,	to owe.
Häbeo,	habēre,	habui,	habitum,	to have.
Mōneo,	monđre,	monui,	monitum,	to advise.
Nōceo,	nocēre,	nociui,	nocitum,	to hurt.
Pāreo,	parēre,	parui,	paritum,	to obey.
Plāceo,	placēre,	placui,	placitum,	to please.
Tāceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacitum,	to be silent.

266. SUPINE WANTING.—Many verbs with the Perfect in ui, want the Supine. The following are the most important:

Candeo, to shine.	Mādeo, to be wet.	Sorbeo, to swallow.
Egeo, to want.	Niteo, to shine.	Splendeo, to shine.
Emineo, to stand forth.	Oleo, to smell.	St̄deo, to study.
Flōreo, to bloom.	Paleo, to be pale.	St̄peo, to be amazed.
Frondeo, to bear leaves.	Pāteo, to be open.	Timeo, to fear.
Horreo, to shudder.	Rūbeo, to be red.	Torpeo, to be torpid.
Lāteo, to be hid.	Sileo, to be silent.	Vireo, to be green.

267. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine. The following are the most important:

Albeo, to be white.	Cāneo, to be gray.	Hēbeo, to be blunt.
Calveo, to be bald.	Flāveo, to be yellow.	Hūmeo, to be moist.

¹ We class ēvi and ētum, though belonging to but few verbs, with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common ui and itum are derived. See 218, foot-note.

Immlneo, <i>to threaten.</i>	Maereo, <i>to be sad.</i>	Renideo, <i>to shine.</i>
Lacteo, <i>to suck.</i>	Polleo, <i>to be powerful.</i>	Squaleo, <i>to be filthy.</i>

CLASS II.—STEM IN **c**, **n**, **r**, OR **s**: PERFECT IN **ui**.*Present Stem adds e.* See 251, 3.268. Principal Parts in: **eo**, **ēre**, **ui**, **tum**, or **sum**.

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Censeo,	censēre,	censui,	censem,	<i>to think.</i>
---------	----------	---------	---------	------------------

Perf. Part. *census* and *censitūs*.—*Percenseo* wants Sup.: *récenseo* has *recensum* and *reconsitum*.

Dōceo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	<i>to teach.</i>
--------	---------	--------	---------	------------------

Misceo,	miscēre,	miscui,	{ mistum, mixtum,	<i>to mix.</i>
---------	----------	---------	----------------------	----------------

Tēneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	<i>to hold.</i>
--------	---------	--------	---------	-----------------

Dētēneo, *ēre*, *ui*, *dētentum*; so *obtēneo* and *rētēneo*; other compounds seldom have Sup.

Torreо,	torrēre,	torrui,	tostum,	<i>to roast.</i>
---------	----------	---------	---------	------------------

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si** OR **i**.¹269. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si**.*Present Stem adds e.* See 251, 3.I. Principal Parts in: **eo**, **ēre**, **si**, **sum**.

Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	—	<i>to be cold.</i>
--------	---------	-------	---	--------------------

Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	<i>to burn.</i>
--------	---------	-------	--------	-----------------

Cōnīveo,	conīvēre,	{ confivi, conixi,	—	<i>to wink at.</i>
----------	-----------	-----------------------	---	--------------------

Frigeo,	frigēre,	frixi (<i>rare</i>),	—	<i>to be cold.</i>
---------	----------	------------------------	---	--------------------

Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	—	<i>to shine.</i>
---------	----------	--------	---	------------------

Poetic *fulgo*, *fulgēre*, etc.

Haereo, ²	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	<i>to stick.</i>
----------------------	----------	--------	---------	------------------

Jūbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>to order.</i>
--------	---------	--------	---------	------------------

Lūceo,	lucēre,	luxi,	—	<i>to shine.</i>
--------	---------	-------	---	------------------

Lügeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	—	<i>to mourn.</i>
--------	---------	-------	---	------------------

Māneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>to remain.</i>
--------	---------	--------	---------	-------------------

Mulgeo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to caress.</i>
---------	----------	--------	---------	-------------------

Compounds have *mulsum* or *mulctum*.

Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to milk.</i>
---------	----------	--------	---------	-----------------

Rideo,	ridere,	rīsi,	rīsum,	<i>to laugh.</i>
--------	---------	-------	--------	------------------

Suādeo,	suadēre,	suāsi,	suāsum,	<i>to advise.</i>
---------	----------	--------	---------	-------------------

Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>to wipe.</i>
---------	----------	--------	---------	-----------------

¹ For convenience of reference, a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 328.

² The stem of *haereo* is *haes*. The Present adds *e* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *haesi* and *haesum*, *s* stands for *ss*—*haes-i* for *haes-si*—and is therefore not changed. See 258, I. 5.

Tergo, of Conj. III., also occurs: *tergo, ēre, si, sum.*

Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi (<i>rare</i>),	—	to swell.
Urgeo (urgeo),	urgēre,	ursi,	—	to press.

1. *Cleo, ciōre, cīvī, cītūm*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *cīo, cīre, cīvī, cītūm*, from which it seems to have obtained its perfect. In compounds the forms of the Fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call, call forth*.

2. For *Euphonic Changes* before *si* and *sum*, see 258, I.

II. Principal Parts in: eo, ēre, si, tum.

Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	to increase.
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	to indulge.
Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	to twist.

270. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN i.

Present Stem adds e. See 251, 3.

I. WITH REDUPLICATION.

Principal Parts in: eo, ēre, i, sum.

Mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	morsum,	to bite.
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pēpendi,	pensum,	to hang.
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	to promise.
Tondeo,	tondēre,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	to shear.

For *reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I. 4.

II. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

1. Principal Parts in: eo, ēre, i, tum.

Cāveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	to beware.
Fāveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	to favor.
Fōveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	to cherish.
Mōveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	to move.
Pāveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	—	to fear.
Vōveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	to vow.

2. Principal Parts in: eo, ēre, i, sum.

Sēdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	to sit.
So <i>circumſēdeo</i> and <i>superſēdeo</i> . Other compounds thus: <i>assēdeo, ēre, aſēdi,</i> <i>assēsum</i> ; but <i>dīſēdeo, prāſēdeo</i> , and <i>rēſēdeo</i> , want Supine.				
Vīdeo,	vīdēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	to see.

III. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Principal Parts in: eo, ēre, i, sum.¹

Cōnīveo,	conīvēre,	{ conīvi, conīxi,	—	to wink at.
Ferveo,	fervēre,	{ ferbi, ferbui,	—	to boil.

¹ Supine Stem is wanting in most of these verbs.

Langueo,	languēre,	langui,	—	to be languid.
Líqueo,	líquēre,	liqui (licui),	—	to be liquid.
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	to dine.

Participle, *pransus*, in an active sense, *having dined*.
 Stríeo, strídēre, strídi, — to creak.

271. DEONENT VERBS.

1. Regular.

Liceor,	licēri,	licitus sum,	to bid.
Mēreor,	merēri,	meritus sum,	to deserve.
Polliceor,	pollicēri,	pollicitus sum,	to promise.
Tueor,	tuēri,	tultus sum,	to protect.
Vēreor,	verēri,	vertitus sum.	to fear.

2. Irregular.

Fāteor,	fatēri,	fassus sum,	to confess. ¹
Mēdeor,	medēri,	—	to cure.
Misēreor,	miserēri,	{ miseritus sum, misertus sum,	to pity.
Reor,	rēri,	rātus sum,	to think.

3. Semi-Deponent.—Deponent in the Perfect.

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	to dare.
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavitus sum,	to rejoice.
Sōleo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	to be accustomed.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN si OR i.

272. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN si.

I. Principal Parts in: o, io, ēre, si, tum.

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant. The following are examples:²

Carpo,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
Cingo,	cingēre,	cinxī (gst),	cinctum,	to gird.
Cōquo,	coquēre,	coxi,	coctum,	to cook.
Dēmo,	demēre,	dempsi,	demptum,	to take away.
Dico,	dicēre,	dixi,	dictum,	to say.
Dūco,	ducēre,	duxi,	ductum,	to lead.
Extinguo,	extinguēre,	existinxi,	extinctum, ³	to extinguish.
Gēro,	gerēre,	gessi,	gestum,	to carry.
Nūbo,	nubēre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	to marry.
Rēgo,	regēre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Sūmo,	sumēre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	to take.
Traho,	trahēre,	traxī,	tractum,	to draw.

¹ *Confiteor, ēri, confessus*: so *profiteor*.

² For Euphonic Changes, see 258.

³ So other compounds of *stinguo* (rare): *distinguo*, etc.

Uro,	ūrēre,	ussi,	ustum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Veho,	vehēre,	vexi,	vectum,	<i>to carry.</i>
Vivo,	vivēre,	vixi,	victum,	<i>to live.</i>

1. STEM-VOWEL IN COMPOUNDS. See 255, II. 1.

Carpo: dē-cerpo, decerpēre, decerpsi, decerpsum, *to pluck off.**Rēgo*: di-rigo, dirigēre, direxi, directum (214, I.), *to direct.*

Here *decerpo*, though it has not the same stem-vowel as the simple *carpo*, forms its principal parts precisely like the simple verb; but *dirigo* changes the stem-vowel in forming those parts, having ē in the Pres., and e in the Perf. and Sup.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OBSOLETE VERBS present the same vowel changes: *Ldcio* (obs.): al-licio, allicōre, allexi, allectum (214, II.), *to allure.*

So *llictio*, *pellicio*. For *llicio*, see 275, I.*Spēcio* (obs.): a-spiclo, aspicēre, aspxi, aspectum, *to look at.*II. Principal Parts in: o, io, ēre, si, sum.¹

Cēdo,	cedēre,	cessi,	cessum,	<i>to yield.</i>
Claudo,	claudēre,	clausi,	clausum,	<i>to close.</i>

Compounds have u for au: *concldo*, *exclldo*.

Divido,	dividēre,	divisi,	divisum,	<i>to divide.</i>
Evādo,	ēvadēre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	<i>to evade.</i>

So other compounds of vādo. See 281.

Figo,	figēre,	fixi,	fixum,	<i>to fasten.</i>
Flecto,	flectēre,	flexi,	flexum,	<i>to bend.</i>

Frendo,	frendēre,	—	{ frēsum, fressum,	<i>to gnash.</i>
Laedo,	laedēre,	laesi,	laesum,	<i>to hurt.</i>

Compounds have ē for ae: *illido*, etc.

Lūdo,	ludēre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	<i>to play.</i>
Mergo,	mergēre,	mersi,	mersum,	<i>to dip.</i>

Mitto,	mittēre,	mīsi,	missum,	<i>to send.</i>
Necto,	nectēre,	{ nēxi, nexui, ²	nēxum,	<i>to bind.</i>

Pecto,	pectēre,	pēxi,	pēxum,	<i>to comb.</i>
Plecto,	plectēre,	plexi,	plexum,	<i>to plait.</i>
Plaudo,	plaudēre,	plausi,	plausum,	<i>to applaud.</i>

So *applaudo*; other compounds have o for au: *explodo*, etc.

Prēmo,	premērc,	pressi,	pressum (258, I. 4),	<i>to press.</i>
Quātio,	quatēre,	quassi,	quassum (258, I. 2),	<i>to shake.</i>

Compounds have qua for qua: *concūtio*, etc.

Rādo,	radēre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	<i>to shave.</i>
Rōdo,	rodēre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
Spargo,	sparcēre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	<i>to scatter.</i>

Compounds generally have ē for a: *aspergo*, *reaspergo*.

Tergo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>to wipe off.</i>
Trūdo,	trudēre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	<i>to thrust.</i>

¹ For *H euphonic Changes*, see 258.² Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

273. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN I.

I. WITH REDUPLICATION.

1. Principal Parts in : o, io, ēre, i, tum.

Abdo, abdēre, abdīdi, abdītum, to hide.

So all compounds of *do*, except those of Conj. I. (261): *adō*, *condō*, *crēdō*, *dēdō*, *ēdō*, *indo*, *obdō*, *perdō*, *prōdō*, *reddō*, *trādō*, *vendo*; but *abs-condō* generally drops reduplication: *abs-condō*.

Cāno, canēre, cēcīni, cantum, to sing.

Concīnō, ēre, *concinuī*, —; so *occīnō* and *prascīnō*; other compounds want Perf. and Sup.

Crēdō, credēre, credīdi, creditum,¹ to believe.

Disco, discēre, dīdīci, — to learn.

Do, *Conj. I.* See *abdo*, above.

Pango, pangēre, pēpīgi, pactum, to bargain.

Pango, pangēre, { panxi, { panctum, { pactum, to fix in.

Compingo, ēre, compēgi, compactum; so also *impingo*. *Dēpango* wants Perf.; *rēpango*, Perf. and Sup.

Pārio, parēre, pēpēri, partum, to bring forth.

Participle, *paritūrus*; compounds are of Conj. IV.

Pungo, pungēre, pūpūgi, punctum, to prick.

Compounds thus *compungo*, ēre, *compunxoi*, *compunctum*.

Sisto, sistēre, stīti, stātum, to place.

Sisto seems to have been derived from *sto*, and forms the Perf. and Sup. after that analogy.—Compounds thus: *consisto*, ēre, *consistī*, *constitūm*; but *circumstītī* also occurs.

Tango, tangēre, tētīgi, tactum, to touch.

Compounds thus: *attingo*, ēre, *attīgi*, *attactum*.

Tendo, tendēre, tētēndi, { tentum, { tensum, to stretch.

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., *tentum*, but *dētēndo* and *extēndo* have *tensum*; and *extēndo*, *protēndo*, and *rētēndo*, have both forms.

Tollo, tollēre, { tētēli (obs.), sustēli, sublātum, to raise.

Attollo and *extollo* want Perf. and Sup.

Vendo, vendēre, vendīdi, vendītum,¹ to sell.

2. Principal Parts in : o, ēre, i, sum.

Cādo, cadēre, cēcīdi, cāsum, to fall.

Incidō, ēre, *incidī*, *incidēm*; so *occido* and *rēcīdo*; other compounds want supine.

¹ Explained as compound of *do*; see *abdo*.

Caedo, caedōre, cēcīdi, caesum, to cut.

Compounds thus: concido, ēre, concidi, concisum.

Curro, currōre, cūcurri, cursum, to run.

Excurro and *praecurro* generally retain the reduplication, excūcurri, praecūcurri; other compounds generally drop it.

Fallo, fallēre, fēfelli, falsum, to deceive.

Rēfello, ēre, refelli, without Supine.

Parco, parcēre, pēperci (parsi), parsum, to spare.

Comparco, ēre, comparō, comparsum, also with e for a: compero, ēre, etc.

Imparco and rēparco want Perf. and Sup.

Pello, pellēre, pēpūli, pulsum,¹ to drive.

Pendo, pendēre, pēpendi, pensum,¹ to weigh.

Posco, poscēre, pōposci, —², to demand.

Tendo, tendēre, tētendi, { tentum, to stretch.

{ tensum,

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., tentum, but *detendo* and *ostendo* have *tensem*; and *extendo*, *protendo*, and *rētendo*, have both forms.

Tundo, tundēre, tūtūdi, { tunsum, to beat.

{ tūsum,

Compounds drop reduplication and generally take *tūsum* in Sup.

II. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

1. Principal Parts in : o, io, ēre, i, tum.

Ago, āgēre, āgi, actum, to drive.

So *circumago* and *pērdgo*; *sdīdgo* wants Perf. and Sup. Other compounds change a into i in the Pres.: *dbīgo*, ēre, *abēgi*, *abactum*; but *cōgō* becomes *cōgi*, ēre, *cōgī*, *coactum*, and *dēgō*, *dēgo*, ēre, *dēgi*, without Sup. *Prōdīgo* wants Sup., and *ambīgo*, Perf. and Sup.

Cāpio, capēre, cēpi, captum, to take.

So *antecāpīo*; other compounds thus: *accīpīo*, ēre, *accēpī*, *acceptum*.

Emo, īmēre, īmi, emptum, to buy.

So *coēmo*; other compounds thus: *ddīmo*, ēre, *adēmi*, *ademptum*.

Fācio, facēre, fēci, factum, to make.

Passive irregular: *flō, flērt, factus sum*. See 294.

So *editifacīo* and compounds of *faciō* with verbs, but compounds with prepositions thus: *conficiō*, *conficēre*, *confēci*, *confectum*, with regular Pass., *conficiōr*, *conficiōt*, *confectus sum*.—Compounds of *faciō* with nouns and adjectives are of Conj. I.: *significō*, ēre, *dati*, *dtum*.

Frango, frangēre, frēgi, fractum, to break.

Compounds thus: *confringō*, ēre, *confrēgi*, *conftractum*.

¹ Compounds drop reduplication, 255, I. 4.

² Compounds retain reduplication, 255, I. 4.

Fūgio,	fugēre,	fūgi,	fugītum,	<i>to flee.</i>
Jācio,	jacēre,	jēci,	jactum,	<i>to throw.</i>

Superfatio has *jactum* or *jectum* in Sup.; other compounds thus: *abjicio*, *ēre*, *abjēci*, *abjectum*.

Lēgo,	legēre,	lēgi,	lectum,	<i>to read.</i>
-------	---------	-------	---------	-----------------

So compounds, except (1) *collīgo*, *ēre*, *collēgi*, *collectum*; so *dēlīgo*, *ēlīgo*, *slīgo*: — (2) *dīlīgo*, *ēre*, *dilect*, *dilectum*; so *intelligo*, *neglīgo*.

Linquo,	linquēre,	līqui,	—	<i>to leave.</i>
---------	-----------	--------	---	------------------

Compounds with Sup.: *rēlinquo*, *ēre*, *reliqui*, *relictum*.

Rumpo,	rumpēre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	<i>to burst.</i>
Scābo,	scabēre,	scābi,	—	<i>to scratch.</i>
Vinco,	vincēre,	vīci,	victum,	<i>to conquer.</i>

2. Principal Parts in : o, io, ēre, i, sum.

Edo,	ēdōre,	ēdi,	ēsum,	<i>to eat.</i>
Fōdio,	fodēre,	fōdi,	fossum,	<i>to dig.</i>
Fundo,	fundēre,	fūdi,	fūsum,	<i>to pour.</i>

III. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Principal Parts in : o, ēre, i, sum.¹

Accendo,	accendēre,	accendi,	accensum,	<i>to kindle.</i>
----------	------------	----------	-----------	-------------------

So other compounds of *cando* (obsolete): *incendo*, *succendo*.

Cūdo,	cudēre,	cūdi,	cūsum,	<i>to forge.</i>
Dēfendo,	defendēre,	defendi,	defensum,	<i>to defend.</i>

So other compounds of *fendo* (obsolete): *offendo*, etc.

Findo,	findēre,	fidi (findi),	fissum,	<i>to part.</i>
Ico,	Icēre,	Ici,	ictum,	<i>to strike.</i>
Mando,	mandēre,	mandi,	mansum,	<i>to chew.</i>

Pando,	Pandēre,	pandi,	{ passum, pansum,	<i>to open.</i>
--------	----------	--------	----------------------	-----------------

Pinso (pliso),	pinsēre,	{ pinsi, pinsui,	{ pistum, pinsum,	<i>to pound.</i>
----------------	----------	---------------------	----------------------	------------------

Prehendo,	prehendēre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	<i>to grasp.</i>
-----------	-------------	-----------	------------	------------------

Often written *prendo*, *prendēre*, etc.

Scando,	scandēre,	scandi,	scansum,	<i>to climb.</i>
---------	-----------	---------	----------	------------------

Compounds have e for a: *ascendo*, *descendo*.

Scindo,	scindēre,	scīdi,	scissum,	<i>to rend.</i>
Solvō,	solvēre,	solvi,	sölfutum, ²	<i>to loose.</i>
Vello,	vellēre,	velli (vulsi),	vulsum,	<i>to pluck.</i>

Compounds in good use generally have *velli*.

Verro,	verrēre,	verri,	versum,	<i>to brush.</i>
Vertō,	vertēre,	verti,	versum,	<i>to turn.</i>

Compounds of dī, prae, rdī are generally deponent in the Pres., Imperf., and Future.

¹ For euphonic changes before a, see 258, I.

² V is here changed to its corresponding vowel u: *sölfutum* for *solvutum*.

Viso,	visére,	vísi,	vísum,	<i>to visit.</i>
Volvo,	volvëre,	volvi,	völvütum. ¹	<i>to roll.</i>

CLASS II.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN ui.

274. STEM IN A LIQUID—l, m, n, r: PERFECT IN ui.

Principal Parts in: o, ēre, ui, tum, or itum.

Alo,	äläre,	alui,	{ alitum, altum,	<i>to nourish.</i>
------	--------	-------	---------------------	--------------------

Cello, obsolete. See excello, below.

Cölo,	coläre,	colui,	cultum,	<i>to cultivate.</i>
Consölo,	consuläre,	consului,	consultum,	<i>to consult.</i>
Excello,	excelläre,	excellui (<i>rare</i>), —	—	<i>to excel.</i>

Other compounds of *cello* want Perf. and Sup., except *percello*, *percellere*, *percili*, *perculeum*.

Frëmo,	fremëre,	fremui,	fremitum,	<i>to rage.</i>
Füro,	furëre,	furui,	—	<i>to rage.</i>
Gëmo,	gemëre,	gemui,	gemitum,	<i>to groan.</i>
Gigno,	gignëre,	gënuui (<i>f. gëno</i>),	genitum,	<i>to beget.</i>
Mölo,	molëre,	molui,	molitum,	<i>to grind.</i>
Occulo,	occulëre,	occului,	occultum,	<i>to hide.</i>
Sëro,	serëre,	serui,	sertum,	<i>to connect.</i>
Trëmo,	tremëre,	tremui,	—	<i>to tremble.</i>
Vömo,	vomëre,	vomui,	vomitum,	<i>to vomit.</i>

275. STEMS IN b, p, c, s, t, x: PERFECT IN ui.

I. Principal Parts in: o, io, ēre, ui, tum, or itum.

Accumbo,	accumbëre,	accübui,	accubitum,	<i>to recline.</i>
----------	------------	----------	------------	--------------------

So other compounds of *cumbo*, *cubo*. See *cubo*, 260.

Compesco,	compescëre,	compescui,	—	<i>to restrain.</i>
-----------	-------------	------------	---	---------------------

Cumbo for *cubo*, in compounds: see *accumbo*.

Depso,	depsëre,	depsui,	{ depstum, depstum,	<i>to knead.</i>
Elicio,	elicëre,	elicui,	elicitum,	<i>to elicit.</i>

Other compounds of *lacio*, thus: *allicio*, *ére*, *allexti*, *allctum*.

Pinso,	pinsëre,	{ pinsui, pinsi,	{ pinsitum, pistum, pinsum,	<i>to crush.</i>
Pöno,	ponëre,	pösui,	pösitum,	<i>to place.</i>

Räpio,	rapëre,	rapui,	raptum,	<i>to snatch.</i>
--------	---------	--------	---------	-------------------

Compounds thus: *corripio*, *corripére*, *corripui*, *correptum*.

Sterto,	stertëre,	stertui,	—	<i>to snore.</i>
Strëpo,	strepëre,	strepui,	streptum,	<i>to make a noise.</i>
Texo,	texëre,	texui,	textum,	<i>to weave.</i>

¹ See foot-note, p. 119.

II. Principal Parts in: o, ēre, sui, sum.

Měto,	metěre,	messui,	messum,	to reap.
Necto,	nectěre,	{ nexi, nexui,	nexus,	to bind.

1. The Perfect in *sui* is a double formation, *si* enlarged to *sui*.

III. Many Inceptives in *esco* form the Perfect in *ui* from their primitives. See 282, I. 2.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A VOWEL: PERFECT IN vi OR i.

276. STEM IN a: PERFECT IN vi.

Present stem adds sc or n. See 251, 2 and 4.

Invětěrasco, ¹	inveterascēre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	to grow old.
Pasco, ²	pascēre,	pāvi,	pastum,	to feed.
Sterno, ³	sternēre,	strāvi,	strātum,	to strew.
Větěrasco, ¹	veterascēre,	veterāvi,	—	to grow old.

1. *Sěro*, stem *sa* (251, 7), thus:

Sěro,	serēre,	sēvi,	sātum,	to sow.
-------	---------	-------	--------	---------

Compounds thus: *consěro*, *ére*, *consěvi*, *constitum*.

277. STEM IN e: PERFECT IN vi.

Present Stem adds sc or n. See 251.

Abölesco, ³	äbolescēre,	abolēvi,	abolitum,	to disappear.
So <i>Indölesco</i> ; but <i>äddölesco</i> has Supine <i>adultum</i> ; <i>exölesco</i> , <i>exölitum</i> ; <i>obsölesco</i> , <i>obsöletum</i> .				

Cerno, ⁴	cernēre,	crēvi,	crētum,	to decide.
Cresco,	crescēre,	crēvi,	crētum,	to grow.

Inoresco and *suoresco* want Supine.

Quiesco, ⁵	quiescēre,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	to rest.
Sperno, ⁴	spernēre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	to spurn.
Suesco, ³	suescēre,	suēvi,	suētum,	to become accustomed.

278. STEM IN i: PERFECT IN vi.

Cúpio,	cupēre,	cupivi,	cupitum,	to desire.
Líno, ⁵	linēre,	līvi or lēvi,	lítum,	to smear.
Sápio,	sapēre,	sapivi,	sapitum,	to taste.

Compounds have *i* for *a*, as *rēcipio*. *Dēcipio* wants Perf. and Sup.

¹ Stem *invell̄ra*, etc., strengthened by adding *eo*. See 251, 4. The stem of *pasco* is *pa*, *pas*.

² Stem *stra*, by metathesis *star*, lengthened to *starn* (251, 2). The vowel *a* is then lightened to *e* before the two consonants *rn*.

³ Stems *dböle*, *quie*, etc.

⁴ Stems *ore* and *spre*, by metathesis *cer* and *sper*, lengthened to *cern* and *sfern*.

⁵ Present adds *n*.

Sino, ¹	sinēre,	sīvi,	sītum,	<i>to permit.</i>
Tēro, ²	terēre,	trīvi,	tritum,	<i>to rub.</i>

1. A few Inchoatives in *isco* form the Perfect in *vi* from their primitives. See 282, I. 1.

2. The following verbs have *i-stems* in the Perfect and Supine, but consonant stems in the Present.

Arcesso,	arcessēre,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	<i>to call for.</i>
Căpresso,	capessēre,	capessīvi,	capessītum,	<i>to lay hold of.</i>
Făcesso,	faceſſēre,	{ faceſſīvi, faceſſīvi,	faceſſītum,	<i>to make.</i>
Incesso,	incessēre,	incessīvi or-cessi,—	—	<i>to attack.</i>
Lăcesso,	laceſſēre,	laceſſīvi,	laceſſītum,	<i>to provoke.</i>
Pĕto,	petēre,	petīvi,	petītum,	<i>to ask.</i>
Quaero,	quaerēre,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	<i>to seek.</i>

Compounds thus: *acquiro*, *ēre*, *acquisītiō*, *acquisītum*.

Rădo,	rudēre,	rudīvi,	rudītum,	<i>to bray.</i>
-------	---------	---------	----------	-----------------

3. *Nosco* and its compounds form the Perfect in *vi*.

Nosco,	noscēre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	<i>to know.</i>
--------	----------	-------	--------	-----------------

So *ignosco*.—*Agnosco* and *cognosco* have *itum* in Sup., *agnitum*; *dignosco* and *internosco* want Supine.

279. STEM IN u: PERFECT IN i.

Principal Parts in : o, ēre, i, tum.

The following are examples :

Acuo,	ăcuēre,	acui,	acūtum,	<i>to sharpen.</i>
Arguo,	arguēre,	argui,	argūtum,	<i>to convict.</i>

Coarguo and *rădarguo* want the Supine.

Imbuo,	imbuēre,	imbui,	imbūtum,	<i>to imbue.</i>
Mīnuo,	minuēre,	minui,	minūtum,	<i>to diminish.</i>
Ruo,	ruēre,	rui,	rūtum,	<i>to fall.</i>

Part. *ruītūrūs*.—*Corruo* and *irruo* want Sup.

Stătuo,	statuēre,	stătui,	statūtum,	<i>to place.</i>
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	------------------

Compounds change *a* into *e*: *consistuo*.

Trībuo,	tribuēre,	tribui,	tribūtum,	<i>to impart.</i>
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	-------------------

1. *Fluo* and *struo* have the Perfect in *xi*.

Fluo,	fluēre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	<i>to flow.</i>
Struo,	struēre,	struxi,	structum,	<i>to build.</i>

280. SUPINE WANTING.—The following verbs, with the Perfect in *al* or *i*, want the Supine :

¹ Present adds *n*.

² Stem *tri*, by metathesis and change of vowel *ter*.

Ango, ēre, anxi, to strangle.

Annuo, ēre, i, to assent.

So other compounds of *nuo*, but *abnuo* has Part. *abnuiturus*.

Bătuo, ēre, i, to beat.

Bibo, ēre, i, to drink.

Congruo, ēre, i, to agree.

Ingruo, ēre, i, to assail.

Lambo, ēre, i, to lick.

Luo, ēre, i, to wash.

Part. *luiturus*. Compounds—*abluo*, *al-*
luo, etc.—have Sup. *lütum*.

Mětuo, ēre, i, to fear.

Ningo, ēre, ninxi, to snow.

Pluo, ēre, i or vi, to rain.

Pallo, ēre, i, to play on a stringed instrument.

Sido, ēre, i, to sit down.

Perf. and Sup. generally supplied from *stideo*; hence *sēdī*, *sesum*. So in compounds.

Strido, ēre, i, to creak.

Also *strideo*, ēre (Conj. II.).

Sternuo, ēre, i, to sneeze.

281. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine:

Clango , to clang.	Stinguo , to quench;	contemno , ēre, con-
Claudo , to be lame.	but <i>distinguo</i> , ēre,	<i>tempai</i> , contemptum.
Fātisco , to gape.	<i>distinxi</i> , distinctum;	Vādo , to go. See <i>ēvā-</i>
Glisco , to grow.	<i>so extinguo</i> .	do, 272, II.
Hisco , to gape.	Temno , to despise; but	Vergo , to incline.

1. For Inceptives, see 282, II.

282. INCEPTIVES.

Inceptives end in *sco*, and denote the beginning of an action. When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

I. VERBAL INCEPTIVES.—Most verbal inceptives want the *Supine*, but take the *Perfect* of their primitives:

Acesco (āceo),	ācescēre ,	acui,	—	to become sour.
Aresco (areo),	ārescēre ,	arui,	—	to become dry.
Cālesco (cāleo),	calescēre ,	calui,	—	to become warm.
Flōresco (flōreo),	florescēre ,	florui,	—	to begin to bloom.
Tēpesco (tēpeo),	tepecēre ,	tēpui,	—	to become warm.
Viresco (vīreo),	virescēre ,	vīrui,	—	to become green.

1. The following take the Perfect and Supine of their primitives:

Abōlesco (āb, āleo),	ēre, ābolēvi,	abolitum, ¹	to disappear.
Coālesco (cōn, ālo),	ēre, coālui,	coalitum,	to coalesce.
Concupiscono (con, cūpio),	ēre, concupīvi,	concupitum,	to desire.
Convālesco (con, vāleo),	ēre, convālui,	convālitum,	to grow strong.
Exardesco (ex, ardeo),	ēre, exarsi,	exarsum,	to burn.
Invēterasco (invētro),	ēre, inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	to grow old.
Obdormisco (ob, dormio),	ēre, obdormīvi,	obdormitum,	to fall asleep.

¹ So *indēsco*; but *ddōlesco* has Sup. *adultum*; *exōlesco*, *exolitum*; *obdōlesco*, *obolitum*.

Rēvīvisco (*rē, vivo*), ēre, revixi, revictum, *to revive.*
 Scisco (*scio*), ēre, scivi, scitum, *to enact.*

II. DENOMINATIVE INCEPTIVES.—Most denominative inceptives want both Perfect and Supine. Thus

Ditesco (*dives*), *to grow rich.* Mitesco (*mīlis*), *to grow mild.*
 Dulcesco (*dulcis*), *to become sweet.* Mollesco (*mollis*), *to grow soft.*
 Grandesco (*grandis*), *to grow large.* Puērasco (*puer*), *to become a boy.*

1. The following have the Perfect in ui :

Crēbreſco	(<i>crēber</i>),	ēre,	crēbrui,	<i>to become frequent.</i>
Dūresco	(<i>dūrus</i>),	ēre,	dūrui,	<i>to become hard.</i>
Innōtesco	(<i>in, nōtus</i>),	ēre,	innōtui,	<i>to become known.</i>
Macresco	(<i>mācer</i>),	ēre,	macrui,	<i>to become lean.</i>
Mātūresco	(<i>mātūrus</i>),	ēre,	mātūrui,	<i>to ripen.</i>
Nigresco	(<i>niger</i>),	ēre,	nigrui,	<i>to become black.</i>
Obmūtesco	(<i>ob, mūtus</i>),	ēre,	obmūtui,	<i>to grow dumb.</i>
Recrūdesco	(<i>rē, crūdus</i>),	ēre,	recrūdui,	<i>to bleed afresh.</i>
Vilesco	(<i>vīlis</i>),	ēre,	vīlui,	<i>to become worthless.</i>

283. DEONENT VERBS.

Amplexor,	i,	amplexus sum,	<i>to embrace.</i>
	<i>So complector, circumplexor.</i>		
Apiscor,	i,	aptus sum,	<i>to obtain.</i>
	<i>Addipiscor, i, ddeptus sum; so indipiscor.</i>		
Commīniscor,	i,	commentus sum,	<i>to devise.</i>
	<i>Rēmīniscor wants Perf.</i>		
Expergiscor,	i,	experrectus sum,	<i>to awake.</i>
Fātiscor,	i,	—	<i>to gape.</i>
	<i>Defatiscor, i, defessus sum.</i>		
Fruor,	frui,	{ fructus sum, frūtus sum,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
	<i>Part. frūtilīrus.</i>		
Fungor,	i,	functus sum,	<i>to perform.</i>
Grādior,	i,	gressus sum,	<i>to walk.</i>
	<i>Compounds thus: aggrēdior, i, aggressus sum.</i>		
Irascor,	i,	—	<i>to be angry.</i>
Lābor,	i,	lapsus sum,	<i>to fall.</i>
Līquor,	i,	—	<i>to melt.</i>
Lōquor,	i,	locūtus sum,	<i>to speak.</i>
Miniscor, <i>obsolete;</i>	<i>see commīniscor.</i>		
Mōrior,	i (iri, rare),	mortuus sum,	<i>to die.</i>
	<i>Part. morītīrus.</i>		
Nanciscor,	i,	nactus (nanctus) sum,	<i>to obtain.</i>
Nascor,	i,	nātus sum,	<i>to be born.</i>
	<i>Part. naecītīrus.</i>		
Nitor,	i,	{ nīsus sum, nīxus sum,	<i>to strive.</i>
Oblīviscor,	i,	oblītus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>

Páscisor,	i,	pactus sum,	to bargain.
Pátior,	i,	passus sum,	to suffer.
<i>Perpetitor, i, perpessus sum.</i>			
Próflicisor,	i,	profectus sum,	to set out.
Quéror,	i,	questus sum,	to complain.
Rémniscor,	i,	—	to remember.
Ringor,	i,	—	to growl.
Séquor,	i,	secutus sum,	to follow.
Tuor, antiquated form for tueor,	271, 1.		
Ulciscor,	i,	ultus sum,	to avenge.
Utor,	i,	ūsus sum,	to use.
Vertor; see dēvertor, etc., under <i>verio</i> ,	273, III.		
Vescor,	i,	—	to eat.
<i>Semi-Deponent.</i>			
Fido,	fidēre,	fīsus sum,	to trust.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN **i**: PERFECT IN **vi**.284. Principal Parts in : **io**, **ire**, **ivi**, **itum**.

The following are examples :

Fīnio,	finfre,	finlvi,	finlsum,	to finish.
Lēnio,	lenfre,	lenlvi,	lenlsum,	to alleviate.
Mūnio,	munfre,	munlvi,	munlsum,	to fortify.
Pūnio,	punfre,	punlvi,	punlsum,	to punish.
Scio,	scfre,	sclvi,	sclsum,	to know.
Sěpēlio,	sepelire,	sepelvī,	sepelsum, ¹	to bury.
Sítio,	sitfre,	sitlvi,	—	to thirst.
Vágio,	vagfre,	vaglvi,	—	to cry.

1. *V* is often dropped in the Perfect: *audii* for *audiō*. See 234, 1.

2. Desideratives (382, III.),—except *dētūrio*, *ire*, —, *itum*; *nuptūrio*, *ire*, *ivi*, and *partūrio*, *ire*, *ivi*,—want both Perf. and Sup. Also a few others :

Balbūtio, to stammer.	Fērōcio, to be fierce.	Ságio, to be wise.
Caecūtio, to be blind.	Gānnio, to bark.	Súperbio, to be proud.
Fērio, to strike.	Ineptio, to trifle.	Tussio, to cough.

CLASS II.—STEM IN **c**, **l**, OR **r**: PERFECT IN **ui**.

Present Stem adds i. See 251, 3.

285. Principal Parts in : **io**, **ire**, **ui**, **tum**.

Amício,	amicfre,	amicui (xi),	amicustum,	to clothe.
Apěrio,	apérifre,	aperui,	apertum,	to open.
Opério,	óperfre,	operui,	opertum,	to cover.
Sállo,	salire,	salui (ii),	(saltum),	to leap.

Compounds thus: *dēsílio*, *ire*, *ui* (*ii*), (*desultum*).

¹ Supine irregular.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN *si* OR *i*.286. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN *si*.I. Principal Parts in : **io**, **ire**, **si**, **tum**.

Farcio,	farcire,	farsi,	<i>{</i> fartum, fartum,	<i>to stuff.</i>
---------	----------	--------	-----------------------------	------------------

Compounds thus: *confervio*, *ire*, *confervi*, *confertum*.

Fulcio,	fulcire,	fulsi,	fultum,	<i>to prop.</i>
Haurio, ¹	haurire,	hausi,	haustum, hausum,	<i>to draw.</i>
Sancio,	sancire,	sanxi,	<i>{</i> sanctum, sanctum,	<i>to ratify.</i>
Sarcio,	sarcire,	sarsi,	sartum,	<i>to patch.</i>
Sepio,	sepire,	sepsi,	septum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinctum,	<i>to bind.</i>

II. Principal Parts in : **io**, **ire**, **si**, **sum**.

Raucio,	raucire,	rausi,	rausum,	<i>to be hoarse.</i>
Sentio,	sentire,	sensi,	sensum, ²	<i>to feel.</i>

287. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN *i*.

I. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

Věnio,	venire,	věni,	ventum,	<i>to come.</i>
--------	---------	-------	---------	-----------------

So compounds: *advenio*, *convenio*, *d̄venio*, *invenio*, *obvenio*, *pervenio*, etc.

II. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Compērio,	comperfere,	compēri,	compertum,	<i>to learn.</i>
Rēpērio,	reperfere,	repēri,	repertum,	<i>to find.</i>

288. DEONENT VERBS.

1. *Regular.*

Blandior,	Iri,	blanditus sum,	<i>to flatter.</i>
Largior,	Iri,	largitus sum,	<i>to bestow.</i>
Mentior,	Iri,	mentitus sum,	<i>to lie.</i>
Mōlior,	Iri,	molitus sum,	<i>to strive.</i>
Partior,	Iri,	partitus sum,	<i>to divide.</i>
<i>Impotior</i> , <i>iri</i> , <i>impotitus sum</i> ; so <i>dispotior</i> .			
Pōtior, ³	Iri,	potitus sum,	<i>to obtain.</i>
Sortior,	Iri,	sortitus sum,	<i>to draw lots.</i>

2. *Irregular.*

Assentior, ⁴	Iri,	assensus sum,	<i>to assent.</i>
-------------------------	------	---------------	-------------------

¹ The stem of *haurio* is *haus*. The Present adds *e* and changes *e* to *r* between two vowels. In *hausi* and *hausum*, *s* stands for *ss*—*haus* for *haus-si*—and is therefore not changed. See 258, I. 5.

² Compound *assentio* has a deponent form *assentior*. See 288, 2.

³ In the Pres. Ind. and Subj., forms of Conj. III. occur.

⁴ Compounded of *dd* and *sentio*. See *sentio*, 286, II.

Expērior,	Iri,	expertus sum,	to try.
Mētior,	Iri,	mensus sum,	to measure.
Oppērior,	Iri,	{ oppertus sum, opperitus sum,	to await.
Ordior,	Iri,	orsus sum,	to begin.
Orior,	Iri,	ortus sum,	to rise.

Part. *ōritūrus*.—Pres. Ind. Conj. III., *ōrōris*, *oritur*. Imp. Subj., *ōriter* or *orēter*.
—So compounds, but *dōrōtor* follows Conj. IV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*. They are

Sūm, *ědo*, *fēro*, *vōlo*, *fīo*, *eo*, *queo*,
and their compounds.

290. *Sūm*, *I am*, and its compounds.

I. The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204); its numerous compounds—*absum*,¹ *adsum*, *dēsum*, *prae sum*,¹ etc.—except *possum* and *prēsum*, are conjugated in the same way.

II. *Possūm*, *possē*, *pōtuī*, *to be able*.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	possūm, pōtēs, pōtest;	possūmūs, pōtestīs, possunt.
IMP.	pōtērām; ²	pōtērāmūs.
FUT.	pōtērō;	pōtērimūs.
PERF.	pōtuī;	pōtuīmūs.
PLUP.	pōtuērām;	pōtuērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	pōtuērō;	pōtuērāmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	possīm, possīs, possīt;	possīmūs, possītīs, possīnt.
IMP.	possēm;	possēmūs.
PERF.	pōtuērim;	pōtuērimūs.
PLUP.	pōtuissēm;	pōtuissēmūs.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	possē.	PRES.	pōtēns (<i>as an adjective</i>).
PERF.	pōtuissē.		

PARTICIPLE.

1. COMPOSITION.—*Possum* is compounded of *pōtēs*, able, and *sum*, to be. The parts are sometimes separated, and then *pōtēs* is indeclinable: *pōtēs sum*, *pōtēs sūmūs*, etc.

¹ *Absum* and *prae sum*, like *possum*, have Pres. Participles, *absens* and *prae sens*.

² Inflected regularly through the different persons: *pōtēram*, *pōtēras*, *pōtērat*, etc.
So also in the other tenses: *pōtuī*, *pōtuissē*, etc.

2. IRREGULARITIES.—In *possum* observe

- 1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potisum*.

- 2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potu* for *potful*.

- 8) That the Infin. *posse* and Subj. *possem* are shortened forms for *possesse* and *essem*.

8. OLD AND BABY FORMS. See 204, 2.

III. *Prōsūm*, I profit, is compounded of *prō*, *prōd*, for, and *sūm*, to be. It retains *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*: *prōsūm*, *prōdēs*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sūm*.

291. **Edō**, ēdĕrĕ, ēdī, ēsŭm, *to eat.*

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms¹ like those of *sum* which begin in *ss*. Thus:

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	{	čdō,	čdls,	čdt;	čdlmūs,	čdltv̄s,	čdunt.
		čs. ¹		est:		estia.	

S U B J U N C T I V E.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	{	édě;	éditě.
		éss; ¹	estě.
FUT.	{	éditō;	éditotě, éduntotě.
		estō;	estotě.

INFITIVE.

Přes. ěděrč. cses.

1. PASSIVE FORMS.—*Ettur* for *édlitur* and *essetur* for *éðrættir* also occur.

2. FORMS IN IM for *am* occur in Pres. Subj.: *ðdim*, *ðdís*, *ðdiːt*, etc., for *ðdəm*, *ððde*, *ððt*, etc.

8. COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *cōmēdo* has in Sup. *cōmēsum* or *cōmēstum*.

292. Fērō, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm, *to bear.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	férð, fera, fert;	féríműs, fertüs, ³ férunt.
IMP.	férðbám; ³	férðbáműs.

¹ But these forms have *e* long before *s*, even where the corresponding forms of *sum* have *e* short.

² *Fers* for *férts*: *fert* for *férít*: *fertis* for *férítis* (4 dropped)

³ Inflect the several tenses in full: *Graham sends*, etc.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
FUT.	fērām ;	fērēmūs.
PERF.	tūl ;	tūlmūs.
PLUP.	tūlērām ;	tūlērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	tūlērō ;	tūlērāmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērām ;	fērēmūs.
IMP.	ferrēm ;	ferrēmūs. ¹
PERF.	tūlērām ;	tūlērāmūs.
PLUP.	tūlissēm ;	tūlissēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fēr ; ²	fertē.
FUT.	fertō,	fertōtō,
	fertō ;	feruntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferrē. ¹	PRES. fērens.
PERF.	tūlissē.	
FUT.	lātūrūs esseō.	FUT. lātūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen.	fērendī.	
Dat.	fērendō.	
Acc.	fērendūm.	Acc. lātūm.
Abl.	fērendō.	Abl. lātū.

SUPINE.

fērōr, ferrī, lātūs sūm, *to be borne.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	fērōr, ferrēs, fertūr ; ³	fērimūr, fērimīnī, fēruntūr.
IMP.	fērebār;	fērebāmūr.
FUT.	fērār;	fērēmūr.
PERF.	lātūs sūm;	lātī sūmūs.
PLUP.	lātūs ērām ;	lātī ērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	lātūs ērō ;	lātī ērāmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērār ;	fērēmūr.
-------	---------	----------

¹ Ferrem, etc., for fērērēm, etc.; ferrē for fērērō (e dropped).

² Fēr for fērō; fertō, fertē, fertītō, for fērētē, fērētō, fērētōtō (ē dropped).

³ Ferrēs for fērērēs; fertūr for fērētūr.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
IMP.	ferrör; ¹	ferrémür.
PERF.	latüs sim;	lati simüa.
PLUP.	latüs essüm;	lati essaemüs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ferrö;	férilmänI.
FUT.	fertör, fertör;	— féruntör.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferrI. ¹	
PERF.	latüs esse.	PERF. latüs.
FUT.	latüm Irl.	GER. férrendüs.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Féro* has two principal irregularities:

- 1) It forms its Perf. and Sup. *tüli* (rarely *tüüli*) and *latum* from obsolete stems.
- 2) It drops the connecting vowel *e* or *i* before *r*, *s*, and *t*.

2. COMPOUNDS of *féro* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

ab-	auféro,	auferre,	abstüli,	ablätum.
ad-	afféro,	afferre,	attüli,	allätum.
con-	conféro,	conferre,	contüli,	collätum.
dis-	diféro,	differre,	distüli,	dilätum.
ex-	efféro,	efferre,	extüli,	elätum.
in-	inféro,	inferre,	intüli,	illätum.
ob-	offéro,	offerre,	obtüli,	oblätum.
sub-	sufféro,	sufferre,	sustüli,	sublätum.

Sustüli and *sublätum* are not often used in the sense of *sufféro*, to bear, but they supply the Perf. and Sup. of *tollo*, to raise. See 278, I. 1.

293. Völö, vellö, völui, *to be willing.*
 Nölö, nollö, nöluí, *to be unwilling.*
 Mälö, mallö, mälui, *to prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	völö, vls, vult; völümüs, vultis, völunt.	nölö, nön vls, nön vult; nölümüs, nön vultis, nölunt.	mälö, mävls, mävult; mälümüs, mävultis, mälunt.
-------	--	--	--

¹ *Ferrör*, etc., for *férörör*, etc.; *ferrö* for *férörö*; *fertör* for *férriör*; *ferti* for *férri*, *fri*.

IMP.	völēbäm.	nölbäm.	mälbäm.
FUT.	völäm.	nöläm.	mäläm.
PERF.	völui.	nöluui.	mäluui.
PLUP.	völueräm.	nölueräm.	mälueräm.
FUT. PERF.	völuerö.	nöluerö.	mäluerö.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	vellim. ¹	nöllim.	mällim.
IMP.	velläm. ²	nölläm.	mälläm.
PERF.	völuerim.	nöluerim.	mäluerim.
PLUP.	völuiissäm.	nöluuiissäm.	mäluuiissäm.

IMPERATIVE.

P.	nöli,	nölli.	
F.	nölitö,	nölitötö,	
	nölitö;	nöluntö.	

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	vellö.	nöllö.	mällö.
PERF.	völuiissö.	nöluuiissö.	mäluuiissö.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	völens.	nöllens.
-------	---------	----------

1. The stem of *völo* is *vöI* with variable stem-vowel, ö, ë, ü.
 2. NÖLO is compounded of *në* or *nön* and *völo*; MALO, of *mägës* and *völo*.
 3. RARE FORMS.—(1) Of *voLo*: *volt*, *voltis*, for *vult*, *vultis*; *sits*, *sultis*, for *sí vis*, *si vultis*; *vin'* for *visne*.—(2) Of NÖLO: *nëvis*, *nëvult* (*nëvolt*), *nevelle*, for *non (ne) vis*, *non (ne) vult*, *nolle*.—(3) Of MALO: *mävölo*, *mavëlim*, *mavellem*, for *malo*, *mäläm*, *mallem*.

294. Flö, fiërl, factüs süm, to become, be made.³

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	flö, flis, fit;	flimüs, flits, flunt.
IMP.	flëbäm;	flëbämüs.
FUT.	fläm;	flëmüs.

¹ *Vellim* is inflected like *süm*, and *vellem* like *essem*.

² *Velläm* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *vellarem*, *velere*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velërem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velëre*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nölläm* and *nolla*, for *nöllarem* and *nöllerö*; *mälläm* and *malle*, for *mällerem* and *malöre*.

³ Compounds of *flö* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *confit*, *dëfit*, and *infit* are defective. See 297, III. 2.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PERF.	factūs sūm;	factī sūmūs.
PLUP.	factūs ērām;	factī ērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	factūs ērō;	factī ērāmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fiām;	fiāmūs.
IMP.	fiērēm;	fiērēmūs.
PERF.	factūs sīm;	factī sīmūs.
PLUP.	factūs essēm;	factī essēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fi;	fiētō.
-------	-----	--------

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	fiērl.	PARTICIPLE.
PERF.	factūs essē.	PERF. factūs.
FUT.	factūm irl.	GER. fāciendūs.

295. Eō, Irō, Ivī, Itūm, *to go.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	eō, Is, It;	Imūs, Itīs, eunt.
IMP.	Ibām;	Ibāmūs.
FUT.	Ibō;	Ibōmūs.
PERF.	Ivī;	Ivīmūs.
PLUP.	Ivērām;	Ivērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	Ivērō;	Ivērīmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eām;	eāmūs.
IMP.	Irēm;	Irēmūs.
PERF.	Ivērīm;	Ivērīmūs.
PLUP.	Ivissēm;	Ivissēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	I;	Itō.
FUT.	Itō,	Itōtō,
	Itō;	euntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	Irō.	PARTICIPLE.
PERF.	Ivissē.	PRES. iens. Gen. euntīs.
FUT.	Itūrūs essē.	FUT. Itūrūs.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

<i>Gen.</i>	eundi.	
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō.	
<i>Acc.</i>	eundūm.	<i>Acc.</i> itūm.
<i>Abl.</i>	eundō.	<i>Abl.</i> itū.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation, but it forms the Sup. with a short vowel (*itūm*) and is irregular in several parts of the present system. It admits contraction according to 284: *istis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—*Eo*, as an intransitive verb, wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular, *itur*, *ibātur*, etc. (301, 1), but *iri*, the Pass. Infin., occurs as an auxiliary in the Fut. Infin. Pass. of the regular conjugations: *āmātūm irī*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eo* are generally conjugated like *eo*, but shorten *irī* into *irī*.—*Vēneō* (*vēnum eo*) has sometimes *vēniābam* for *venībam*. Many compounds want the supine, and a few admit in the Fut. a rare form in *āmī*, *āsī*, *ātī*.

Transitive compounds have also the Passive: *ādeo*, to approach, *adeor*, *adris*, *adītur*, etc.

Ambio is regular, like *audio*, though *ambībam* for *ambiēbam* occurs.

296. *Quoō*, *quīre*, *quīvi*, *quītūm*, to be able, and *nēquoō*, *nēquīre*, *nēquīvi* (*ii*), *nēquītūm*, to be unable, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare except in the Present tense.¹

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts. The following are the most important.²

I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

Coepi, *I have begun*. *Měmīni*, *I remember*. *Odi*, *I hate*.

INDICATIVE.

<i>PERF.</i>	coepī.	|	měmīnl.	|	ōdl.
<i>PLUP.</i>	coepērām.	|	měmīnērām.	|	ōdērām.
<i>FUT. PERF.</i>	coepērō.	|	měmīnērō.	|	ōdērō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>PERF.</i>	coepērīm.	|	měmīnērīm.	|	ōdērīm.
<i>PLUP.</i>	coepissēm.	|	měmīnissēm.	|	ōdissēm.

¹ A passive form *quīfūr*, *negūfūr*, etc., sometimes occurs before a Pass. Infin.

² Many, which want the Perf. or Sup. or both, have been mentioned under the Classification of Verbs. See 259 to 288.

IMPERATIVE.

S. měmentō.
P. měmentōtō.

INFINITIVE.

PERF.	coepissē.	měmīnissē.	đissē.
FUT.	coeptūrūs essē.		đsūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	coeptūs.		đsūs. ¹
FUT.	coeptūrūs.		đsūrūs.

1. PASSIVE FORM.—With passive infinitives *coepi* generally takes the passive form: *coepitus sum*, *đram*, etc. The Part. *coeptus* is passive in sense.

2. PRESENT IN SENSE.—*Memini* and *đdi* are present in sense; hence in the Pluperf. and Fut. Perf. they have the sense of the Imperf. and Fut.—*Nōvi*, I know, Perf. of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuevi*, I am wont, Perf. of *consuesco*, to accustom one's self, are also present in sense.

II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. Aio, *I say, say yes.*²

INDIC.	Pres.	aio,	aiš, ³	aít;	—	—	—	aiunt.
	Imp.	aiébäm,	-ébäs,	-ébät;	-ébamüs,	-ébatüs,	-ébant. ⁴	
	Perf.	—	—	aít;	—	—	—	
SUBJ.	Pres.	—	aiás,	aiät;	—	—	—	aiant.
IMPER.	Pres.	ai(rare).						
PART.	Pres.	aiens (as adjective).						

2. Inquam, *I say.*

INDIC.	Pres.	inquám, inquís,	inquit;	inquimüs, inquítüs,	inquiunt.			
	Imp.	—	—	inquiébät; ⁵	—	—	—	
	Fut.	—	inquiës,	inquiët;	—	—	—	
	Perf.	—	inquisti,	inquit;	—	—	—	
IMPER.	Pres.	inqué.	Fut.	inquiñtō.				

¹ *Oeus* is active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exoeus*, *pérœus*.

² In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *a-yo*, *a'-is*. See 7, 4, 4).

³ The interrogative form *aiens* is often shortened into *aín*.

⁴ *Aibam*, *aibas*, etc., occur in comedy.

⁵ Also written *inquiñbat*.

3. *Färi, to speak.*¹

INDIC.	Pres.	—	—	fätür;	—	—	—	—
	Fut.	fäbör,	—	fabitür;	—	—	—	—
	Perf.	fätüs süm,	ës,	est;	fäti sümüs,	estis,	sunt.	
	Plup.	fätüs öräm,	eräs,	erät;	fäti erämüs,	erätiſ,	örant.	
SUBJ.	Perf.	fätüs sim,	sis,	sit;	fäti simüs,	sitisi,	sint.	
	Plup.	fätüs essäm,	essäs,	essät;	fäti essämüs,	essetiſ,	essent.	
IMPER.	Pres.	fär.						
INFIN.	Pres.	färI.						
PART.	Pres.	(fans) fantis;	Perf.	fätüs;	Ger.	fandüs.		
GERUND,	Gen.	and Abl.	fandi,	dö.	SUPINE,	Abl.	fatü.	

III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.—	ävë,	avëtö;	avëtö;	INF.	avërë,	hail.
	salvë,	salvëtö,	salvëtö;	²	salvërë,	hail.
	cëdö,	cettö,				tell me, give me.
	äpägë,					begone.

2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDIC.	Pres.	Fut.	Sub. Pres.	Imp.	INFIN.		
	confit,	—	confiät,	confiérët,	confiérël, to be done.		
	défít,	deflunt,	defliät,	—	defiérël, to be wanting.		
	infít,	influnt,	—	—	to begin.		
Sub.	Imp.	föräm,	förës,	förët,	förent.	INF.	förë. ³
IND.	Pres.	övät.		PART.	övans,		he rejoices.
IND.	Pres.	quaesö,			quaesümüs, ⁴		I pray.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs never admit a personal subject. They correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *lïcet*, it is lawful, *öportet*, it behooves.⁵ They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. Strictly Impersonal are only :

¹ *Färi* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple: *afämur*, *afamäni*, *afäbar*; *afabëris*.

² The Fut. *salvëtö* is also used for the Imperat.

³ *Föräm* = essem; *förë* = füturum esse. See 204, 2.

⁴ Old forms for *quaero* and *quaerimius*.

⁵ The real subject is generally an infinitive or clause: *hoo fört öportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

Děcět,	děcuit,	<i>it becomes.</i> ¹	Přigět,	{ přiguſt, přigětum est,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Líbět,	{ líbuit, líbitum est,	<i>it pleases.</i> ¹	Paenitět, paenituit,	{ paenitětum est,	<i>it causes re- gret; paenitēt me, I repent.</i>
Líčět,	{ lícuit, lícitum est,	<i>it is lawful.</i> ¹	Přidět,	{ přiduſt, přidětum est,	<i>it shames.</i>
Líquět,	lícuit,	<i>it is evident.</i> ¹	Taedět,	{ taedětum est,	<i>per-taedes;</i>
Misérět,	mísérítum est,	<i>it excites pity;</i>			<i>per-taedět, per-</i>
me miséret,	I pity.				<i>taesum est.</i>
Oportět,	óportuſt,	<i>it behooves.</i>			

1. PARTICIPLES are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from LIBET: *libens*, willing; (2) from LICKER: *licens*, free; *licitus*, allowed; (3) from PAENITET: *paenitens*, penitent; *paenitendus*, to be repented of; (4) from PUDET: *pudens*, modest; *pudendus*, shameful.

2. GERUNDS are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances: *paenitendum*, *pudendō*.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulmňat, *it lightens*; grandinňat, *it hails*; lücescít, *it grows light*; pluſit, *it rains*; rörät, *dew falls*; tönät, *it thunders*.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally:

Accedit, *it happens*; apparet, *it appears*; constat, *it is evident*; contingit, *it happens*; dělectat, *it delights*; dölet, *it grieves*; intěrest, *it concerns*; jývat, *it delights*; pátet, *it is plain*; pläcket, *it pleases*; praestat, *it is better*; rěfert, *it concerns*.

1. In the PASSIVE VOICE intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi crèditur, *it is credited to me, I am believed*; tibi creditur, *you are believed*; creditum est, *it was believed*; certáetur, *it is contended*; curritur, *there is running, people run*; pugnátur, *it is fought, they, we, etc., fight*; vivitur, *we, you, they live*.

2. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (232) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi scribendum est, *I must write*; tibi scribendum est, *you must write*; illi scribendum est, *he must write*.

⁴ These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject.

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

302. THE Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles*: the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *celeriter currere*, to run swiftly; *tam celer*, so swift; *tam celeriter*, so swiftly.

304. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into four principal classes:

I. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Hic,	<i>here</i> ;	huc,	<i>hither</i> ;	hinc,	<i>hence</i> .
illuc,	<i>there</i> ;	illuc,	<i>thither</i> ;	illinc,	<i>thence</i> .
istic,	<i>there</i> ;	istuc,	<i>thither</i> ;	istinc,	<i>thence</i> .
ubi,	<i>where?</i>	quod,	<i>whither?</i>	undē,	<i>whence?</i>

II. ADVERBS OF TIME.

Hodiē,	<i>to-day</i> .	nondūm,	<i>not yet</i> .	saepđ,	<i>often</i> .
Ibi,	<i>then</i> .	nunc,	<i>now</i> .	sěměl,	<i>once</i> .
jām,	<i>now</i> .	nunquām,	<i>never</i> .	tūm,	<i>then</i> .
jamdiū,	<i>long since</i> .	olim,	<i>formerly</i> .	unquām,	<i>ever</i> .

III. ADVERBS OF MANNER, MEANS, DEGREE.

Adeō,	<i>so</i> .	paenđ,	<i>almost</i> .	sic,	<i>so</i> .
Altēr,	<i>otherwise</i> .	pälām,	<i>openly</i> .	üt,	<i>as</i> .
Itā,	<i>so</i> .	prorsūs,	<i>wholly</i> .	valdē,	<i>much</i> .
mägls,	<i>more</i> .	rltē,	<i>rightly</i> .	vix,	<i>scarcely</i> .

IV. ADVERBS OF CAUSE, INFERENCE.

Cūr,	<i>why?</i>	eđ,	<i>for this reason</i> .
quārē,	<i>wherefore</i> .	lđeđ,	<i>on this account</i> .
quāmobrēm,	<i>wherefore</i> .	idcircđ,	<i>therefore</i> .
quaproptēr,	<i>wherefore</i> .	proptēređ,	<i>therefore</i> .

1. For INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES, see 846, II. 1 and 2.

2. For NEGATIVE PARTICLES, see 584 and 585.

305. COMPARISON.—Most Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending *us* of the adjective into *ē*:

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	lofty.
altē,	altius,	altissimē,	loftily.
prudens,	prudentior,	prudentissimus,	prudent.
prudentēr,	prudentius,	prudentissimē,	prudently.

1. MAGIS AND MAXIME.—When the adjective is compared with *māgis* and *maxime*, the adverb is compared in the same way:

ēgrēgius,	māgis egregius,	maxime egregius,	excellent.
egregiē,	māgis egregie,	maxime egregie,	excellently.

2. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity:

bōnus,	mēlior,	optīmus,	good.
bēnē,	mēlius,	optimē,	well.
mālē,	pejus,	pessimē,	badly.

3. DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.—When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective:

—	dētērior,	deterriimus,	worse.
—	dētērius,	deterriime,	worse.
nōvus,	—	novissimus,	new.
nōvē,	—	novissimē,	newly.

4. COMPARED.—A few not derived from adjectives are compared:

diū,	diūtiūs,	diutissimē,	for a long time.
saepē,	saepius,	saepissimē,	often.
sātis,	satiūs,	—	sufficiently.
nūpēr,	—	nuperrīme,	recently.

5. NOT COMPARED.—Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared: *hic*, here; *nunc*, now; *vulgārē*, commonly.

6. SUPERLATIVES IN *o* OR *um*.—*o* or *um* are used in a few adverbs: *prīmō*, *prīmūm*, *pōtissimūm*.

PREPOSITIONS.

306. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *antē mē*, before me. See 433–435.

307. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Ambī*, *amb*, around, about; *dī*, *dī*, asunder; *rē*, *rēd*, back; *sē*, *sēd*, aside, apart; and *vē*, not, are called inseparable prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

CONJUNCTIONS.

808. Conjunctions are mere connectives: *päter et filius*, the father and son; *päter aut filius*, the father or son.

309. Conjunctions are divided, according to their use, into two classes:

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect similar constructions: *labor völuptasquē*, labor and pleasure; *Carthaginiē cēpit ac dīruit*, he took and destroyed Carthage.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect subordinate with principal constructions: *haec dūm colligunt, effūgit*, while they collect these things, he escapes.

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

810. Coördinate Conjunctions comprise five subdivisions:

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting union:

Et, *quē*, *atquē*, *ac*, *and*. *Etiām*, *quōquē*, *also*. *Nēquē*, *nēc*, *and not*. *Nēquē*—*nēquē*, *nēc*—*nēc*, *nēquē*—*nēc*, *neither*—*nor*.

2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting separation:

Aut, *vēl*, *vē*, *sīvē* (*seu*), *or*. *Aut*—*aut*, *vēl*—*vēl*, *either*—*or*. *Sīvē*—*sīvē*, *either*—*or*.

3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting opposition:

Sēd, *autēm*, *vērūm*, *vērō*, *but*. *At*, *but*, *on the contrary*. *Atqui*, *rather*. *Cētērūm*, *but still*. *Tāmēn*, *yet*.

4. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inference:

Ergō, *Igitūr*, *indē*, *proindē*, *Itāquē*, *hence*, *therefore*. See also 587, IV. 2.

5. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause:

Nām, *namquē*, *šnām*, *štēnām*, *for*.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

811. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise eight subdivisions:

1. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting time:

Quandō, *quūm*, *when*. *Ut*, *übē*, *as*, *when*. *Quum prīmūm*, *üt prīmūm*, *übi prīmūm*, *sīmūl*, *sīmūlāc*, *sīmūlatquē*, *as soon as*. *Dūm*, *dōnēc*, *quoasd*,

quamdiū, *while, until, as long as.* Antēquām, priusquam, *before.* Posteāquam, *after.*

2. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting comparison :

Ut, ūtī, sicūt, sicūti, *as, so as.* Vělūt, *just as.* Praeūt, proūt, *according as, in comparison with.* Quām, *as.* Tanquām, quāšl, ūt sī, āc sī, vělūt sī, *as if.*

3. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting condition :

Sī, *if.* Sī nōn, nīsl, nī, *if not.* Sīn, *but if.* Sī quidēm, *if indeed.* Sī mōdō, dūm, mōdō, dummmōdō, *if only.*

4. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting concession :

Quamquām, līcēt, quūm, *although.* Etsī, tāmet sī, ētiam sī, *even if.* Quamvis, quantumvis, quantumlibēt, *however much, although.* Ut, *grant that.* Nē, *grant that not.*

5. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting purpose or end :

Ut, ūtī, *that, in order that.* Nē, nēvē (*neu*), *that not.* Quō, *that.* Quōmīnūs, *that not.*

6. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting consequence or result :

Ut, *so that.* Ut nōn, quīn, *so that not.*

7. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause :

Quiā, quōd, *because.* Quūm, *since.* Quōniām, quandō, quandōqui-dem, sīquidēm, *since indeed.*

8. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inquiry :

Nē, nonnē, nūm, utrūm, ān, *whether.* An nōn, necnē, *or not.*

INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address. They may express

1. Astonishment : *ō, hēm, ehēm, huī, ālāt, pōpae, vāh, īn, eccē.*
2. Joy : *iō, eu, ēvoe.*
3. Sorrow : *vae, hei, heu, ēheu, ohē, ah, au, prō or proh.*
4. Disgust : *ahā, phuī, īpāgš.*
5. Calling : *heus, ō, ehō, ehōdūm.*
6. Praise : *eugš, ejč, heič.*

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

313. Words may be formed in two ways :

I. By DERIVATION ; i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the stems of other words : *āmōr*, love, from *āmo*, to love.

II. By COMPOSITION ; i. e., by the union of two or more words or their stems : *bēnēvōlēns*, well-wishing, from *bēnē*, well, and *vōlēns*, wishing.

1. SIMPLE and COMPOUND.—Words formed by composition are called *Compounds* ; those not thus formed are called *Simple Words*.

2. PRIMITIVE and DERIVATIVE.—Simple words formed by derivation are called *Derivatives* ; those not thus formed are called *Primitives*.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

314. Nouns are derived from other *Nouns*, from *Adjectives*, and from *Verbs*.

I. NOUNS FROM NOUNS.

315. DIMINUTIVES generally end in

čilš, *čilä*, *čilum*, *cūlš*, *cūlă*, *cūlum*.

hort-ūlus,	a small garden,	from	hortus,	garden.
virg-ūla,	a small branch,	"	virga,	branch.
oppid-ūlum,	a small town,	"	oppidum,	town.
flos-cūlus,	a small flower,	"	flōs,	flower.
parti-cūla,	a small part,	"	pars,	part.
mūnus-cūlum,	a small present,	"	mūnus,	present.

1. *Ulus*, *ūla*, *ūlum*, originally *ōlus*, *ōla*, *ōlum*, are appended to a and *o* stems, and to Dental and Guttural Stems. When appended to a and *o* stems, they take the place of the final vowel.

2. The original forms *ōlus*, *ōla*, *ōlum*, are used after *i* or *e* : *filiōlus*, little son, from *filius* ; *filiōla*, little daughter, from *filia* ; *atriōlum*, small hall, from *atrium*.

3. *Ell-lus*, *el-la*, *el-lum*, *il-lus*, *il-la*, *il-lum*, are used when the stem

of the primitive ends in *a* or *o*, preceded by *l*, *n*, or *r*: *ōcel-lus*,¹ small eye, from *ōcūlus*; *fabel-la*, short fable, from *fābūla*; *vil-lum*,¹ a little wine, from *vīnum*.

4. *Cūlus*, *cūla*, *cūlum*, are appended to *e*, *i*, and *o* stems, and to liquid and *s*-stems, but stems in *u* change *u* into *i*, and stems in *on* change *o* into *u*: *versi-cūlus*, a little verse, from *versus*; *hōmun-cūlus*, a small man, from *hōmo*. Like nouns in *o*, a few other words form diminutives in *uncūlus*, *uncūla*: *āv-uncūlus*, maternal uncle, from *āvus*, grandfather.²

5. *Uleus* and *cio* are rare: *ēquuleus*, a small horse, from *ēquus*; *hōmuncio*, a small man, from *hōmo*.

316. PATRONYMICS, or names of descent, generally end in

<i>īdes</i> ,	<i>īdes</i> ,	<i>iādes</i> ,	<i>ādes</i> ,	<i>masculine.</i>
<i>īs</i> ,	<i>ēis</i> ,	<i>ias</i> ,	<i>as</i> ,	<i>feminine.</i>

Tantāl-īdes,	<i>son of Tantalus</i> ;	Tantāl-īs,	<i>daughter of Tantalus.</i>
Thēs-īdes,	<i>son of Theseus</i> ;	Thes-ēis,	<i>daughter of Theseus.</i>
Lāert-iādes,	<i>son of Laertes</i> ;	Laert-ias,	<i>daughter of Laertes.</i>
Thesti-ādes,	<i>son of Thestius</i> ;	Thesti-as,	<i>daughter of Thestius.</i>

1. These endings take the place of the final stem-vowel or diphthong.
2. *Ides* (*i*) and *īs* are the common endings.
3. *Ides* (*i*) and *ēis* are used especially with primitives in *eus*.
4. *Iādes*, *ādes*, and *ias*, *as*, are used principally with primitives in *ius*, and in those in *as* and *es* of Dec. I.—*Aenēas* has *Acneādes*, masc., and *Aenēis*, fem.
5. *Inē* and *ōnē* are rare feminine endings: *Neptūn-inē*, daughter of Neptune; *Acrīsi-ōnē*, daughter of Acrisius.

317. DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE are often formed with the endings

<i>ārium</i> ,	<i>ētum</i> , <i>tum</i> ,	<i>īle.</i> ³
cōlumb-ārium,	<i>a dovecot</i> ,	from cōlumba.
querc-ētum,	<i>a forest of oaks</i> ,	" quercus.
sālic-tum,	<i>a thicket of willows</i> ,	" sālix.
ōv-īle,	<i>a sheepfold</i> ,	" ūvis.

1. **Arium** designates the place where anything is kept, a receptacle: *acrārium*, treasury, from *aes*.

2. **Etum**, **tum**, used with names of trees and plants, designate the place where they flourish: *ōlivētum*, an olive-grove, from *ōlīva*.

¹ The syllables *el* and *il* do not belong to the ending, but are produced by a slight change in the stem: thus, *ōcūlus*, *ōcūl-ūlus*=*ōcul-lus*=*ōcel-lus*; *vīnum*, *vīn-ūlum*=*vin-lum*=*vil-lum*.

² *Nubē-cūla*, *plūbē-cūla*, and *vulpē-cūla*, are formed as if from *e*-stems.

³ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel.

3. **Ile**, used with names of animals, designates their stall or fold: *bövile*, stall for cattle, from *bos*.

318. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with

ārius,	io,	iūm,	ītium,	tus, ītus,	ātus. ¹
stātu-ārius,		a statuary,		from	stātua.
lūd-io,		a player,		"	lūdus.
sācerdōt-iūm,		priesthood,		"	sācerdōs.
serv-ītium,		servitude,		"	servus.
vir-tus,		virtue,		"	vīr.
consūl-ātus,		consulship,		"	consūl.

1. **Arius** and **io** generally designate one's occupation.

2. **Iūm** and **ītium** denote office, condition, or collection: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

3. **Tus** and **ītus** designate some characteristic or condition: *virtus*, manliness, virtue, from *vir*; *jūventus*, youth, from *jūvēnīs*.

4. **Ātus** denotes rank, office, collection: *consulātus*, consulship, from *consul*; *sēnātus*, senate, collection of old men, from *sēnēx*.

5. **PATRIAL OR GENTILE NOUNS**.—See 326, 2.

II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

319. From Adjectives are formed various ABSTRACT NOUNS with the endings

ia,	ītia,	ītās,	ītūdo,	īmōnia. ¹
diligent-ia,		diligence,	from	dīligens.
āmīc-ītia,		friendship,	"	āmīcus.
bōn-ītās,		goodness,	"	bōnus.
sōl-ītūdo,		solitude,	"	sōlus.
ācr-īmōnia,		sharpness,	"	ācēr.

1. **Itās**, **tās**, **ētās**.—*Itās* sometimes drops *i*: *libertās*, liberty, from *līber*; *ētās* is used with primitives in *tus*: *piētās*, piety, from *pius*. Sometimes the stem of the adjective is slightly changed: *fācīlis*, *fācultas*, faculty; *diffīcīlis*, *diffīcultas*, difficulty; *pōtēns*, *pōtestas*, power; *hōnestus*, *hōnestas*, honesty.

2. **Itūdo** and **ītās**.—A few adjectives form abstracts with both these endings: *firmus*, *firmītās*, *firmītūdo*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* generally change *tus* into *tūdo*: *solīcītus*, *solīcītūdo*, solicitude.

3. **Imōnia** is rare: *Parśmōnia*=*parcimonia*, parsimony, from *parcēre*.

¹ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel. This is true of all endings beginning with a vowel.

III. NOUNS FROM VERBS.

320. From the VERB-STEM are formed VERBAL NOUNS with various endings, especially with

ör; ium; měn, mentum; břlum, cřlum, brum, crum, trum.

šm-ör,	<i>love,</i>	<i>from</i>	šmo.
gaud-iwm,	<i>joy,</i>	"	gaudeo.
ornā-mentum,	<i>ornament,</i>	"	orno.
vōcā-břlum,	<i>appellation,</i>	"	vōco.
símūlā-crum,	<i>image,</i>	"	símulo.

1. *Or*¹ designates the *action* or *state* denoted by the verb.

2. *Ium*¹ has nearly the same force, but sometimes designates the *thing done*: *aedificium*, edifice, from *aedifico*.

3. *Men* and *mentum* generally designate the *means* of an action, or its involuntary *subject*: *flumen*, a stream, something which flows, from *fluo*; *agmen*, an army in motion, from *ago*.

A connecting vowel is sometimes used: *šl-mentum*. The stem is sometimes shortened or changed: *mōmentum*, moving force, from *mōveo*.

4. *Břlum*, *cřlum*, *brum*, *crum*, *trum*, designate the *instrument* or the *place* of the action: *vehicřlum*,² vehicle, instrument of the action, from *veho*; *střbřlum*, stall, place of the action, from *sto*.

The stem-vowel is sometimes changed: *sřpulcrum*, sepulchre, from *sřpčlio*.

5. *Ulum*, *ňla*.—*Ulum* for *cřlum* occurs after *c* and *g*: *vinc-řlum*, a bond, from *vincio*; *cing-řlum*, girdle, from *cingo*. *Ula* also occurs: *ręgula*, rule, from *ręgo*.

6. *Us*, *a*, *o*, sometimes designate the *agent* of the action: *cōquus*, cook, from *cōquo*; *scriba*, writer, from *scribo*; *erro*, wanderer, from *erro*.

7. *Ela*, *ido*, *Igo*, and a few other endings also occur: *quęrla*, complaint, from *quęror*; *cřpido*, desire, from *cřpio*; *řrigo*, origin, from *řrior*.

321. From the VERB-STEM are formed VERBAL NOUNS with the endings

tör,	tlo,	třs,	třra.
šmā-tör,	<i>lover,</i>	<i>from</i>	šmo.
audi-tor,	<i>hearer,</i>	"	audio.
měnl-tio,	<i>advising,</i>	"	měneo.
audi-tio,	<i>hearing,</i>	"	audio.
audi-třs,	<i>hearing,</i>	"	audio.
can-třs,	<i>singing,</i>	"	căno.
pic-třra,	<i>painting,</i>	"	pingo.

¹ See foot-note, p. 143.

² With connecting vowel.

1. **T** in these endings becomes **s** when added to stems which form the Supine stem in **s**: *vī-sio*, *vī-sus*, sight, vision. See 257.

2. **O** denotes the *agent* or *doer*. The corresponding feminine ending is *trix*: *victor*, conqueror; *victrix*, conqueress.

3. **Tio**, **tus**, and **tūra**, form *abstract nouns*, and denote the *act* itself.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

322. Derivative adjectives are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Verbs*, and *Adverbs*.

I. ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS.

323. **FULNESS.**—Adjectives denoting *fulness*, *abundance*, *supply*, generally end in

ōsus,	ōlentus,	čalentus,	ātus,	ītus,	ūtus,	tus. ¹
ānīm-ōsus,		full of courage,		from		ānīmus.
vīn-ōlentus,		full of wine,		"		vīnum.
ōpū-lentus,		opulent,		"		ōpēs.
al-ātus,		winged,		"		āla.
turr-ītus,		turreled,		"		turris.
corn-ūtus,		horned,		"		cornu.
jus-tus,		just,		"		jūs.

324. **MATERIAL.**—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in

eūs,	īnus,	īneūs,	nus,	neūs,	āceūs,	īcius. ¹
aur-eus,		golden,		from		aurum.
fāg-īnus,		of beech,		"		fāgus.
fāg-īneūs,		of beech,		"		fāgus.
pōpul-nus,		of poplar,		"		pōpūlus.
pōpul-neūs,		of poplar,		"		pōpūlus.
pāpȳr-āceūs,		of papyrus,		"		pāpȳrus.
lāter-īciūs,		of brick,		"		lāter.

1. These endings sometimes denote *characteristic* or *possession*: *virgīneūs*, belonging to a maiden.

325. **CHARACTERISTIC.**—Adjectives signifying *belonging to*, *derived from*, generally end in

¹ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings generally take the place of the final vowel, but u-stems retain u before the ending īeūs: *fructu-āceūs*, fruitful.

<i>īcus, īlis, īnus, ius; īlis, īnus, īris, īrius, ensis.</i> ¹			
civ-īcus,	<i>relating to a citizen,</i>	from	civis.
civ-īlis,	<i>relating to a citizen,</i>	"	civis.
ēqu-Inus,	<i>of, pertaining to a horse,</i>	"	ēquus.
rēg-ius,	<i>royal,</i>	"	rex.
mort-ālis,	<i>mortal,</i>	"	mors.
urb-ānus,	<i>of, pertaining to a city,</i>	"	urbs.
sälüt-āris,	<i>salutary,</i>	"	sälüs.
auxili-ārius,	<i>auxiliary,</i>	"	auxiliūm.
fōrum-ensis,	<i>forensic,</i>	"	fōrum.

1. *Ester, Itēmus, tīcus*, and a few other endings occur: *camp-ester*, level, from *campus*; *mär-ētēmus*, maritime, from *märe*; *rus-ticus*, rustic, from *rūs*.

326. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in ānus, īānus, Inus; īācus, īcus, ius, ensis, iensis, as, aeus, īeus.¹

Sull-ānus,	<i>of Sylla,</i>	from	Sulla.
Rōm-ānus,	<i>Roman,</i>	"	Rōma.
Cicērōn-īānus,	<i>Ciceronian,</i>	"	Cicēro.
Lät-Inus,	<i>Latin,</i>	"	Lätium.
Cōrinth-iācus,	<i>Corinthian,</i>	"	Cōrinthus.
Cōrinth-ius,	<i>Corinthian,</i>	"	Cōrinthus.
Brītann-īcus,	<i>British,</i>	"	Brītannus.
Cann-ensis,	<i>of Cannae,</i>	"	Cannae.
Athēn-ienis, s,	<i>Athenian,</i>	"	Athēnae.
Fidēn-as,	<i>of Fidenae,</i>	"	Fidēnae.
Smyrn-aeus,	<i>Smyrnean,</i>	"	Smyrna.
Pŷthāgōr-ēus,	<i>Pythagorean,</i>	"	Pŷthāgōrās.

1. *Anus* and *iānus* are the endings generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons*; but others also occur.

2. PATRIALS.—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrīal* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place: *Cōrinthii*, the Corinthians; *Athēnienses*, the Athenians.

II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

327. DIMINUTIVES from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (315) in

īlus, īla, īlum, cīlus, cīla, cīlum. ¹			
long-īlus, a, um,	<i>rather long,</i>	from	longus.
pauper-cīlus, a, um,	<i>rather poor,</i>	"	pauper.

¹ See 819, foot-note.

1. *Olus, ellus, and illus*, also occur as in nouns.
2. *Cūlus* is sometimes added to comparatives: *dūrius-cūlus*, somewhat hard, from *dūrius*.

III. ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS.

328. Verbal adjectives generally end in

*bundus, cundus, idus, ilis, bilis, ax*¹

<i>mirā-bundus,</i>	<i>wondering,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>miror.</i>
<i>vērē-cundus,</i>	<i>diffident,</i>	"	<i>vēreor.</i>
<i>cāl-idus,</i>	<i>warm,</i>	"	<i>cāleo.</i>
<i>pāv-idus,</i>	<i>fearful,</i>	"	<i>pāveo.</i>
<i>dōc-ilis,</i>	<i>docile,</i>	"	<i>dōceo.</i>
<i>āmā-bilis,</i>	<i>worthy of love,</i>	"	<i>āmo.</i>
<i>pugn-ax,</i>	<i>pugnacious,</i>	"	<i>pugno.</i>
<i>aud-ax,</i>	<i>daring,</i>	"	<i>audeo.</i>

1. *Bundus* and *cundus* have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the Part.: *laetabundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *vērē-cundus*, diffident.

2. *Idus* retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. *Ilis* and *bilis* denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense: *āmabiliſ*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terribiliſ*, terrible, capable of producing terror. *Bilis* is sometimes added to the Supine stem: *flexibilis*, flexible.

4. *Ax* denotes *inclination*, generally a faulty one: *loquaz*, loquacious.

5. *Uus, ilus, ticius, and tivus*, also occur:—(1) *uus* in the sense of *idus*: *vac-uus*, vacant.—(2) *illus* in the sense of *ax*: *crēd-illus*, credulous.—(3) *ticius* and *tivus* in the sense of the Perf. Part.: *fic-ticius*, feigned, from *ingo*; *cap-tivus*, captive, from *cōpīo*.

IV. ADJECTIVES FROM ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

329. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:

<i>hōdiernus,</i>	<i>of this day,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>hōdiē.</i>
<i>contrārius,</i>	<i>contrary,</i>	"	<i>contrā.</i>

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

330. Derivative Verbs are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs*.

¹ See 819, foot-note.

I. VERBS FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

331. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives are called *Denominatives*. They end in

Conj. I. o,	Conj. II. eo,	Conj. IV. io.
cūro,	<i>to cure,</i>	from
nōmīno,	<i>to name,</i>	"
lībēro,	<i>to liberate,</i>	"
fīreo,	<i>to bloom,</i>	"
lūceo,	<i>to shine,</i>	"
albeo,	<i>to be white,</i>	"
fīnio,	<i>to finish,</i>	"
mollio,	<i>to soften,</i>	"

1. Denominatives of the Second Conjugation are intransitive, but most of the others are transitive.

2. *Asco* and *esco* occur in Inceptives. See 332, II.

3. DEONENT. Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *dōmīnōr*, to domineer, from *dōmīnus*.

II. VERBS FROM VERBS.

332. I. FREQUENTATIVES denote *repeated* or *continued* action. They are of the first conjugation, and end in *ito*, or *to*, sometimes *so*.

clām- <i>ito</i> , ¹	<i>to exclaim,</i>	from	clāmo.
vōl- <i>ito</i> ,	<i>to flit,</i>	"	vōlo.
hāb- <i>ito</i> ,	<i>to have often,</i>	"	hābeo.
läg- <i>ito</i> ,	<i>to put in motion often,</i>	"	lägo.
can- <i>to</i> ,	<i>to sing,</i>	"	cāno.
cur- <i>so</i> ,	<i>to run about,</i>	"	curro.

1. Primitives of Conj. I. take *ito*, but contraction sometimes takes place: *adjū-to* for *adjūv-ito*, to assist often, from *adjūvo*.

2. *So* is used with primitives which form the Supine in *sum*. See 257.

3. Frequentatives may be formed from other frequentatives: *cant-ito*, to sing often, from *cant-to*, from *cāno*.

4. *Esso* and *isso* form derivatives which are generally classed with *frequentatives*, though they are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of Conj. III: *fācio, fācessō*, to do earnestly;

¹ *Ito* takes the place of the final stem-vowel. This is true of all endings beginning with a vowel.

incipio, incipisco, to begin eagerly. The regular frequentatives sometimes have the same force: *rāpio, rapio*, to seize eagerly.

II. INCEPTIVES or INCHOATIVES denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in

	asco,	esco,	isco. ¹
gēlasco,	<i>to begin to freeze,</i>	from	gēlo, āre.
rūbesco,	<i>to grow red,</i>	"	rūbeo, ēre.
trēmisco,	<i>to begin to tremble,</i>	"	trēmo, ēre.
obdormisco,	<i>to fall asleep,</i>	"	obdormio, īre.

1. **Asco** is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. I., and in a few from nouns and adjectives: *puēr, puērasco*, to become a boy.

2. **Easco** is by far the most common ending, and is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. II., and in many from nouns and adjectives: *dūrus, dūresco*, to grow hard.

III. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation, and are formed from the Supine stem by adding **ūrio**:

ēs-ūrio,	<i>to desire to eat,</i>	from	ēdo,	ēsum.
empt-ūrio,	<i>to desire to buy,</i>	"	ēmo,	emptum.

IV. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action.² They are of the first conjugation, and end in **illo**:

cant-illo,	<i>to sing feebly,</i>	from	canto. ¹
conscrīb-illo,	<i>to scribble,</i>	"	conscrībo.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

333. Adverbs are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, Participles, Pronouns, and Prepositions*.

I. ADVERBS FROM NOUNS.

334. Adverbs are formed from Nouns

1. By simply taking a case-ending, as that of the accusative, ablative, or locative:

partim, partly; *forte*, by chance; *jūre*, with right, rightly; *tempōre*, *tempōri*, in time; *hōri*, yesterday.

¹ See foot-note on page 148.

² Sometimes treated as *Denominatives* from supposed Diminutive Nouns.

2. By taking special endings:

1) **ātīm, tīm,** denoting MANNER: *grēx, grēg-ātim*, by herds; *fūr, fur-tīm*, by stealth.

2) **ītūs,** denoting ORIGIN, SOURCE: *caelum, cael-ītūs*, from heaven; *fundus, fund-ītūs*, from the foundation.

II. ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

335. Adverbs from adjectives and participles generally end in

ē, tēr, ītēr.

doctus, doct-ē, learnedly; *liber, libér-ē*, freely; *élégans, elegan-ter*, elegantly; *āmans, aman-ter*, lovingly; *prudens, pruden-ter*, prudently; *celer-īter*, quickly.

1. Stems in o take ē or ītēr; some both ē and ītēr: *dūrus, dur-ē, dur-īter*, hardly.

2. Stems in nt take tēr, but drop the final t of the stem. See examples.

3. Adverbs are also formed with the endings **ātīm, īm, and ītūs**: *singūli, singul-ātim, one by one; passus (part.) pass-im, everywhere; divinus, divin-ītūs, divinely.*

4. Certain cases of adjectives are often used as adverbs:

1) Neuter accusatives in e, um, rarely a: *fūcile, easily; multum, multa, much.*

2) Ablatives in a, o, is: *dextra, on the right; consulto, designedly; paucis, briefly, in few words.*

3) Accusatives in am: *bifāriam, in two parts; multifāriam, in many parts or places (partem, understood).*

5. NUMERAL ADVERBS.—See 181.

III. ADVERBS FROM PRONOUNS.

336. Various adverbs are formed from Pronouns: thus from *hic, illē, and istē*, are formed

<i>hic,</i>	<i>here;</i>	<i>hūc,</i>	<i>hither;</i>	<i>hinc,</i>	<i>hence.</i>
<i>illīc,</i>	<i>there;</i>	<i>illūc,</i>	<i>thither;</i>	<i>illinc,</i>	<i>thence.</i>
<i>istīc,</i>	<i>there;</i>	<i>istūc,</i>	<i>thither;</i>	<i>istinc,</i>	<i>thence.</i>

IV. ADVERBS FROM PREPOSITIONS.

337. A few adverbs are formed from Prepositions, or are at least related to them:

intrā, intrō, within; ultrā, ultrō, beyond; īn, intūs, within; sūb, subtūs, beneath.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

338. The elements of a compound may unite in three distinct ways:

I. The two elements may unite without change of form:¹ *dēcem-vīri*, the decemvirs, ten men; *āb-eo*, to go away.

II. One element, generally the first, may be put in an oblique case, generally the genitive, dependent upon the other: *lēgis-lātor*, legislator, from *lex*, *lēgis*, and *lātor*.

III. The stem of the first element may unite with the second element, or with its stem: *belli-gēro*, to wage war, from *bellum* and *gēro*; *magn-ānīmus*, magnanimous, from *magnus* and *ānīmus*; *frūg-ī-fēr*, fruit-bearing, from *frux* and *fērō*.

1. The final vowel of the stem is often dropped, as in *magn-anīmus*, or changed, as in *belli-gēro*. Sometimes a connecting vowel is inserted between the parts of a compound: *frūg-ī-fēr*, fruit-bearing.

2. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION admit the following euphonic changes.

A, **āb**, **abs**:—*a* before *m* and *v*; *abs* before *c*, *p*, *t*; *āb* before the vowels and the other consonants: *a-mitto*; *abs-condo*; *āb-eo*, *ab-jicio*. But *abs* before *p* drops *b*: *as-porto* for *abs-porto*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fēro* and *au-fūgio*.

Ad,—unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*; *d* generally assimilated before the other consonants, but changed to *c* before *q* and dropped before *gn* and often before *sc*, *sp*, and *st*: *ād-eo*, *ad-do*, *ad-jungo*; *af-fēro*, *al-līgo*; *ac-quiro*, *a-gnosco* (*ad* and *gnosco*), *a-scendo*.

Ante,—the original form *anti*, retained in *anīcīpo* and *anti-sto*.

Circūm,—unchanged, except in *circu-eo*.

Cōm for **cūm**,—(1) unchanged before *b*, *m*, *p*: *com-bībo*, *com-mitto*,—(2) *m* generally dropped before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: *co-eo*, *co-haero*, *co-gnosco*,—(3) *m* assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: *col-līgo*, *cor-rumpo*,—(4) *m* changed to *n* before the other consonants: *con-fēro*, *con-gēro*.

EI, **ex**:—*ex* before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, and with assimilation before *f*; *e* generally before the other consonants and sometimes before *p* and *s*: *ex-eo*, *ex-pōno*, *ef-fēro*; *ē-dūco*, *ē-līgo*, *ē-pōto*, *e-scendo*. *S* after *ex* is often dropped: *expecto* or *expecto*.

In,—*n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*, changed to *m* before *b*, *p*; in other situations unchanged: *il-lūdo*, *im-mitto*; *im-buo*, *im-pōno*; *in-eo*, *in-dūco*.

¹ Except of course euphonic changes.

Int̄er,—unchanged, except in *intel̄igo*.

Ob,—*b* assimilated before *c, f, p*; in other situations generally unchanged: *oc-curro, of-ficio, op-pōno*; *ob-jūcio, ob-sto*. But *b* is dropped in *ob-mitto*, and an old form *obs* occurs in a few words: *obs-blesco, os-tendo* for *obs-tendo* (*b* dropped).

P̄er,—unchanged, except in *pel-līcio, pel-lūceo*, and *pe-jēro*.

Post, unchanged except in *pō-moerium* and *pō-mēridiānus*.

Pro, prōd:—*prōd* the usual form before a vowel: *prōd-eo, prōd-īgo*.

Sūb,—*b* assimilated before *c, f, g, p*, generally before *m* and *r*: dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged: *suc-cumbo, su-spīcio* for *sub-spīcio*; *sūb-eo, sub-dūco*. An old form *subs* shortened to *sus* occurs in a few words: *sus-cipio, sus-pendo*.

Trans drops *s* before *s*, and often *ns* before *d, j, n*: *trans-eo, trans-fēro; tran-sīlio* for *trans-ēlio*; *tra-do* for *trans-do*; *tra-jūcio* for *trans-fīcio*; *trā-no* for *trans-no*.

3. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS (307) also admit euphonic changes:

Ambi, amb:—*amb* before vowels; *ambī, am*, or *an* before consonants: *amb̄igo, amb̄dens, am-pūto, an-quīro*.

Dis, di: *dīs* before *c, p, q, t, s* before a vowel, and with assimilation, before *f*; *dī* in most other situations: *dis-curro, dis-pōno, dif-fluo; di-dūco, di-nōveo*. But *dīr* occurs in *dīr-īmo* and *dīr-ībeo* (*dis* and *habeo*), and both *dis* and *di* occur before *j*: *dis-jungo, di-jūdīco*.

In,—*n* dropped before *gn*: *i-gnosco*; otherwise like the prep. *in* above.

Por,—*r* assimilated before *l* and *s*; in other situations unchanged: *pol-līceor, pos-sīdeo, por-rīgo*.

Red, re:—*rēd* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-do*; *rē* in other situations: *rēd-eo, rēd-īgo, rēd-hībeo; rē-clādo, rē-vello*.

Sed, se: *sēd* before vowels, *sē* before consonants: *sēd-ītīo, sē-pōno*.

339. In COMPOUND NOUNS, the first part is generally a noun, but sometimes an adjective, adverb, or preposition; the second part is a verb or noun:

<i>artī-fex,</i>	<i>artist,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>ars and fācio.</i>
<i>caprī-cornus,</i>	<i>capricorn,</i>	"	<i>căpēr and cornu.</i>
<i>aequī-noctium,</i>	<i>equinox,</i>	"	<i>aequus and nox.</i>
<i>nē-mo,</i>	<i>nobody,</i>	"	<i>nē and hōmo.</i>
<i>prō-nōmēn,</i>	<i>pronoun,</i>	"	<i>prō and nōmēn.</i>

1. GENITIVE IN COMPOUNDS.—In compounds of two nouns, or of a noun and an adjective, the first part is often a genitive: *legis-lator*, legislator; *jūris-consul̄tus*, lawyer.

2. COMPOUNDS IN fex, cēn, and cōla, are among the most important compounds of nouns and verbs; *fex* from *fācio*; *cēn* from *cēno*; *cōla* from *cōlo*: *artī-fex*, artist; *tūbi-cēn*, trumpeter; *āgrī-cōla*, husbandman.

340. In COMPOUND ADJECTIVES, the first part is generally a noun, adjective, or preposition, and the second a noun, adjective or verb:

lēti-fer,	<i>death-bearing,</i>	from	lētum and fēro.
magn-ānīmus,	<i>magnanimous,</i>	"	magnus and ānīmus.
per-fāclis,	<i>very easy,</i>	"	pēr and fāclis.

341. In COMPOUND VERBS the first part is a noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or preposition, and the second is a verb:

aedī-fico,	<i>to build,</i>	from	aedēs and fācio.
amplī-fico,	<i>to enlarge,</i>	"	amplus and fācio.
pātē-fācio,	<i>to open,</i>	"	pāteo and fācio.
bēnē-fācio,	<i>to benefit,</i>	"	bēnē and fācio.
āb-eo,	<i>to go away,</i>	"	āb and eo.

1. When the first part is a verb, the second is generally *fācio*: *pātē-fācio*.

2. When the first part is a noun or adjective, the second is generally *fācio* or *āgo*. These verbs then become *fācio* and *āgo* of Conj. I.: *aedī-fico*, *āre*, to build; *nāv-āgo*, *āre*, to sail, from *nāvis* and *āgo*.

3. Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes.

1) *A* short and *ē* generally become *ī*: *hābeo*, *ād-hābeo*; *tēneo*, *con-tēneo*. But *a* sometimes becomes *e* or *ū*: *carpo*, *dē-cerpo*; *calco*, *con-culco*.

2) *Ae* becomes *ī*: *caedo*, *in-cido*.

3) *Au* generally becomes *ō* or *ū*: *plāudo*, *ex-plādo*; *clāudo*, *in-clāudo*.

4. Changes in Prepositions.—See 338, 2 and 3.

342. COMPOUND ADVERBS are variously formed, but most of them may be divided into three classes:

1. Such as consist of an oblique case with its preposition: *ad-mōdum*, very, to the full measure; *ob-viam*, in the way.

2. Such as consist of a noun with its adjective: *hō-dīē* (*hoc* and *dīē*), today, on this day; *qua-rē*, wherfore, by which thing.

3. Such as consist of two particles: *ād-hāc*, hitherto; *inter-dīēm*, sometimes; *in-sīpēr*, moreover.

PART THIRD.
SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Donec eris felix, multos nūmērabis amicos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous,*" and (2) "*You will number many friends,*" are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

2. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multos numerabis amicos*—is called the *Principal Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it—*donec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate Clause*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, The sun descends and the mountains are shaded. Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiades accusatus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty? Cic.

1. **INTERROGATIVE WORDS.**—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*:

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word. But *ne* appended to the principal verb often suggests the answer *yes*, while appended to any other word, it often suggests the answer *no*. It is sometimes appended to *utrum*, *num*, or *an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum*:

Utrum ticeamne, an praedicem, Shall I be silent, or shall I speak? Ter.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing? *Non* for *nonne* indicates surprise that there should be any doubt on the question: *Non vides*, Do you really not see?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

4) Questions with *an*. See 2, 4) below.

5) The interrogative word is sometimes omitted, and sometimes *numquid* is used for *num*, and *equid* for *ne* or *nonne*: *Eiquid vides*, Do you not see?

2. DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Double or disjunctive questions offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms:

1) The first clause has *utrum*, *num*, or *ne*, and the second *an*:

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours? Cic.

2) The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *ne*:

Elōquar an sileam, Shall I utter it, or keep silence? Virg.

3) When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *anno* or *necone*:

Sunt haec tua verba necne, Are these your words or not? Cic.

4) By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or*:

An hoc timēmus, Or do we fear this? Liv.

5) Other forms are rare.

3. ANSWERS.—In answers the verb or some emphatic word is usually repeated, often with *prosersus*, *vero*, and the like; or if negative, with *non*:

Dixitne causam? *Dixit.* Did he state the cause? He stated it. Cic. *Possumusne tūti esse?* *Non possumus.* Can we be safe? We cannot. Cic.

1) Sometimes the simple particle is used; affirmatively, *sā*, *etiam*, *ita*, *vero*, *certe*, etc., negatively, *non*, *minime*, etc.

Venitne? *Non.* Has he come? No. Plaut.

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

Justitiam cōle, Cultivate justice. Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

Rēliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left! Cic.

Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

Cluilius mōritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *mōritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris *Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōritur*; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.—The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex :

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence, expressed or implied, must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun :

Rex dēcrēvit, The king decreed. Nep. *Ego scribo, I write.* Cic. *Vīdeo Idem vālet, The word video has the same meaning.* Quint.

COMPLEX SUBJECT.

352. The subject admits the following modifiers :

I. AN ADJECTIVE :

Pōpūlus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, The Roman people decreed. Cic.

II. A NOUN either in apposition with the subject, in the genitive, or in an oblique case with a preposition :

Clullius rex mōritur, Clusilius the king dies. Liv. *Rex Rūtūlōrum, the king of the Rutuli.* Liv. *Liber de officiis, The book on duties.* Cic.

1. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—Any noun may be modified like the subject.
2. APPPOSITIVE AND ITS SUBJECT.—The noun in apposition with another is called an *Appositive*, and the other noun is called the *Subject* of the appositive.

3. ADVERBS WITH NOUNS.—Sometimes adverbs and adverbial expressions occur as modifiers of nouns:

Non ignāri sūmus ante mālōrum, We are not ignorant of past misfortunes. Virg. *Victōria ēpud Cnīdum, The victory at Cnidus.* Nep.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accusātus, Miltiades was accused. Nep. *Tu es testis, You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum* several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. See 362. 2. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicative Noun* or *Predicative Adjective*.

2. *Sum* with an *Adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia recte sunt, All things are right. Cic.

COMPLEX PREDICATE.

354. I. The VERB admits the following modifiers:

I. OBJECTIVE MODIFIERS:

1. A *Direct Object* in the Accusative—that upon which the action is directly exerted:

Miltiādes Athēnas libērāvit, Miltiades liberated Athens. Nep.

2. An *Indirect Object* in the Dative—that *to* or *for* which something is or is done:

Lābōri stūdent, They devote themselves to labor. Caes.

3. *Combined Objects* consisting of two or more cases:

Me rōgāvit sententiām, He asked me my opinion. Cic. *Pons iter hos-tibus dēdit, The bridge furnished a passage to the enemy.* Liv.

II. ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS:

1. *Adverbs*:

Bella feliciter gessit, He waged wars successfully. Cic.

2. *Adverbial Expressions*—consisting of oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions:

In his castris mōritur, He dies (where?) in this camp. Liv. *Vēre con. vēnēre, They assembled (when?) in the spring.* Liv.

355. II. The PREDICATE NOUN is modified in the various ways specified for the subject (352).

356. III. The PREDICATE ADJECTIVE admits the following modifiers :

I. An Adverb:

Sātis hūmīlis est, He is sufficiently humble. Liv.

II. A Noun in an oblique case :

1. *Genitive*: *Avldi laudis fuērunt, They were desirous of praise.* Cic.

2. *Dative* : *Omni aetāti mors est cōmūnis, Death is common to every age.* Cic.

3. *Ablative* : *Digni sunt āmicitia, They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

SECTION III.

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

357. A Complex sentence differs from a Simple one only in taking a sentence or clause as one (or more) of its elements :

I. A Sentence as an Element :

“*Civis Rōmānus sum*” *audiēbātur*, “*I am a Roman citizen*” was heard. Cic. *Aliquis dicat mihi: Nulla hābēs vitia;* “*Some one may say to me, ‘Have you no faults?’*” Hor.

1. In the first example, an entire sentence—*Civis Romānus sum*—is used as the *Subject* of a new sentence; and in the second example, the sentence—*Nulla habes vitia*—is the *Object* of *dicat*.

2. Any sentence may be thus quoted and introduced without change of form as an element in a new sentence.

II. A Clause as an Element :

Trādītum est Hōmērum caecum fuisse, That Homer was blind has been handed down by tradition. Cic. *Quālis sit ānimus, ānimus nescit, The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. In these examples the clauses used as elements have undergone certain changes to adapt them to their subordinate rank. The clause *Hōmērum caecum fuisse*, the subject of *tradītum est*, if used as an independent sentence, would be *Hōmērus caecus fuit*; and the clause *Qualis sit animus*, the object of *nescit*, would be *Qualis est animus*, What is the soul?

2. Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

1) Infinitive with Subject Accusative :

Hoc majōres dicēre audīvi, I have heard that our ancestors said this. Cic.

2) Indirect Questions :

Quid dies fōrat, incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain. Cic.

3) Relative Clauses :

Sententia, quae tūtissima vīdēbātur, The opinion which seemed the safest. Liv.

4) Clauses with Conjunctions :

Mos est ut dicat, It is his custom to speak. Cic. *Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, They are present before it is light.* Cic.

358. Infinitive Clauses sometimes drop their subjects:

Dilligi jūcundum est, It is pleasant to be loved. Cic. *Vivēre est cōgītāre, To live is to think.* Cic. See 545. 2.

359. Participles often supply the place of subordinate clauses.

Plāto scribens mortuus est, Plato died while writing, or while he was writing. Cic. See 576-578.

SECTION IV.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

360. Compound sentences express two or more independent thoughts, and are of five varieties :

I. COPULATIVE SENTENCES—in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, The sun descends and the mountains are shaded. Virg.

II. DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES—in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered :

Audendum est aliquid aut omnia pātienda sunt, Something must be risked or all things must be endured. Liv.

III. ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES—in which the thoughts are opposed to each other :

Gyges a nullo vīdēbātur, ipse autem omnia vīdēbat, Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things. Cic.

IV. ILLATIVE SENTENCES—which contain an inference :

Nihil lābōras, ūdo nihil hābes; You do nothing, therefore you have nothing. Phaed.

V. CAUSAL SENTENCES—which contain a cause or reason :

Difficile est consilium, sum ȇnim sōlus; Consultation is difficult, for I am alone. Cic.

1. The CONNECTIVES generally used in these several classes of compounds are the corresponding classes of conjunctions, i. e., *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and *causal* conjunctions. See 810. But the connective is often omitted.

2. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS have special connectives. See 846, II. 2.

361. Compound sentences are generally abridged when their members have parts in common. Such sentences have compound elements :

1. Compound Subjects :

Aborigines Trojanique ducem amisere, *The Aborigines and the Trojans lost their leader.* Liv.

The two members here united are: *Aborigines ducem amiserunt* and *Trojanum ducem amiserunt*; but as they have the same predicate, *ducem amiserunt*, that predicate is expressed but once, and the two subjects are united into the compound subject: *Aborigines Trojanique*.

2. Compound Predicates :

Romanī p̄arant consultantque, *The Romans prepare and consult.* Liv.

3. Compound Modifiers :

Athēnas Graeciamque liberavit, *He liberated Athens and Greece.* Nep.

CHAPTER II.
SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:¹

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declaratus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. See 353.

1. In GENDER AND NUMBER Agreement either may or may not take place. But

1) If the Predicate Noun has different forms for different genders, it must agree with its subject in gender :

Usus magister est, *Experience is an instructor.* Cic. Historia est magistra (not magister), *History is an instructress.* Cic.

¹ For Pred. Noun denoting a different person or thing from its subject, see 401. For convenience of reference the *Rules* will be presented in a body on page 274.

2. WITH FINITE VERBS.—Predicate Nouns are most frequent.

1) With *Sum* and a few intransitive verbs : *erādo, exsisto, appāreo*, and the like :

Ego sum nuntius, I am a messenger. Liv. *Hōmo magnus ēvīsērat, He had become (turned out) a great man.* Cic. *Exstitit vindex libertatis, He became (stood forth) the defender of liberty.* Cic.

2) With Passive verbs of *appointing, making, naming, regarding, esteeming*, and the like :

Servius rex est dēclarātus, Servius was declared king. Liv. *Mundus civitas existimātūr, The world is regarded as a state.* Cic.

(1) In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audio = appellor* : *Rex audisti, You have been called king*; i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor.

(2) For *Predicate Accusative*, see 373. 1.

(3) The Dative of the object for which (390), *pro* with the Abl., and *līco* or *in nūméro* with the Gen. are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns: *hosti, pro hoste, līco hostie, in nūméro hostium*, for or as an enemy. See also Pred. Gen. 401.

3. WITH INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, ETC.—Predicate Nouns are used not only with finite verbs, but also with Infinitives and Participles, and sometimes without verb or participle :

Dēclarātus rex Nūma, Numa having been declared king. Liv. *Cānīnīo cōsūlē, Cānīnius being consul.* Cic. See 481, also *Orestem* under the rule.

1) For *Predicate Nominative* after *esse*, see 547.

2) For Infinitive or Clause as Predicate, see 558, I.; 495, 3.

RULE II.—Appositives.

(363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex mōritur, Cluilius the king dies. Liv. *Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic. See 352. 2.

1. In GENDER and NUMBER the appositive conforms to the same rule as the predicate noun. See 362. 1.

2. The SUBJECT of the appositive is often omitted :

Hostis hostem occidēre vōlui, I (ego understood) an enemy wished to slay an enemy. Liv.

3. FORCE OF APPositives.—Appositives are generally kindred in force to Relative clauses, but sometimes to Temporal clauses :

Cluilius rex, Cluilius (who was) the king. Liv. *Fūrius puer didicit, Fūrius learned, when a boy, or as a boy.* Cic.

4. PARTITIVE APPositive.—The parts are sometimes in apposition with the whole :

Duo rēgea, ille bello, hic pāce cīvitātem auxōrunt, Two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace. Liv.

Conversely the whole may be in apposition with its parts.

5. CLAUSES.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun. See 445, 7; 553, II.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows:

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

365. KINDRED CASES.—The cases naturally arrange themselves in pairs: the Nominative and Vocative require no governing word; the Accusative and Dative are the regular cases of the Object of an action; the Genitive has usually the force of an Adjective, and the Ablative that of an Adverb.

366. NOMINATIVE.—The Nominative is either the Subject of a Sentence or in agreement with another Nominative.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative:²

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vicit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, unless expressed for contrast or emphasis, and when it can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipūlos mōneo, ut stūdia āment, *I instruct pupils to love their studies.* Quint.

2) When it means men, people: *Fērunt,* They say.

3) When the verb is impersonal: *Pluit,* It rains.

3. VERB OMITTED.—The Verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially *est* and *sunt*:

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

² For the Subject of the Infinitive, see 545. For the agreement of the verb with its subject, see 460.

Ecce tuae littōrae, Lo your letter (comes). Cic. *Tot sententiae, There are (sunt) so many opinions.* Ter. *Consul p̄f̄ctus (est), The consul set out.* Liv.

1) *Fōcio* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses. Thus with *nihil dīūd* (*amplius, minus, etc.*) *quam, nihil p̄aeterquam* = merely, *et nihil dīūd, finem, etc.*: *Nihil dīūd quam stērunt, They merely stood (did nothing other than).* Liv. Also in brief expressions of opinion: *Recte ille, He does rightly.* Cic.

368. AGREEMENT.—A Nominative in agreement with another nominative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive. See 362 and 363.

For the Predicate Nominative after a verb with *esse*, see 547.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli, Proceed, Laelius. Cic. *Quid est, Cātilina, Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. *Tuum est, Servi, regnum, The kingdom is yours,* *Servius.* Liv. *O dī immortales, O immortal gods.* Cic.

1. **WITH INTERJECTIONS.**—The vocative is used both with and without interjections.

2. **NOMINATIVE FOR VOCATIVE.**—In poetry and sometimes in prose, the nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the vocative:

Audi tu, p̄p̄lūs Albānūs, Hear ye, Alban people. Liv. Here *p̄p̄lūs* may be treated as a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, though it may also be treated as an irregular Vocab. See 45. 5. 8).

3. **VOCATIVE FOR NOMINATIVE.**—Conversely the vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the nominative:

Quibus, Hector, ab ūris exspectātē vēnis, From what shores, Hector, do you anxiously awaited come? Virg.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used

- I. As the Direct Object of an Action.
- II. As the Subject of an Infinitive.
- III. In Agreement with another Accusative.
- IV. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions.
- V. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

I. ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic. *Libera rem publicam, Free the republic.* Cic. *Pöpüli Römäni salutem defendite, Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

1. The DIRECT OBJECT may be

1) The *Object*, person or thing, on which the action of the verb is directly exerted, as *salutem* above.

2) The *Effect* of the action, i. e., the object produced by it, as *mundum* above.

3) The *Cognate Accusative*. Many verbs, generally intransitive, sometimes become so far transitive as to admit an accusative of *cognate* or *kindred* meaning:

Eam vitam vivere, to live that life. Cic. *Mirum somniare somnium, to dream a wonderful dream.* Plaut. *Servitatem servire, to serve a servitude.* Ter.

(1) This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective as in the first two examples.

(2) Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives often supply the place of the Cognate accusative:

Éadem peccat, He makes the same mistakes. Cic. *Hoc studet finum, He studies this one thing* (this one study). Hor. *Id assentior, I make this assent.* Cic. *Idem gloriari, to make the same boast.* Cic.

(3) The object is often omitted when it is a reflexive (184, 2) or can be easily supplied: *möveo — möveo me, I move (myself); verit — verit se, he moves (himself).*

(4) Some verbs are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive: *augeo, duro, incipo, lasso, ruo, suppedito, turbo, etc.*

2. WITH OR WITHOUT OTHER CASES.—The direct object may be used with all transitive verbs, whether with or without other cases. See 384. 410. 419.

3. TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.—Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. See 385. Conversely some verbs intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, or at least are often so used, especially verbs denoting

1) *Feeling or Mental State*: *despero, to despair of; doleo, to grieve for; gemo, to sigh over; horreo, to shudder at; lacrimo, to weep over; moereo, to mourn over; miror, to wonder at; rideo, to laugh at; sitio, to thirst for, etc.*

Hönöres despérat, He despairs of honors. Cic. *Haec gémibant, They were sighing over these things.* Cic. *Détrimenta ridet, He laughs at losses.* Hor.

2) *Taste or Smell*: *öleo, sapio, and their compounds, both literally and figuratively:*

Olet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes.* Ter. Oratio rēdōlet antiquitatem, *The oration smacks of antiquity.* Cic.

4. COMPOUNDS OF PREPOSITIONS.—We notice two classes :

1) Many compounds become transitive by the force of the prepositions with which they are compounded, especially compounds of *circum*, *per*, *praeter*, *trans*, *super*, and *subter*:

Murmur conciōnem pervāsit, *A murmur went through the assembly.* Liv.
Rhēnum transiērunt, *They crossed (went across) the Rhine.* Caes.

2) Many compounds, without becoming strictly transitive, admit an Accus. dependent upon the preposition :

Circumstant sēnātūm, *They stand around the senate.* Cic.

5. CLAUSE AS OBJECT.—An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object:

Impērare cūpiunt, *They desire to rule.* Just. Sentimus cālēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

6. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—When a verb takes the passive construction

- 1) The direct object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, and
- 2) The subject of the active becomes the Ablative of Cause (414) or the Ablative of Agent with *a* or *ab* (414. 5).

Thēbāni Lysandrum occidērunt, *The Thebans slew Lysander.* Passive : Lysander occīsus est a Thēbānis, *Lysander was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

7. ACCUSATIVE IN SPECIAL INSTANCES.—Participles in *dus*, verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative :

Vitabundus castra, *avoiding the camp.* Liv. Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem, *What care have you of this?* Plaut.

372. Two ACCUSATIVES.—Two accusatives without any connective, expressed or understood, may depend upon the same verb. They may denote

1. The same person or thing.
2. Different persons or things.

Any number of accusatives connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, may of course depend upon the same verb.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hamilcārem impērātōrem ficerunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep. Ancum rēgēm pōpūlus creāvit, *The people elected Ancus king.* Liv. Summum consilium appellārunt Senātūm, *They called their highest council Senate.* Cic. Se praestitū pōpugnātōrem libertatis, *He showed*

himself the champion of liberty. Cic. Flaccum habuit collagam, *He had Flaccus as colleague.* Nep.

1. PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—One of the two accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative*. See 362. 2. (2).

2. VERBS WITH PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—The verbs which most frequently admit a Direct Object with a Predicate Accusative are verbs of

1) *Making, electing*: facio, efficio, reddo,—creo, eligo, designo, declaro.

2) *Calling, regarding*: appello, nomino, vovo, dico,—arbitror, existimo, dico, iudico, habeo, puto.

3) *Showing*: praesto, praebeo, exhibeo.

3. ADJECTIVE AS PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—The Predicate Accusative may be either Substantive or Adjective:

Hominis caecos reddit avaritia, *Avarice renders men blind.* Cic.

4. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—In the Passive these verbs take two Nominatives, a *Subject* and *Predicate*, corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius rex est declaratus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. See 362. 2. 2.)

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Me sententiam rogavit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Ego sententiam rogatus sum, *I was asked my opinion.* Cic. Philosophia nos res omnes docuit, *Philosophy has taught us all things.* Cic. Artes edocitus fuerat, *He had been taught the arts.* Liv. Non te celavi sermōnem, *I did not conceal from you the conversation.* Cic.

1. PERSON AND THING.—One accusative generally designates the *person*, the other the *thing*: with the Passive the accusative of the Person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained: see examples.

2. VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES.—Those most frequently so used are

1) *Regularly*: celo—doco, edoceo, dedoceo.

2) *Sometimes*: oro, exoro, rogo, interrogo, percontor, flagito, posco, reposco.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur:

1) *Celo*: Ablative with a preposition:

Me de hoc libro celiavit, *He kept me ignorant of this book.* Cic. Passive: Accus. of Neuter pronoun or Abl. with de: Hoc celiari, *to be kept ignorant of this.* Ter. Celiari de consilio, *to be kept ignorant of the plan.* Cic. The Dative is rare: Id Alcibiadi celiari non potuit, *This could not be concealed from Alcibiades.* Nep.

2) *Verbs of Teaching*: Ablative with or without a preposition:

De sua re me docet; *He informs me in regard to his case.* Cic. Socratem fidibus docuit, *He taught Socrates (with) the lyre.* Cic.

3) *Verbs of Asking, Demanding*: Ablative with a preposition:

Hoc a me poscere, *to demand this from me*. Cic. Te isdem de rēbus interrogā, I ask you in regard to the same things. Cic.

4) *Pēto, postūlo, and quaero* take the Ablative of the person with a preposition:

Pācem a Rōmānis pētiērunt, *They asked peace from the Romans*. Caes.

4. INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE as Accusative of thing:

Te sāpēre dōcet, *He teaches you to be wise*. Cic.

5. A NEUTER PRONOUN or ADJECTIVE as a second accusative occurs with many verbs which do not otherwise take two accusatives:

Hoc te hortor, *I exhort you to this, I give you this exhortation*. Cic. Ea mōnēmur, *We are admonished of these things*. Cic.

6. COMPOUND VERBS.—A few compounds of *trans*, *circum*, *ad*, and *in* admit two accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērum cōpias trajēcit, *He led his forces across the Ebro*. Liv.

In the Passive, not only these, but even other compounds sometimes admit an Accus. depending upon the preposition:

Praetervēhor ostia Pantāgiae, *I am carried by the mouth of the Pantagia*. Virg.

7. POETIC ACCUSATIVE.—In poetry, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo, exuo, cingo, accingo, induco*, etc.—sometimes take in the Passive an accusative in imitation of the Greek:

Gāleam indultur, *He puts on his helmet*. Virg. Inutile ferrum cingitetur, *He girds on his useless sword*. Virg. Virgīnes longam indūtae vestem, maidens attired in long robes. Liv.

II. ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

375. The Accusative is used as the Subject of an Infinitive; see 545:

Plātōnem fērunt in Italiām vēnisce, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic.

Platōnem is the subject of *vēnisce*.

III. ACCUSATIVE IN AGREEMENT WITH AN ACCUSATIVE.

376. The Accusative in agreement with another Accusative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive:

Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes*. Cic. Apud Hērōdōtūm, patrem histōriæ, *in Herodotus, the father of history*. Cic. See 362 and 363.

IV. ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE

377. In an Adverbial sense the Accusative is used either with or without Prepositions.

1. WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 483.

2. WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS.—The Adverbial use of the Accusative without Prepositions is presented in the following rules.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative :

Römulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambulare, *to walk five miles.* Cic. Pèdes octoginta distare, *to be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quatuor pèdes alta, *snow four feet deep.* Liv. But

1. DURATION OF TIME is sometimes expressed by the Ablative or the Accusative with a Preposition :

1) By the Ablative : Pugnatum est hòris quinque, *The battle was fought five hours.* Caes.

2) By the Accusative with Preposition : Per annos viginti certatum est, *The war was waged for twenty years.* Liv.

2. DISTANCE is sometimes expressed by the Ablative :

Millibus passuum sex consedit, *He encamped at the distance of six miles.* Caes. Sometimes with a preposition : Ab millibus passuum duobus, *at the distance of two miles.* Caes.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Röمام rëdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Pläto Tarentum vénit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fugit Tarquinios, *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic. But

1. The Accusative with *Ad* occurs :

1) In the sense of—*to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of:*

Tres sunt viae ad Mütinam, *There are three roads to Mutina.* Cic. Ad Zämam pervenit, *He came to the vicinity of Zama.* Sall.

2) In contrast with *a* or *ab* :

A Diänio ad SInopen, *from Diana to Sinope.* Cic.

2. *Urbs* or *Oppidum* with a Preposition :

Pervenit in oppidum Cirtam, *He came into the town of Cirta.* Sall.

3. Like Names of Towns are used

1) The Accusatives *dōmum*, *dōmos*, *rūs*:

Scipio dōmum rēductus est, *Scipio was conducted home*. Cic. *Dōmos abducti, led to their homes*. Liv. *Rūs evōlāre, to hasten into the country*. Cic.

2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of Islands and Peninsulas:

Lātōna confūgit Dēlūm, *Latona fled to Delos*. Cic. *Pervēnit Chersōnēsum*, *He went to the Chersonesus*. Nep.

4. Names of Other Places used as the limit of motion are generally in the Accusative with a Preposition:

In *Asiam rēdit*, *He returns into Asia*. Nep.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

Aegyptum prōfūgit, *He fled to Egypt*. Cic. *Itāliam vēnit*, *He came to Italy*. Virg. *Iblīmus Afros*, *We shall go to the Africans*. Virg. *Lāvinia vēnit lītōra*, *He came to the Lavinian shores*. Virg.

5. A Poetic Dative for the accusative with or without a preposition occurs:

It clāmor coelo (for ad coelum), *The shout ascends to heaven*. Virg.

RULE X.—Accusative of Specification.**380. A Verb or Adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:**

Cāpita vēlāmur, *We have our heads veiled* (are veiled as to our heads). Virg. *Nūbe hūmēros āmictus*, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud*. Hor. *Miles fractus membra lābōre*, *the soldier with limbs shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. *Aenēas os deo sīmīlis*, *Aeneas like a god in appearance*. Virg.

1. In a strict sense, the Accusative of Specification generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See 429.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem*, *vicem*, *nihil*, of *id* and *genus* in *id tempōris*, *id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id genus*, *omne genus*, *quod genus* (for *eius genēris*, etc.), etc.; also of *sēcūs*, *libra* and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives; *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *quid* (454, 2), *multūm*, *summūm*, *cētra*, *reliqua*, etc. In this sense, it is common in prose.

Maximam partem lacte vivunt, *They live mostly* (as to the largest part) *upon milk*. Caes. *Nihil mōti sunt*, *They were not at all moved*. Liv. *Lōcus id tempōris vacuuus ērat*, *The place was at this time vacant*. Cic. *Aliquid id gēnus scribēre*, *to write something of this kind*. Cic. *Quaerit, quid possint*, *He inquires how powerful they are*. Caes. *Quid vēnis*, *Why do you come?*

V. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.**RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.****381. The Accusative either with or without an Interjection may be used in Exclamations:**

Heu me mis̄erum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic. Me mis̄erum, *Me miserable!*¹ Cic. O fallacem spem, *O deceptive hope!* Cic. Me caecum, *Blind that I am!* Cic. Pro deōrum fidem, *In the name of the gods!* Cic. But

1. An Adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this accusative, as in the examples.

2. *O, heu, heu* are the Interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

3. Other Cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Jūpiter, *O holy Jupiter.* Cic. Infelix Dido, *Unhappy Dido.* Virg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement; En dextra, *To the right hand* (there is, or that is the right hand)! Virg. Ecce tuae litt̄rae, *To your letter* (comes)! Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *hēc, vae*, and sometimes after *ecce, en, hem*.

Hei mihi, *Woe to me.* Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. Ecce tibi, *To you* (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. En tibi, *This for you.* (lo I do this for you). Liv. See 389. 2.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives—Adverbs and Substantives.

I. DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the action, that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempōri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deo pāret, *The world obeys God.²* Cic. Caesāri supplicābo, *I will supplicate Caesar.³* Cic. Nōbis vita dāta est, *Life has*

¹ Milton, Par. Lost, iv. 78

² Is subject to God.

³ Will make supplication to Caesar.

been granted to us. Cic. Nūmitōri dādūrū, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons iter hostībus dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv.
Lēges civītābūs suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit (1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing : *aīcū rem dōnāre*, to present a thing to any one, or *aliquem re dōnāre*, to present any one with a thing. For the Dat. of the person, the Dat. of a thing sometimes occurs, especially if it involves persons or is in a measure personified :

Mīrum urbi circumdēdit, *He surrounded the city with a wall.* Nep.

This double construction occurs chiefly with : *aspergo, circumdo, circumfundō, dōno, exuo, impertio, induo, inepergo, interclūdo.*

2. To and For are not always signs of the Dative : thus

1) To, denoting mere *motion* or *direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (379. and 379. 4) :

Vēni ad urbēm, *I came to the city.* Cic. Dēlum vēnīmus, *We came to Delos.* Cic. But the Dative occurs in the poets : It clāmor coelo, *The shout goes to heaven.* Virg.

2) For, *in defence of, in behalf of*, is expressed by the Abl. with *pro* ; *for the sake of, for the purpose of*, sometimes by the Accus. with *in*.

Pro patria mōri, *to die for one's country.* Hor. Dimicāre pro libertāte, *to fight for liberty.* Cic. Sātis in ūsum, *enough for use.* Liv.

3. OTHER ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.—Conversely the dative is often used where the English either omits TO or FOR, or employs some other preposition. We proceed to specify the cases in which this difference of idiom requires notice.

385. The Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage is used with verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure, please* or *displease, command* or *obey, serve* or *resist* ; also, *indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, be angry, believe, persuade*, and the like :

Sibi prōsunt, *They benefit themselves.* Cic. Nōcēre altēri, *to injure another.* Cic. Zēnōni plācuit, *It pleased Zeno.* Cic. Displicet Tullō, *It displeasees Tullus.* Liv. Cūpiditābūs impērāre, *to command desires.* Cic. Deo pārēre, *to obey God.* Cic. Regi servīre, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostībus rēsistēre, *to resist the enemy.* Caes. Sibi indulgēre, *to indulge one's self.* Cic. Vitae parcēre, *to spare life.* Nep. Mihi ignoscēre, *to pardon me.* Cic. Mīnitans patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Irasci āmiciā, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihi crēde, *Believe me.* Cic. Iis persuādere, *to persuade them.* Caes.

1. OTHER CASES.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative : *délecto*, *júvo*, *laedo*, *offendo*, etc. ; *fido* and *confido* generally the Ablative (419) : *Máriūm júvit*, *He helped Marius*. Nep.

2. SPECIAL VERBS.—With a few verbs the force of the dative is found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb: *núbo*, to marry, strictly to veil one's self, as the bride for the bridegroom ; *mēdeor*, to cure, to administer a remedy to ; *satisfacio*, to satisfy, to do enough for, etc.

3. ACCUSATIVE or DATIVE with a difference of signification : *cávere áliquem*, to ward off some one ; *cávere álicui*, to care for some one ; *consulere áliquem*, to consult, etc. ; *álicui*, to consult for ; *mērere*, *tímere* *áliquem*, to fear, etc. ; *álicui*, to fear for ; *prospicere*, *próvidere* *áliquid*, to foresee ; *álicui*, to provide for ; *tempérare*, *mōderāri* *áliquid*, to govern, direct ; *álicui*, to restrain, put a check upon ; *tempérare* (*sibi*) *ab áliquo*, to abstain from.

A few verbs admit either the Acc. or Dat. without any special difference of meaning : *ádūlor*, to flatter ; *cōmitor*, to accompany, etc.

4. DATIVE rendered FROM, occurs with a few verbs of *differing*, *dissenting*, *repelling*, *taking away* : *différo*, *discrépo*, *disto*, *dissentio*, *arceo*, etc. .

Differre cuivis, to differ from any one. Nep. *Discrépare istis*, to differ from those. Hor. *Sibi dissentire*, to dissent from himself. Cic. See 412.

5. DATIVE rendered WITH, occurs with *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, *jungo*, *certo*, *dēcerto*, *lucto*, *altercor*, and sometimes *facio* (434. 2) :

Sēvēritātem miscēre cōmītāti, to unite severity with affability. Liv.

Misceo and its compounds, as also *functus* and *conjunctus*, also take the Abl. with or without *cum*.

386. Dative with Compounds.—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions :

ad,	ante,	con,	in,	inter,
ob,	post,	prae,	sub,	super :

Adsum ámīcis, I am present with my friends. Cic. *Omnibus ante-stāre*, to surpass all. Cic. *Terris cohaeret*, It cleaves to the earth. Sen. *Vōluptati inhaerēre*, to be connected with pleasure. Cic. *Interfuit pugnae*, He participated in the battle. Nep. *Consiliis obstāre*, to oppose plans. Nep. *Libertāti ópes postferre*, to sacrifice wealth to liberty. Liv. *Pōpūlo prae-sunt*, They rule the people. Cic. *Succumbēre dōlōribus*, to yield to sorrows. Cic. *Sūperfuit patri*, He survived his father. Liv.

1. TRANSITIVE Verbs thus compounded admit both the Accusative and Dative : *Se oppōsuit hostibūs*, He opposed himself to the enemy. Cic.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS, especially *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative ; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Abl.: *assuesco*, *conuesco*, *insuesco*, *acquiresco*, *répere-deo* (also with Acc.), etc.

Hoc Cæsāri défuit, This failed (was wanting to) Caesar. Cæsa.

3. MOTION OR DIRECTION.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative or repeat the preposition :

Adire āras, to approach the altare. Cic. *Ad consūles ādire, to go to the consuls.* Cic.

In some instances where no motion is expressed, several of these compounds admit some other construction for the Dative:

In oratōre īnest scientia, *In the orator is knowledge.* Cic.

387. The Dative of Possessor is used with the verb *Sum*:

Mihi est nōverca, *I have (there is to me) a stepmother.* Virg. *Fonti nōmen Arēthusa est,* *The fountain has (there is to the fountain) the name Arethusa.* Cic. But

1. The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming: *nōmen est, nōmen dātur, etc.*:

Scipiōni Africāno cognōmen fuit, Scipio had the surname Africanus. Sall. Here *Africāno*, instead of being in apposition with *cognōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scipiōni*.

2. The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nōmen* occurs:

Nōmen Mercurii est mihi, *I have the name of Mercury.* Plaut.

3. By a GREEK IDIOM, *vōlēne, cūpiēne, or invitū* sometimes accompanies the dative of possessor:

Quibus bellum vōlentibus ērat, *They liked the war (it was to them wishing).* Tac.

388. Dative of Agent.—The Dative of Agent is used with the Participle in *dus*:

Suum cuique incommōdūm fērendūm est, *Every one has his own trouble to bear, or must bear his own trouble.* Cic.

1. DATIVE WITH COMPOUND TENSES.—The Dative of the Agent is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs:

Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, *I have a plan long since formed.* Cic.

1) The Dative of Agent, with the Participle in *dus*, as in the Periphrastic Conjugation, designates the person who has the work to do; while with the Compound Tenses of passive verbs, it designates the person who has the work already done. See examples above.

2) HABEO with the Perfect Participle has the same force as *EST MIHI* with the Perfect Participle (388, 1):

Bellum hābuit indictūm, *He had a war (already) declared.* Cic.

3) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* occurs:

Est a vōbis consūlendum, *Measures must be taken by you.* Cic.

2. The REAL AGENT with Passive verbs is denoted by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. The Dative, though the regular construction with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation, does not regard the person strictly as agent, but rather as possessor or indirect object. Thus, *Suum cuique incommōdūm est*, means, Every one has his trouble (*cuique* Dative of Possessor), and *Suum cuique incommōdūm fērendūm est*, Every one has his trouble to bear. So too, *Mihi consilium est*, I have a plan; *Mihi consiliūm captūm est*, I have a plan (*already*) formed.

3. DATIVE WITH SIMPLE TENSES.—The Dative is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person by whom and *for* (*to*) whom the action is performed:

Hōnesta bōnis vīris quaeruntur, *Honorable things are sought by good men, i. e., for themselves.* Cic.

4. DATIVE OF AGENT IN POETS.—In the poets the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action : Non intelligor ulli, *I am not understood by any one.* Ovid.

389. Ethical Dative.—A Dative of the person to whom the thought is of special interest is often introduced into the Latin sentence when it cannot be imitated in English :

At *tibi* vēnit ad me, *But lo, he comes to me.* Cic. Ad illa mihi intendant ānimūm, *Let him, I pray, direct his attention to those things.* Liv. Quid mihi Celsus āgit? *What is my Celsus doing?* Hor. But

1. The ETHICAL DATIVE is always a personal pronoun.

2. ETHICAL DATIVE with VOLO and INTERJECTIONS :

1) With VOLO: Quid vōbis vultis? *What do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. Avāritia quid sibi vult, *What does avarice mean, or what object can it have?* Cic.

2) With INTERJECTIONS: *hei, vae* and some others: Hei mihi, ah me. Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. See 881. 8. 8).

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

890. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Mālo est hōmīnībus āvārtia, *Avarice is an evil to men* (lit. *is to men for an evil*). Cic. Est mihi cūrae, *It is a care to me.* Cic. Dōmus dēdēcōri dōmino fit, *The house becomes a disgrace to its owner.* Cic. Vēnit Attīcis auxilio, *He came to the assistance of the Athenians.* Nep. Hoc illi tribuēbatur ignāviae, *This was imputed to him as cowardice (for cowardice).* Cic. Iis subsīdio missus est, *He was sent to them as aid.* Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Quinque cohortes castris praeſidio rēliquit, *He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp* (lit. *to the camp for a defence*). Caesa. Pēricles agros suos dōno rei pūblicae dēdit, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (lit. *for a present*). Just.

1. Verbs with Two DATIVES are

1) Intransitives signifying *to be, become, go, and the like;* *sum, fīo, etc.*

2) Transitives signifying *to give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose, and the like:* *do, dōno, dūco, hābeo, mitto, rēlinquo, tribuo, vēto, etc.* These take in the Active two datives with an accusative, but in the Passive two datives only, as the Accusative of the active becomes the subject of the passive. See 871. 6.

2. ONE DATIVE OMITTED.—One dative is often omitted or its place supplied by a Predicate Noun:

Ea sunt ūsūl, These things are of use (for use). Caes. *Tu illi pāter es, You are a father to him.* Tac.

3. With *Audiens* two Datives sometimes occur, the Dat. *dīcto* dependent upon *audiens* and a personal Dat. dependent upon *dīcto-audiens* treated as a verb of obeying (385):

Dicto sum audiens, I am listening to the word, I obey. Plaut. *Nōbis dicto audiens est, He is obedient to us.* Cic. Sometimes *dīcto obēdiens* is used in the same way: *Māgistro dicto obēdiens, obedient to his master.* Plaut.

II. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

891. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae sōlum omnibus cārum est, The soil of their country is dear to all. Cic. *Id aptum est tempōri, This is adapted to the time.* Cic. *Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, Death is common to every age.* Cic. *Cānis simīlis lūpo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Natūrae accommōdātūm, adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae ūtīle, useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying:

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

Such are: *accommōdātūs, aequālis, aliōnus, āmīcus and inlīmīcus, aptus, cārus, fūllis and diffīllis, fidēlis and infidēlis, finlītūs, grātūs and ingrātūs, Idōneus, jūcundus and injūcundus, mōlestus, nēcessārius, nōtūs and ignōtūs, noxiūs, par and dispar, perniciōsūs, prōpīquus, propriūs, salūtāris, simīlis and dissimīlis, vīcīnus, etc.*

2. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative:

1) *Accusative with a Preposition*: (1) *in, erga, aduersus* with adjectives signifying *friendly, hostile, etc.,* and (2) *ad, to denote the object or end for which*, with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable, inclined, etc.*:

Pērindulgēns in patrem, very kind to his father. Cic. *Multas ad res pēratiīlis, very useful for many things.* Cic. *Ad cōmītētēm prōclīvis, inclined to affability.* Cic. *Prōnus ad luctum, inclined to mourning.* Cic.

2) *Accusative without a Preposition* with *prōpīor, proxīmus*:

Prōpīor montēm, nearer the mountain. Sall. *Proxīmus māre, nearest to the sea.* Caes. See 488 and 487.

3) *Ablative with or without a Preposition*:

Aliēnum a vīta mea, foreign to my life. Ter. *Hōmīne alienissīmūm, most foreign to man.* Cic. *Ei cum Roscio commūnis, common to him and Roscius (with Roscius).* Cic.

4) *Genitive*: (1) with *propriūs, commānīs, contrāriūs*; (2) with *simīlis,*

diesimilis, assimilis, consimilis, par and *dispar*, especially to express likeness in character; (3) with adjectives used substantively, sometimes even in the superlative; (4) sometimes with *affinis, aliens, insuetus*, and a few others:

Pöpüli Römäni est propria libertas, *Liberty is characteristic of the Roman people.* Cic. Alexandri simillis, *like Alexander, i. e., in character.* Cic. Dispar sui, *unlike itself.* Cic. Cujus pères, *like whom.* Cic. Amicissimus hōminum, *the best friend of the men, i. e., the most friendly to them.* Cic.

3. *Idem* occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem facit occidenti, He does the same as kill, or as he who kills. Hor.

4. For the GENITIVE AND DATIVE with an adjective, see 399. 6.

III. DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADVERBS.

RULE XV.—Dative.

392. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives:

I. VERBAL NOUNS.—*Justitia est obtempératio lēgibus, Justice is obedience to laws.* Cic. *Sibi responsio, replying to himself.* Cic. *Opūlento hōmīni servitus dūra est, Serving a rich man (servitude to) is hard.* Plaut.

II. ADVERBS.—*Congruenter nātūrae vivēre, to live in accordance with nature.* Cic. *Sibi constanter dicēre, to speak consistently with himself.* Cic. *Proxime hostium castris, next to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

1. DATIVE WITH NOUNS.—Nouns construed with the Dative are derived from verbs which govern the Dative. With other nouns the Dative is generally best explained as dependent upon some verb, expressed or understood:

Tégimenta galeis milites fācere jubet, *He orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets.* Caes. Here *galeis* is probably the indirect object of *fācere* and not dependent upon *tégimenta*. In *conspicuum vēnerat hostib⁹bus, He had come in sight of the enemy.* Caes. Here *hostib⁹bus* is dependent not upon *conspicuum*, but upon *vēnerat*; the action, *coming in sight*, is conceived of as done to the enemy. See 398. 5.

2. DATIVE WITH ADVERBS.—A few adverbs not included in the above rule occur with the Dative: *hunc dīna — dīna cum hoc, with him.*

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*, but in its general use, it corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

1. But sometimes, especially when Objective (396, II.), the Genitive is best rendered by *to, for, from, in, on account of*, etc.:

Bōnēfīciī grātia, *gratitude for a favor.* Cic. Lābōrum fūga, *escape from labors.* Cic.

394. The Genitive is used

- I. With Nouns.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With Verbs.
- IV. With Adverbs.

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :

Catōnis öratiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy.* Liv. Mors Hämīlāris, *the death of Hamilcar.* Liv. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv. Vir consilii magni, *a man of great prudence.* Caes. See 363.

396. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns.—The principal varieties of the Genitive are the following :

I. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *subject or agent* of the action, feeling, etc., including the *author* and *possessor*:

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent.* Cic. Pavor Nūmidārum, *the fear of the Numidians.* Liv. Xēnōphantis libri, *the books of Xenophon.* Cic. Fānum Neptūni, *the temple of Neptune.* Nep.

II. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed :

Amor glōriae, *the love of glory.* Cic. Mēmōria mālōrum, *the recollection of sufferings.* Cic. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv.

III. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the *whole* of which a *part* is taken :

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Vitae pars, *a part of life.* Cic. Omnia sāpientissim̄us, *the wisest of all men.* Cic.

1. **Nostrum** and **Vestrūm**.—As partitive genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrūm* are generally used instead of *nostrī* and *vestrī*.

2. **Use.**—The Partitive Genitive is used

1) With *pars*, *nēmo*, *nihil*; nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc. : *mōdius*, *lēgio*, *tālētūm*, and any nouns used partitively :

Equōrum pars, *a part of the horses.* Liv. Mēdīnum trītīci, *a bushel of wheat.* Cic. Pēcūniæ tālētūm, *a talent of money.* Nep. Quōrum Cāius, *of whom Caius.* Cic.

2) With *Numerals* used Substantively :

Quōrum quattuor, four of whom. Liv. *Sāpientum octāvus, the eighth of the wise men.* Hor.

(1) But the Genitive should not be used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though *of* be used in English: *Vivi qui* (not *quōrum*) *duo sūpersunt, the living, of whom two survive.* Cic.

3) With Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, especially (1) with *hic, ille, quis, qui, alter, eter, neuter*, etc.; (2) with comparatives and superlatives; (3) with neuters: *hoc, id, illud, quid; multum, plus, plūrimum, minus, mīnūm, tantum, quantum*, etc.; (4) with *omnes* and *cuncti*, rarely:

Quis vestrum, which of you? Cic. *Consūlum alter, one of the consuls.* Liv. *Prior hōrum, the former of these.* Nep. *Gallōrum fortissīmi, the bravest of the Gauls.* Caes. *Id tempōris, that (of) time.* Cic. *Multum ḥpērae, much (of) service.* Cic. *Hōmlnum cuncti, all of the men.* Ovid. But *omnes* and *cuncti* generally agree with their nouns: *Omnes hōmlnes, all men.* Cic.

Pronouns and Adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Part. Gen. take the gender of the Gen. unless they agree directly with some other word; see *Consūlum alter* above.

4) With a few *Adverbs* used substantively; (1) with adverbs of Quantity—*abunde, affātim, nīmis, pārum, partim, quoad, sātis*, etc.; (2) with adverbs of Place—*hic, huc, nusquam, ubi*, etc.; (3) with adverbs of Extent, degree, etc.—*eo, huc, quo*; (4) with superlatives:

Armōrum affātim, abundance of arms. Liv. *Lūcis nīmis, too much (of) light.* Ovid. *Sāpientiae pārum, little (of) wisdom.* Sall. *Partim cōpiārum, a portion of the forces.* Liv. *Quoad ejus fācere pōtest, as far as (as much of it as) he is able to do.* Cic. *Nusquam gentium, nowhere in the world.* Cic. *Huc arrōgantiae, to this degree of insolence.* Tac. *Maxime omnium, most of all.* Cic.

3. *Lōci* and *lōcōrum* occur as partitive genitives in expressions of time:

Intērea lōci, in the mean time. Ter. *Adhuc lōcōrum, hitherto.* Plaut.

4. For *id gēnus = ejus gēnēris, scēsus, libra*, etc., see 380. 2.

5. For Predicate Genitive, see 401.

IV. The GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC designates *character* or *quality*, including *value, price, size, weight, age, etc.*

Vir maximi consillii, a man of very great prudence. Nep. *Mitis ingēnii jūvēnis, a youth of mild disposition.* Liv. *Vestis magni prēti, a garment of great value.* Cic. *Exsilium dēcem annōrum, an exile of ten years.* Nep. *Cōrōna parvi pondēris, a crown of small weight.* Liv. See 402, III. 1.

1. A noun designating *character* or *quality* may be either in the Gen. or in the Abl. See 428.

1) But it must be accompanied by an adjective, numeral, or pronoun, unless it be a compound containing such modifier; as *hujusmōdi* = *hujus modi*: *tridui*, from *tres dies*; *bīdūi*, from *duo (bis) dies*. With *tridui* and *bīdūi*, *via* or *spātium* is sometimes omitted: *Abērānt bīdūi*, *They were two days' journey distant*. Cic.

V. The GENITIVE OF SPECIFICATION has the general force of an Appositive (363):

Virtus continentiae, *the virtue of self-control*. Cic. *Verbum vōluptātis*, *the word (of) pleasure*. Cic. *Oppidum Antiōchiae*, *the city of Antioch*. Cic. *Tellus Ausōniae*, *the land of Ausonia*. Virg.

397. Peculiarities.—We notice the following:

1. The GOVERNING WORD is often omitted. Thus

Aedes, *templum*, *discipūlus*, *hōmo*, *jūvēnis*, *puer*, etc.; *causa*, *grātia*, and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied:

Ad Jōvis (sc. aedem), near the temple of Jupiter. Liv. Hannibal annōrum nōvem (sc. puer), *Hannibal a boy nine years of age*. Liv. Nāves sui commōdi (causa) fēcērat, *He had built vessels for his own advantage*. Caes. Conferre vitam Trēbonii cum Dōlābellae (sc. vīta), *to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella*. Cic.

1) The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Gen. as in the last example; and then the second Gen. is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word: Nātūra hōminis bōluis (for *belūrum nātūrae*) antecēdit, *The nature of man surpasses (that of) the brutes*. Cic.

2) In many cases where we supply *son*, *daughter*, *husband*, *wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Gen. depending directly on the proper noun expressed:

Hasdrubal Giscōnia, *Gisco's Hasdrubal*, or *Hasdrubal the son of Gisco*. Liv. Hectōris Andrōmāche, *Hector's Andromache*, or *Andromache the wife of Hector*. Virg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun—generally one Subjective and one Objective:

Memmīi ūdīum pōtentiae, *Memmius's hatred of power*. Sall.

3. GENITIVE AND POSSESSIVE.—A Genitive sometimes accompanies a Possessive, especially the Gen. of *ipse*, *sōlius*, *ūnus*, *omnis*:

Tua ipsius ūmīctia, *your own friendship*. Cic. *Meum sōlius peccātum*, *my fault alone*. Cic. Nōmen meum absens, *my name while absent*. Cic.

Here *ipseius* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua*; *sōlius* and *absens*, with *mei* (of me) involved in *meum*.

398. Other Constructions—for the Genitive occur.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. See 428.

2. An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive:

Bellīca glōria = *belli glōria*, *the glory of war*. Cic. *Conjux Hectōrea* = *conjux Hectōris*, *the wife of Hector*. Virg.

3. The Possessive is regularly used for the Subjective Gen. of Personal pronouns, rarely for the Objective:

Mea dōmus, my house. Cic. *Fāma tua, your fame.* Cic.

4. CASE WITH PREPOSITION.—A case with a preposition may be used for the Gen.; especially, 1) For the *Objective Genitive*, the Accusative with *in, erga, adversus*;—2) For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with *inter, ante, ēpud*, or the Ablative with *ex, de, in*:

Odium in hōmīnum gēnus, hatred of or towards the race of men. Cic.
Erga vos āmor, love towards you. Cic. *Inter rēges ḥpūlentissīmus, the most wealthy of (among) kings.* Sen. *Unus ex vīris, one of the heroes.* Cic.

5. A DATIVE depending on the VERB is sometimes used, instead of the Genitive depending on a noun:

Urbi fundāmenta jācōre, to lay the foundations of (for) the city. Liv.
Caesāri ad pōdes projicēre, to cast at the feet of Caesar, i. e., before Caesar at his feet. Caes. See 392. 1.

1) The two constructions, the Gen. and the Case with Prep., are sometimes combined in the same sentence.

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avidus laudis, desirous of praise. Cic. *Otii cūpīdus, desirous of leisure.* Liv. *Amans sui virtus, virtue fond of itself.* Cic. *Efficiens vōluptatīs, productive of pleasure.* Cic. *Gloriae mēmor, mindful of glory.* Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force—*of, in respect of*—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbs in *ax* and participles in *ans* and *ens* used adjectively:

Virtutum fērāx, productive of virtues. Liv. *Tēnax prōpōlti, tenacious (steadfast) of purpose.* Hor. *Amans patriae, loving (fond of) his country.* Cic. *Fugiens lābōris, shunning labor.* Caes.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries:

(1) DESIRE, AVERTION—*āvidus, cūpīdus, stūdībus; fastidībus*, etc.; sometimes *aemīlus* and *invīdus*, which also take the Dative:

Contentiōnis cūpīdus, desirous of contention. Cic. *Sāpientiae stūdībus, studious of (student of) wisdom.* Cic.

(2) KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION with their contraries—*gnōrīus,*

ignarus, consultus, conscientius, insocius, nescius, certus, incertus, suspensus; prudens, prudens, imprudens; peritus, impertitus, rudes, insuetus; memor, immemor, etc.:

Rei gnarus, acquainted with the thing. Cic. Prudens rei militaris, skill-ed in military science. Nep. Peritus belli, skilled in war. Nep. Insuetus laboris, unaccustomed to labor. Caes. Gloriæ memor, mindful of glory. Liv. Immemor bēnēficii, forgetful of kindness. Cic.

(3) PARTICIPATION, FULNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries—affinis, consors, excesso, expers, particeps; plenus, fertilis, refertus, genitus, inops, vacuus; potens, impotens, compos, impos, etc.:

Affinis culpae, sharing the fault. Cic. Ratiōnis particeps, endowed with (sharing) reason. Cic. Ratiōnis expers, destitute of reason. Cic. Vita mētus plena, a life full of fear. Cic. Mei potens sum, I am master of myself. Liv. Virtutis compos, capable of virtue. Cic.

3. OTHER ADJECTIVES also occur with the Genitive.

1) A few of a signification kindred to the above:

Mānifestus rōrum cōpitiūm, convicted of capital crimes. Sall. Noxius conjuratiōnis, guilty of conspiracy. Tac.

2) Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis; par and dispar, especially to denote internal or essential likeness. See 391. 2. 4).

3) Sometimes aliénus, communis, proprius, publicus, sacer, vicinus:

Alienus dignitatis, inconsistent with dignity. Cic. Viri proprius, characteristic of a man. Cic.

4) In the poets and late prose writers, especially Tacitus, a Genitive of Cause occurs with a few adjectives, especially those denoting emotion or feeling, and a Gen. having the force of—in, in respect of, for, especially animi and ingeni, with many adjectives:

Axiūs pōtentiae, anxious for power. Tac. Lassus militiae, tired of military service. Hor. See Gen. with Verbs, 409. 2 and 4. Aeger animi, afflicted in mind. Liv. Anxius animi, anxious in mind. Sall. Intēger aevi, whole in respect of age, i. e., in the bloom of youth. Virg.

4. PARTITIVE GENITIVE with Adjectives. See 396. III. 3).

5. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) DATIVE: Mānus sūblitis avidae, hands ready for sudden events. Tac. Insuetus mōribus Rōmānis, unaccustomed to Roman manners. Liv. Fācīndi mens conscientia, a mind conscious of crime. Cic.

2) ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITION: Insuetus ad pugnam, unaccustomed to battle. Liv. Fertilis ad omnia, productive for all things. Plin. Avidus in nōvas res, eager for new things. Liv.

3) ABLEATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITION: Prudens in jure civili, learned in civil law. Cic. Rudis in jure civili, uninstructed in civil law. Cic. His de rēbus conscientia, aware of those things. Cic. Vacuus de dēfēnsōribus, destituted of defēndere. Caes. Cūris vacuus, free from care. Cic. Refertus bonis, replete with blessings. Cic.

6. The GENITIVE AND DATIVE occur with the same adjective:

Sibi consciit culpae, conscious to themselves of fault. Cic.

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

400. The Genitive with Verbs includes

- I. Predicate Genitive.
- II. Genitive of Place.
- III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

I. Predicate Genitive.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject is put in the Genitive:

*Omnia hostium ērant, All things belonged to the enemy.*¹ Liv. *Sénatus Hannibalis ērat, The senate was Hannibal's*, i. e., in his interest. Liv. *Jūdīcīs est vērum sēqui, To follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*² Cic. *Parvi prētīi est, It is of small value.* Cic.

1. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.—The Predicate Genitive is distinguished from the Predicate Nominative and Accusative by the fact that it always designates a different person or thing from its subject, while they always designate the same person or thing as their subjects. See 362.

2. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE.—The genitive is often nearly or quite equivalent to a predicate adjective (353. 1): *hōmīnis est = hūmānum est*, it is the mark of a man, is human; *stulli est = stultum est*, it is foolish. The Gen. is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *sāpientiis est* (or *sāpiens est*), it is the part of a wise man, is wise.

402. Varieties of Predicate Genitive.—The principal are,

I. SUBJECTIVE or POSSESSIVE GENITIVE—generally best rendered by *of, property of, duty, business, mark, characteristic of*:

Haec hostium ērant, These things were of (belonged to) the enemy. Liv. *Est impērātōris sūpērāre, It is the duty of a commander to conquer.* Caes.

II. PARTITIVE GENITIVE:

Fies nōbiliū fontium, You will become one of the noble fountains. Hor.

III. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—including *value, price, size, weight, etc.*:

Summae fācūltatis est, He is (a man) of the highest ability. Cic. *Opēra magni fuit, The assistance was of great value.* Nep.

1. The Genitive of *Price* or *Value* is generally an adjective belonging to *prētīi* understood; but sometimes *prētīi* is expressed:

¹ Lit. *were of the enemy, or were the enemy's.*

² Lit. *is of a judge.*

Parvi pr̄tii est, It is of little value. Cic. See 396. IV.

2. *Price* and *Value* with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and the like, are expressed

1) Regularly by the Ablative. See 416.

2) Sometimes by the Genitive of adjectives, like the Pred. Gen. of price: *Vendo fr̄umentum pl̄uris, I sell grain at a higher price.* Cic.

But the Gen. is thus used only in *indefinite* and *general* expressions of price and value. A definite price or value regularly requires the Ablative.

3) In familiar discourse sometimes by the genitives, *assis, flocci, n̄ihili, pilii* and a few others:

Non flocci pendere, not to care a straw (lock of wool) for. Plaut.

3. *Boni* and *Aequi*, as Predicate Genitives, occur in such expressions as *aequi bōni fūcēre* and *bōni cōsulēre*, to take in good part.

403. Verbs with Predicate Genitive.—The Predicate genitive occurs most frequently with *sum* and *fācio*, but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming* and *regarding*:

Haec hostium ērant, These things were the enemy's. Liv. *Oram Rōmānae dītōnis fēcit, He brought the coast under (of) Roman rule.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs of this class admit in the active, an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the second example.

2. With Verbs of *Seeming* and *Regarding*—*vīdeor, hābeo, dūco, pūto*, etc.—*esse* may generally be supplied:

Hōmīnis vīdētur, It seems to be (esse) the mark of a man. Cic.

404. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur.

1. The *Possessive* is regularly used for the Pred. Gen. of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not tui) vīdēre, It is your duty to see. Cic.

2. The Genitive with *Officium, Mūnus, Nēgōtium, Proprium*:

Sēnātus officium est, It is the duty of the senate. Cic. *Fuit proprium pōpūli, It was characteristic of the people.* Cic.

The Predicate Genitive could in most instances be explained by supplying some such word, but it seems to be more in accordance with the idiom of the Latin to regard the genitive as complete in itself.

3. The *Ablative of Characteristic*. See 428.

II. Genitive of Place. See 421. II.

III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

405. The Genitive, either alone or with an Accusative, is used in a few constructions which deserve separate mention.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Certain Verbs.**406. The Genitive is used**I. With *mis̄reor* and *mis̄resco*:

Mis̄rērē lābōrum, Pity the labors. Virg. *Mis̄rēscētē rēgīs, Pity the king.* Virg.

II. With *rēcordor*, *mēmīni*, *rēmīniscor*, and *obliviscor*:

Mēmīnit prætēritōrum, He remembers the past. Cic. *Oblitus sum mei, I have forgotten myself.* Ter. *Flagitiōrum rēcordāri, to recollect base deeds.* Cic. *Rēmīnisci virtūtis, to remember virtue.* Cæsa.

III. With *rēfert* and *intērest*:

Illōrum rēfert, It concerns them. Sall. *Intērest omnium, It is the interest of all.* Cic.

1. EXPLANATION.—The Genitive may be explained as dependent upon *re* in *rēfert*, and upon *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *intērest*. With the other verbs it accords with the Greek idiom, and with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, it also conforms to the analogy of the Gen. with the adjectives *mēmor* and *immēmor* (399. 2. 2.).

2. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—The expression *Vēnit mihi in mentem*, *It occurs to my mind*, equivalent to *rēmīniscor*, is sometimes construed with the Gen.:

Vēnit mihi Plātōnis in mentem, The recollection of Plato comes to my mind, or *I recollect Plato.* Cic. But the Nom. is also admissible: *Non vēnit in mentem pugna, Does not the battle come to mind?* Liv.

407. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS with verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting* also occur:1. The *Accusative*: *Mēmīnēram Paulum, I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *thing* (not person), with *rēcordor*, and, if it be a neuter pronoun or adjective, also with other verbs:

Triumphos rēcordāri, to recall triumpha. Cic. *Ea rēminiscēre, Remember those things.* Cic.

2. The *Ablative with De*: *Rēcordāre de cētēris, Bethink yourself of the others.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *person* with *rēcordor*, and occurs also with *mēmīni*, though that verb takes the *Act.* of a *contemporary*.

408. The CONSTRUCTION with *Rēfert* and *Intērest* is as follows:1. The *PERSON or THING interested* is denoted1) By the *Genitive* as under the rule.

2) By the *Ablative Feminine of the Possessive*:

Meā rēfert, *It concerns me*. Ter. Intērest meā, *It interests me*. Cic.

This possessive regularly takes the place of the Gen. of personal pronouns, and may be explained as agreeing with *re* in *rēfert*, and with *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*.

3) By the *Dative, or Accusative with or without Ad*; but rarely, and chiefly with *rēfert*, which moreover often omits the person:

Quid rēfert viventi, *What does it concern-one living?* Hor. Ad me rēfert, *It concerns me*. Plaut.

2. The SUBJECT OF IMPORTANCE, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun:

Intērest omnium recte fācēre, *To do right is the interest of all*. Cic. Vestrā hoc intērest, *This interests you*. Cic.

3. The DEGREE OF INTEREST is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Gen. of Value (402. 1 and 2):

Vestrā maxime intērest, *It especially interests you*. Cic. Quid nostrā rēfert, *What does it concern us?* Cic. Magni intērest meā, *It greatly interests me*. Cic.

4. The OBJECT or END for which it is important is expressed by the Accusative with *ad*, rarely by the Dative:

Ad hōnōrem nostrum intērest, *It is important for our honor*. Cic.

409. GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.—Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive:

1. Some Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, as *ēgeo*, *īndīgeo*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399. 2. 2) :

Virtus exercitatiōnis indiget, *Virtus requires exercise*. Cic. Auxiliū ēgōre, *to need aid*. Caes.

2. Some Verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling* like adjectives (399. 3. 4) :

Animi pendo, *I am uncertain in mind*. Cic. Discrūctior ānlmi, *I am troubled in mind*. Plaut.

3. A few Verbs denoting *Mastery* or *Participation* like adjectives (399. 2. 2), *pōtior*, *ādīpiscor*, *regno* :

Siciliā pōtitus est, *He became master of Sicily*. Nep. Rērum ādeptus est, *He obtained the power*. Tac. Regnāvit pōpūlōrum, *He was king of the people*. Hor.

4. A Genitive of *Separation* or *Cause* occurs in the poets, with a few verbs—*abstīneō*, *dēcipio*, *dēsīno*, *dēsisto*; *mīror*:

Abstīnēre irārum, *to abstain from anger*. Hor. Lābōrum dēclpitur, *He is beguiled of his labors*. Hor. Dēsīne quērlārum, *Cease from complaints*. Hor. Dōsistēre pugnae, *to desist from the battle*. Virg.

5. *Sātāgo* and *Sātāgitō* admit a genitive dependent upon *sat* (396. 4), and verbs of *Promising* admit the Gen. *damni infecti*:

Rērum sātāgōre, *to be occupied with (have enough of) business*. Ter.

6. Genitive of *Gerunds* and *Gerundives*. See 563 and 563. 5.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing :

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing.*

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.*

III. *Misérēt, Poenitēt, Pūdet, Taedēt, and Pigēt.*

I. REMINDING, etc.—Te āmicitiae commōnēfācīt, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milites nēcessitatis mōnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. ACCUSING, etc.—Vīros scōlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lēvitatis eum convincērē, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvērē injūriāe eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. MISERET, POENITET, etc.—Eōrum nos mīsēret, *We pity them* (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Consilii me poenitēt, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultitiae meae pūdet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The GENITIVE OF THING designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge, and with *mīsēret, poenitēt*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive:

Accūsātus es: prōdītiōnis, He was accused of treason. Nep.

3. Verbs of REMINDING, mōneo, admōneo, commōneo, commōnēfūcio, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives:

Illud me admōnes, You admonish me of that. Cic.

2) The *Ablative* with *de*, mōnēo generally so:

De proelio vos admōnui, I have reminded you of the battle. Cic.

4. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The *Genitive* with nōmīne or crīmīne:

Nōmīne conjūrātiōnis dainnētī sunt, They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy. Cic.

2) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely:

Id me accūsas, You accuse me of that. Plaut.

3) The *Ablative* alone or with a preposition, generally *de*:

De pēcūniis rēpētundis dāmnātūs est, He was convicted of extortion. Cic.

5. With Verbs of CONDEMNING, the *Punishment* may be expressed

1) By the *Genitive* :

Căptis condemnare, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

(1) Vōll damnari, *to be condemned to fulfill a vow = to obtain a wish*.

2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad* :

Ad bestias condemnare, *to condemn to the wild beasts*. Suet.

3) By the *Ablative*; and, in the poets, sometimes by the *Dative* :

Căpte damnare, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

6. With MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TAEDET, and PIGET, an Infinitive or Clause is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or nihil :

Me poenitet vixisse, *I repent having lived*. Cic.

1) Like Misérét are sometimes used misérescit, commisérescit, miserétur, com. miserétrur. Like Tuedet are used pertaedet, pertaesum est.

2) Püdet sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed : Me tui püdet, *I am ashamed in your presence*. Ter. Püdet hōminum, *It is a shame in the sight of men*. Liv.

3) Pertaesus admits the Accusative of the object :

Pertaesus ignāviam suam, *disgusted with his own inaction*. Suet.

7. The ACCUSATIVE and GENITIVE occur with other Verbs.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of FREEING with the accessory notion of ACQUITTING:

Eum culpae libérare, *to free him from blame*, i. e., to acquit him of fault. Liv. So purgo, decipio, and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of FILLING, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399. 2. 2) and 409. 1), especially compleo and impleo :

Multitudinem religiōnis implēvit, *He inspired (filled) the multitude with religion*. Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of EMOTION or FEELING (409. 2), rarely : Te angis ānimi, *You make yourself anxious in mind*. Plaut.

IV. GENITIVE WITH ADVERBS.

411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs :

1. With *Partitives*. See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Pridie* and *Postridie*, perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them, and with *Ergo* and *Tēnus*, originally nouns :

Pridie ejus diēi, *on the day before that day*. Caes. Postridie ejus diēi, *on the day after that day*. Caes. Virtutis ergo, *on account of virtus*. Cic. Lumbōrum tēnus, *as far as the loins*. Cic. For *tēnus* with the Abl., see 434.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive ; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used

with Verbs and Adjectives, while the genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

413. The Ablative is used as

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means—including

1. Ablative of Price.
2. Ablative after Comparatives.
3. Ablative of Difference.
4. Ablative in Special Constructions.

II. Ablative of Place.

III. Ablative of Time.

IV. Ablative of Characteristic.

V. Ablative of Specification.

VI. Ablative Absolute.

VII. Ablative with Prepositions.

I. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Ars utilitate laudatur, An art is praised because of its usefulness. Cic.
Glōria dūcitur, He is led by glory. Cic. *Duōbus mōdīs fit, It is done in two ways.* Cic. *Sol omnia lūce collustrat, The sun illuminates all things with its light.* Cic. *Aeger ērat vulnēribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. *Laetus sorte tua, pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* anything is or is done.

1) This includes such ablatives as *meo jūdicio*, in accordance with my opinion; *mea sententia, jussu, impulse, mōnitu*, etc.; also the Abl. with *dōleo, gaudeo, glōriō, läbōrō*, etc.

The Abl. with *affīcio*, and with *sto* in the sense of *depend upon, abide by*, is best explained as *Means*. *Affīcio* and the Abl. are together often equivalent to another verb: *hōnōre affīcere* = *hōnōrare*, to honor; *admirātiōne affīcere* = *admirārī*, to admire.

2) With *Passive* and *Intransitive* verbs, *Cause* is regularly expressed by the Abl., though a preposition with the Acc. or Abl. sometimes occurs:

Amicitia propter se expētitur, Friendship is sought for itself. Cic.

3) With *Transitive* verbs the Abl. without a Prep. is rare; but *causa, grātia* and ablatives in *u* of nouns used only in that case (184), *jussu, rōgātu, mandātu*, etc., are thus used; sometimes also other words.

In other cases, *Cause* in the sense of—*on account of, because of*, is generally expressed—(1) by a Preposition with its case: *ob, propter, de, ex, prae*, etc.; or (2) by a Perfect Participle with an Ablative:

In oppidum propter timorem sese recipiunt, They betake themselves into the city on account of their fear. Caes. *Regni cupiditate induxit coniurationem fecit, Influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy.* Caes.

Cupiditatem in the 2d example really expresses the *cause* of the action *fecit*, but by the use of *inductus*, it becomes the Abl. of Cause with that participle.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the Prep. *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*—*mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc.—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, with the greatest violence. Nep. *Mōre Persarum, in the manner of the Persians.* Nep. *Cum silentio audire, to hear in silence.* Liv.

Per with the Acc. sometimes denotes *Manner*: *per vim, violently.*

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed. See also 484. 2; 414, 2, 1).

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom anything is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the Prep. *A* or *Ab*:

Occisus est a Thēbānis, He was slain by the Thebans. Nep.

1) The Abl. without a Prep. or the Accus. with *per* is sometimes used, especially when the Person is regarded as the *Means*, rather than as the *Agent*.

Cornua Nūmidis firmat, He strengthens the wings with Numidians. Liv. *Per Fabrīcium, by means of* (through the agency of) *Fabričius.* Cic.

2) Dative of *Agent*. See 388.

6. PERSONIFICATION.—When anything is personified as agent, the ablative with *A* or *Ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci a vōluptate, to be conquered by pleasure. Cic. *A fortūna dātam occasiōnem, an opportunity furnished by fortuna.* Nep.

7. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—This generally takes *cum*:

Vivit cum Balbo, He lives with Balbus. Cic. But

In describing military movements, the preposition is often omitted, especially when the Abl. is qualified by an adjective:

Ingenti exercitu p̄fectorus est, He set out with a large army. Liv.

415. KINDRED USES OF THE ABLATIVE.—Kindred to the Ablative of Cause, etc., are

I. The Ablative of Price—that by which the trade is effected.

II. The Ablative with Comparatives—that by which the comparison is effected.

III. The Ablative of Difference—that by which one object differs from another.

IV. The Ablative in Special Constructions.

RULE XXII.—Ablative of Price.

416. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative :

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg. Conduxit magno dōmum, *He hired a house at a high price.* Cic. Multo sanguine Poenis victoria stētit, *The victory cost the Carthaginians* (stood to the Carthaginians at) *much blood.* Liv. Quinquāginta tālentis aestimāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vile est vīginti mīnis, *It is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

1. **THE ABLATIVE OF PRICE** is used

- 1) With verbs of buying, selling, hiring, letting, *ēmo, vendo, condūco, lōco, vēneo*, etc.
- 2) With verbs of costing, of being cheap or dear, *sto, consto, liceo, sum*, etc.

3) With verbs of valuing, *aestimo*, etc.

4) With adjectives of value, *cārus, vēndīlis*, etc.

2. **EXCHANGING**.—With verbs of exchanging—*mūto, commūto*, etc.—the thing received is generally treated as the price, as with verbs of *selling*:

Pīce bellum mūtāvit, *He exchanged war for peace.* Sall. But sometimes the thing given is treated as the price, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Abl. with *cum*: Exsiliūm patria mūtāvit, *He exchanged country for exile.* Curt.

3. **ADVERBS OF PRICE** are sometimes used : *bēne ēm̄re*, to purchase well, i. e., at a low price; *cāre aestimāre*, to value at a high price.

4. **GENITIVE OF PRICE.** See 402. III.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative :

Nihil est āmābilis virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est mēlius bōnitāte, *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. **COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM** are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them :

Hibernia mīnor quam Brītannia existīmātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terriblīor, *more terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

2. **ABLATIVE, WHEN ADMISSIBLE**.—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. This abbreviation is admissible only in place of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative, but is not necessary even here except for *quam* with a Relative :

Sciimus sōlem majōrem esse terrā, *We know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amicitia, qua nihil mēlius hābēmus; *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule.

1) In the first example the Ablative (*terra*) is admissible but not necessary, *quam terram* might have been used; but in the second example the Ablative (*qua*) is necessary, the conjunction *quam* would be inadmissible.

2) In the examples under the rule the ablatives *virtūte* and *bonitāte* are both equivalent to *quam* with the Nom. *quam virtus* and *quam bonitas*, which might have been used.

3) Instead of the Abl., a Preposition with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, or *supra* is sometimes used: *Ante álios immānior, more monstrous than (before) the others.* Virg.

3. CONSTRUCTION WITH PLUS, MINUS, ETC.—*Plus, minus, amplius, or longius*, with or without *quam*, is often introduced in expressions of number and quantity, without influence upon the construction; sometimes also *major, minor, etc.*:

Tēcum plus annum vixit, *He lived with you more than a year.* Cic. Minus duo millia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

So in expressions of age: *natus plus triginta annos, having been born more than thirty years.* The same meaning is also expressed by—*major triginta annos natus, major triginta annis, major quam triginta annōrum, or major triginta annōrum.*

4. ATQUE or AC for QUAM occurs chiefly in poetry and late prose:

Arctius atque hēdērā, *more closely than with ivy.* Hor.

5. ALIUS WITH THE ABLATIVE sometimes occurs. It then involves a comparison, *other than*:

Quaerit alia his, *He seeks other things than these.* Plaut.

6. PECULIARITIES.—*Quam pro* denotes disproportion, and many ablatives—*opinōne, spe, aequo, justo, sōlito*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Minor caedes quam pro victōria, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sérius spe vēnit, *He came later than was hoped (than hope).* Liv. Plus aequo, *more than is fair.* Cic.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Difference.

418. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Uno die longiōrem mensem fāciunt, *They make the month one day longer (longer by one day).* Cic. Bīduo me antēcessit, *He preceded me by two days.* Cic. Sunt magnitūdine paulo infra élphantos, *They are in size a little below the elephant.* Cæs.

1. The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but adverbs often supply its place: *Multum rōbustior*, much more robust.

2. The Ablative of Difference includes the Abl. of Distance (378. 2), and the Abl. with *ante, post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (427).

RULE XXV.—Ablative in Special Constructions.

419. The Ablative is used

I. With *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, *vescor*, and their compounds:

Plūrimis rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, We enjoy and use very many things. Cic. *Magna est praeda pōtitus, He obtained great booty.* Nep. *Vescimur bestiis, We live upon animals.* Cic.

II. With *fido*, *confido*, *nitor*, and *innitor*:

Nēmo pōtest fortūnae stābilitāte confidēre, No one can trust (confide in) the stability of fortune. Cic. *Sālus vēritāte nititur, Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT:

Non ēgeo mēdīcina, I do not need a remedy. Cic. *Vācāre culpa, to be free from fault.* Cic. *Villa āundat lacte, cāseo, melle;* *The villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.* Cic. *Urbs nūda praeſidio,* *a city destitute of defence.* Cic. *Virtūte praeſitus,* *endowed with virtue.* Cic.

IV. With *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, and *frētus*:

Digni sunt āmīctia, They are worthy of friendship. Cic. *Nātura parvo contenta,* *nature content with little.* Cic. *Frētus āmīcis,* *relying upon his friends.* Liv.

V. With *ōpus* and *ūsus*:

Auctōritāte tua nōbis ūpus est, We need (there is to us a need of) your authority. Cic. *Usus est tua mihi ūpēra, I need your aid.* Plaut.

1. EXPLANATION.—This Ablative may in most instances be readily explained as the Ablative of *Cause* or *Means*: thus *ūtor*, I use, serve myself by means of; *fruor*, I enjoy, delight myself with; *vescor*, I feed upon, feed myself with; *fido*, *confido*, I confide in, am confident because of, etc.

2. ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Dignor* and transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* take the Accusative with the Ablative:

Me dignor hōnōre, I deem myself worthy of honor. Virg. *Armis nāves ḥnērat, He loads the ships with arms.* Sall. *Ocūlis se privat, He deprives himself of his eyes.* Cic. See 371. 2.

1) Transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* signify to fill, furnish with, deprive of, etc.: *afficio*, *cūmulo*, *compleo*, *imleo*, *instruo*, *ōnēro*, *orno*, etc.—*orbo*, *privō*, *spōlio*, etc. *Dignor* in the best prose admits only the Abl.

2) For the *Accusative and Genitive* with some of these verbs, see 410. 7. 2).

3. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Opus est* and *ūsus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing. See examples.

1) The Ablative is sometimes a Perfect Participle, or, with *opus est*, a Noun and Participle:

Consulto opus est, There is need of deliberation. Sall. *Opus fuit Hirtio convento, There was need of meeting Hirtius.* Cia.

2) With *opus est*, rarely with *uersus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

(1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative:

Dux nobis opus est, We need a leader, or a leader is necessary (a necessity) *for us.* Cic. *Temporis opus est, There is need of time.* Liv. *Opus est cibum, There is need of food.* Plaut.

(2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine:

Opus est te valere, It is necessary that you be well. Cic. *Opus est ut lavem, It is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. *Dictu est opus, It is necessary to be told.* Ter.

4. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur. Thus

1) *Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *dus* is passive in sense. *Utor* admits two ablatives of the same person or thing:

Me utetur patre, He will find (use) me a father. Ter.

2) *Fido, confido, and innitor* admit the Dative, rarely the Abl. with *in*.
Virtuti confidere, to confide in virtue. Cic. See 885. 1.

3) *Dignus* and *indignus* admit the Gen., *fretus* the Dat., *nitor* and *innitor* the Acc. or Abl. with Prep., and some verbs of *Want* the Abl. with Prep.

Dignus salutis, worthy of safety. Plaut. *Rei fretus, relying upon the thing.* Liv. *Vacare ab opere, to be free from work.* Caes.

4) *Genitive*.—For the genitives with *potior*, see 409. 8. For the genitives with verbs and adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want*, see 409. 1, 410. 7, and 899. 2. 9).

II. ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. THE PLACE IN WHICH anything is or is done:

II. THE PLACE FROM WHICH anything proceeds;—including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. THE PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS omit the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative, (45, 2):

I. Hannibal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp*. Caes. In Appia via, *on the Appian way*. Cic. Ab urbe p̄ficiſcitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Afriſca, *from Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābylōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic. See 48, 4.

422. NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS sometimes omit the preposition :

1. The Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, sometimes omits the preposition :

1) Generally the Ablatives—lōco, lōcis, parte, partib⁹s, dext̄a, laeva, sinistra, terra, māri, and other Ablatives when qualified by tit⁹s :

Allquid lōco pōnēre, *to put anything in its place*. Cic. Terra mārique, *on land and sea*. Liv. Tōta Graecia, *in all Greece*. Nep.

2) Sometimes other Ablatives, especially when qualified by adjectives : Hoc libro, *in this book*. Cic.

In poetry the preposition is often omitted even when the ablative has no modifier : Silvis agrisque, *in the forests and fields*. Ov.

2. The Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH sometimes omits the preposition, especially in poetry :

Cādere nūbibus, *to fall from the clouds*. Virg. Lābi ēquo, *to fall from a horse*. Hor.

423. NAMES OF TOWNS differ in their construction from other names of places,

I. Generally in simply omitting the preposition. But

II. In the Singular of the First and Second declensions they designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative. See examples under the Rule.

1. PREPOSITION RETAINED.—The preposition is sometimes retained, especially for emphasis or contrast :

Ab Ardea Rōmam vēnērunt, *They came from Ardea to Rome*. Liv. So also when the vicinity rather than the town itself is meant : Discessit a Brundisio, *He departed from Brundisium*, i. e., from the port. Caes. Apud Mantinea, *near Mantinea*. Cic. Ad Trēbiam, *at or near the Trebia*. Liv.

2. LOCATIVE.—The original Locative, denoting the PLACE IN WHICH, was blended with the Ablative, except in the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, where it still remains distinct, though with the same form as the Genitive. A few traces of it also remain in the Singular of the Third Declension, where it ends in i. See 62, IV. 3.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur :

1) *Ablative by Attraction:*

In monte Albāno LāvIniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium.* Liv.

2) *Ablative without Attraction*, generally with a preposition :

In ipsa Alexandria, *in Alexandria itself.* Cic. Longa Alba, *at Alba Longa.* Virg.

This is the regular construction when the noun takes an adjective or adjective pronoun, but the Locative *dōmi* (424, 2) admits a possessive or *dīēnus*:

Dōmi, suae, *at his home.* Cic.

3) With an Appellative—*urbs, oppidum*—the name of the town is in the Loo. or Abl., but the appellative itself is in the Abl., generally with a Prep.:

In oppido Antiochiae, *in the city of Antioch.* Cic. In oppido Citio, *in the town Citium.* Nep. Albae, in urbe opportūna, *at Alba, a convenient city.* Cic.

424. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used

1. Many names of Islands:

Vixit Cypri, *He lived in Cyprus.* Nep. Dēlo prōfīciscitur, *He proceeds from Delos,* Cic.

2. Dōmus, rus, and the Locatives h̄imi, militiae, and belli:

Rūri āḡre vītam, *to spend life in the country.* Liv. Dōmi militiaeque, *at home and in the field.* Cic. Dōmo prōfūgit, *He fled from home.* Cic.

3. The Locative of other nouns also occurs:

1) By *Attraction* after names of towns:

Rōmae Nūmidiaeque, *at Rome and in Numidia.* Sall.

2) Without *Attraction* in a few proper names, and rarely also the Locatives ārēnae, fōci, terrae, vīciniae:

Dōmum Chersōnesi hābuit, *He had a house in the Chersonesus.* Nep. Truncum rēliquit ārēnae, *He left the body in the sand.* Virg.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Source and Separation.**425. SOURCE and SEPARATION** are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition :

SOURCE.—Hoc audīvi de pārente meo, *I heard this from my father.* Cic. Oriundi ab Sābinis, *descended from the Sabines.* Liv. Stātua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze.* Cic. Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter.* Cic.

SEPARATION.—Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Cic. Hunc a tuis āris arcēbis, *You will keep this one from your altars.* Cic. Expulsus est patria, *He was banished from his country.* Cic.

1. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE designates that from which anything is derived, including *parentage, material, etc.*

2. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is used :

- 1) With Intransitive verbs signifying, *to abstain from, be distant from, etc.*
- 2) In connection with the Accusative after transitive verbs signifying, *to hold from, separate from, free from, and the like: arceo, abstineo, deterreo, ejicio, excludo, exsolvo, libero, pello, prohibeo, removeo, solvo, etc. :*
- 3) A few verbs of separation admit the Dative: *alieno, furor, etc. See 385. 4.*

3. Preposition Omitted.—This generally occurs

- 1) With Perfect Participles denoting *parenage or birth—genitus, natus, ortus, etc.:*

Jöve natus, son of Jupiter. Cic.

- 2) With Verbs of *Freeing, except liberō, which is used both with and without a preposition:*

Somno solvi, to be released from sleep. Cic. But in the sense of *acquitting* these verbs admit the genitive (410. 7): *Allquem culpae liberae, to free one from blame, i. e., acquit him.* Liv.

- 3) With *Movere before the ablatives—loco, senatu and tribu:*

Signum mouere loco, to move the standard from the place. Cic.

- 4) The preposition is sometimes omitted with other words, especially in poetry.

III. ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogesimo anno est mortuus, He died in his eightieth year. Cic. *Vere convenerunt, They assembled in the spring.* Liv. *Natali die suo, on his birthday.* Nep. *Hieme et aestate, in winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word, so used as to involve the time of an action or event, may be put in the ablative: *bello, in the time of war; pugna, in the time of battle; ludis, at the time of the games; memoria, in memory, i. e., in the time of one's recollection.*

2. The ABLATIVE WITH IN is used to denote

1) The *circumstances of the time, rather than time itself:*

In tali tempore, under such circumstances. Liv.

2) The time *in or within* which anything is done:

In diebus proximis decem, in the next ten days. Sall.

(1) This is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in die, twice in the day; in pubertate, in boyhood.*

(2) In a kindred sense occur also the Abl. with *de* and the Accus. with *inter* or *intra*: *De media nocte, in the middle of the night.* Caes. *Inter annos quattuordecim, in (within) fourteen years.* Caes.

(3) The Ablative with or without *in* sometimes denotes the time within which or after which: *pauco diebus, within (or after) a few days.*

427. ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.—The time since an action or event is denoted by *Abhinc* or *Ante* with the Accusative or Ablative, and the time between two events, by *Ante* or *Post* with the Accusative or Ablative :

Abhinc annos trēcentos fuit, He lived (was) three hundred years since. Cic.
Abhinc annis quattuor, four years since. Cic. *Hōmērus annis multis fuit ante Rōmūlum, Homer lived many years before Romulus.* Cic. *Paucis ante diēbus, a few days before.* Cic. *Post dies paucos vēnit, He came after a few days.* Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—(1) The Accusative with *abhinc* is explained as Duration of Time (378), with *ante* and *post* as dependent upon those prepositions. (2) The Ablative in both cases is explained as the Ablative of Difference (418).

With the Abl. *ante* and *post* are used adverbially unless an Accus. is expressed after them. *Paucis his (illis) diēbus*, means *in these (those) few days*.

2. NUMERALS WITH ANTE AND POST.—These may be either cardinal or ordinal. Thus : five years after = *quinque annis post*, or *quinto anno post*; or *post quinque annos*, or *post quintum annum*; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quinque post annis*, etc.

3. QUAM WITH ANTE AND Post.—*Quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, may be united with them, or may even be used for *postquam*:

Quatum post annum quam rēdiērat, four years after he had returned. Nep. *Nōno anno postquam, nine years after.* Nep. *Sexto anno quam ērat expulsus, six years after he had been banished.* Nep.

4. The ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE OR *QUUM* may be used for *postquam*:
Quātrīduo, quo occīsus est, four days after he was killed. Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

RULE XXIX.—Characteristic.

428. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing :

Summa virtūte ādōlescens, a youth of the highest virtue. Caes. *Catīlīna ingōnīo mālo fuit, Catiline was a man of a bad spirit.* Sall.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC is used
 - 1) With Substantives as in the first example.
 - 2) In the Predicate with *sunt*, and the other verbs which admit a Predicate Genitive (408) as in the second example.
2. The ABLATIVE WITH A GENITIVE instead of the ablative with an adjective is sometimes used :
 - Uri sunt spācie tauri, *The urus is of the appearance of a bull.* Caes.
 3. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.—See 306. IV.
 4. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE DISTINGUISHED.—The Genitive generally expresses permanent and essential qualities; the Ablative is not limited to any particular kind of qualities.

V. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

RULE XXX.—Specification.

429. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application :

Agēsilāus nōmīne, non pōtestātē fuit rex, Agesilaus was king in name, not in power. Nep. *Claudius altēro pēde, lame in one foot.* Nep. *Mōrībus sīmiles, similar in character.* Cic.

1. FORCE OF ABLATIVE.—This shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true : thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name* : *similar* (in what respect?) *in character*.

2. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. See 880.

VI. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

430. A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be grammatically independent of (*absolved from*) the rest of the sentence, and yet may express various adverbial modifications of the predicate. When so used they are said to be in the case Absolute.

RULE XXXI.—Ablative Absolute.

431. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE :

Servio regnante vīgūrunt, They flourished in the reign of Servius (Servius reigning). Cic. *Rēgībus exactis, consūles crēati sunt, After the banishment of the kings, consuls were appointed.* Liv. *Sērēno coelo, when the sky is clear.* Sen. *Cānīnio consūle, in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

1. USE.—The Ablative Absolute is much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, and expresses a great variety of relations,—*time, cause, reason, means, condition, concession, etc.*

2. HOW RENDERED.—This ablative is generally best rendered (1) by a *Clause* with—*when, while, for, since, if, though, etc.,* (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition*,—*in, during, after, by, from, through, etc.,* or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object*:

Servio regnante, while Servius reigned, or in the reign of Servius. Cic. *Rēligiōne neglecta, because religion was neglected.* Liv. *Perdītis rēbus omnībus, tāmen, etc., Though all things are lost, still, etc.* Cic. *Equitātu praemissō, subsēquēbātur, Having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.

3. A Connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative :

Nisi mūnitia castris, unless the camp should be fortified. Caes.

4. An INFINITIVE or CLAUSE may be in the Abl. Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Auditō Dāriū mövissac, pergit, Having heard that Darius had withdrawn (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), he advanced. Curt. *Multi, incerto quid vitärent, intöriérunt, Many, uncertain what they should avoid (what they, etc., being uncertain), perished.* Liv.

5. A PARTICIPLE or ADJECTIVE may stand alone in the Abl. Absolute:

Multum certäto, pervicit, He conquered after a hard struggle (it having been much contested). Tac.

6. QUISQUE IN THE NOMINATIVE may accompany the Abl. Absolute:

Multis sibi quisque pëtentibus, while many sought, each for himself. Sall.

VII. ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 432 and 434.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions :

Ad amicūm scripsi, I have written to a friend. Cic. *In cūriam, into the senate house.* Liv. *In Itālia, in Italy.* Nep. *Pro castris, before the camp.*

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus :

Ad urbem, to the city. Cic. *Adversus deos, toward the gods.* Cic. *Ante lūcem, before light.* Cic. *Apud concilium, in the presence of the council.* Cic. *Circa fōrum, around the forum.* Cic. *Citra flūmen, on this side of the river.* Cic. *Contra nātūram, contrary to nature.* Cic. *Intra mūros, within the walls.* Cic. *Post castra, behind the camp.* Caes. *Sēcundum nātūram, according to nature.* Cic. *Trans Alpes, across the Alps.* Cic.

1. Like *Prōpe*, the derivatives *prōpior* and *proximus* take the Accus. dependent perhaps upon *ad* understood. *Exadversus (um)* also occurs with the Accus.:

Prōpior montem, nearer to the mountain. Sall. *Proximus māre, nearest to the sea.* Caes. See also 427, and for compounds, 871. 4. and 874. 6.

2. *Vereus (um)* and *usque* as adverbs often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in*: *Ad Alpes versus, towards the Alps.*

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

<i>A or ab (abs),</i>	<i>absque,</i>	<i>cōram,</i>	<i>cum,</i>	<i>de,</i>
<i>e or ex,</i>	<i>prae,</i>	<i>pro,</i>	<i>sine,</i>	<i>tēnus.</i>

Ab urbe, from the city. Caes. *Cōram conventu, in the presence of the assembly.* Nep. *Cum Antiōcho, with Antiochus.* Cic. *De fōro, from the forum.* Cic. *Ex Asia, from Asia.* Nep. *Sine corde, without a heart.* Cic.

1. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sūper*, admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition :

Abire māgistrātu, to retire from office. Tac. *Pugna excēdunt, They retire from the battle.* Caes.

Sometimes the Prep. is repeated, or one of kindred meaning is used :

De vita dēcēdēre, to depart from life. Cic. *Dēcēdēre ex Asia, to depart from Asia.* Cic.

2. The Ablative with or without *De* is sometimes used with *Fācio, Fīo*, or *Sum*, as follows :

Quid hoc hōmīnī fāciās, What are you to do with this man? Cic. *Quid te (or de te) fūtūrum est, What will become of you?* Clc.

The Dative occurs in nearly the same sense :

Quid huīe hōmīnī fāciās, What are you to do with (or to) this man? Clc.

3. *A*, *ab*, *abe*, *e*, *ex*.—*A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* either before vowels or consonants. *Abe* is antiquated, except before *te*.

4. *Tēnus* follows its case :

Collo tēnūa, up to the neck. Ov.

5. *Cum* with the Abl. of a Pers. Pronoun is appended to it : *mēcum, tēcum, etc.*, generally also with a relative : *quōcum, quibucum.*

435. The ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper :

In Asiam prōfūgit, He fled into Asia. Cic. *Hannibal in Itālia fuit, Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. *Sub montem, toward the mountain.* Caes. *Sub monte, at the foot of the mountain.* Liv. *Subter tōgam, under the toga.* Liv. *Subter testūdīne, under a tortoise or shed.* Virg. *Sūper Nūmidiam, beyond Numidia.* Sall. *Hac sūper re scribam, I will write on this subject.* Cic.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither?* the Ablative in answer to *where?* *In Asiam* (*whither?*), *into Asia*; *In Itālia* (*where?*), *in Italy*.

2. *Subter* and *Sūper* generally take the Accusative, but *sūper* with the force of—concerning, of, on (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

436. PREPOSITIONS AS ADVERBS.—The prepositions were originally adverbs, and many of them are sometimes so used in classical authors.

437. ADVERBS AS PREPOSITIONS.—Conversely several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions with an oblique case, though in most instances a preposition could readily be supplied. Such are

1. With Accusative : *prōpius, proxime, pridie, postridie, usque, dēsūper :*

Prōpius pēričūlūm (ad), nearer to danger. Liv. *Pridie Idus (ante), the day before the Ides.* Cic. *Usque pēdes (ad), even to the feet.* Curt.

2. With Ablative : *pālam, prōcul, simul (poetic) :*

Pālam pōpōlo, in the presence of the people. Liv. *Prōcul castris, at a distance from the camp.* Tac. *Simul his, with these.* Hor.

3. With Accusative or Ablative : *clam, insūper :*

Clam patrem, without the father's knowledge. Plaut. *Clam vōbia, without your knowledge.* Caes.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortuna caeca est, Fortune is blind. Cic. *Verae amicitiae, true friendships.* Cic. *Mägister optimus, the best teacher.* Cic.

1. This Rule includes Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles.

2. ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.—An adjective is called *attributive*, unless it unites with the verb (generally *sum*), to form the *predicate*; it is then called a *predicate-adjective*: as *caeca est*, above.

3. AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun*, *clause*, *infinitive*, etc.:

Quis clārior, Who is more illustrious? Cic. *Certum est liberos āmāri, It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. See 35. III.

An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek.

4. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE.—Sometimes the Predicate Adjective is neuter, when the subject is *Masc.* or *Fem.*:

Mors est extrēmum, Death is the last (thing). Cic.

5. NEUTER WITH GENITIVE.—A neuter adjective with a genitive is often used instead of an adjective with its noun:

Multum ὄpērae (for multa op̄era), much service (much of service). Cic. *Id tempōris, that time.* Cic. *Vāna rērum (for vānae res), vain things.* Hor.

6. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre pār̄sti, a part (some), prepared to contend. Virg. *Nōbis (for me, 446, 2), praesente, we (I) being present.* Plaut. *Dēmosthēnes cūcēteriā ērant expūlsi, Demosthenes with the others had been banished.* Nep.

7. AGREEMENT WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPPOSITIVE.—See 462.

8. AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

Majōra (for majōrum) initia rērum, the beginnings of greater things. Liv. *Cursus justi (justus) amnis, the regular course of the river.* Liv.

439. WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS.—An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all conjointly, or may agree with one and be understood with the others:

Castor et Pollux vīsi sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen.* Cic. Tēmērītas ignōrātioque vītiōsa est, *Rashness and ignorance are bad.* Cic.

1. **THE ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE** generally agrees with the nearest noun : Agri omnes et māria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.
2. **DIFFERENT GENDERS.**—When the nouns are of different genders, they may denote

1) *Persons* : then the adjective or participle agreeing with them conjointly is masculine : Pāter et māter mortui sunt, *Father and mother are dead.* Ter.

2) *Persons and Things* : then the adjective generally takes the gender of the person : Rex rēgiāque classis prōfecti sunt, *The king and the royal fleet set out.* Liv.

3) *Things* : then the adjective is generally neuter : Hōnōres, victōriæ fortūta sunt, *Honors and victories are accidental (things).* Cic.

3. **NEUTER WITH MASCULINE OR FEMININE.**—With masculine or feminine nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective is often neuter :

Lābor et dōlor sunt fīnīlma, *Labor and pain are kindred (things).* Cic. Nox atque praeda hostes rēmōrāta sunt, *Night and plunder detained the enemy.* Sall.

4. **TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.**—Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun :

Prima et vīcēsima lēgiōnes, *the first and the twentieth legions.* Tac.

So in proper names : Cnaeus et Publius Scipiōnes, *Cnaeus and Publius Scipio.* Cic.

440. USE OF ADJECTIVES.—The Adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the Adjective in English.

1. An adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and an adjective: *aes dliēnum grande*, a great debt. Here *grande* qualifies not *aes* alone, but *aes aliēnum*. In such cases no connective is used between the adjectives.

But the Latin uses the conjunction after *multi* even where the English omits it: *multas et magnas tempestātes*, many great emergencies.

441. ADJECTIVES ARE OFTEN USED SUBSTANTIVELY : *docti*, the learned ; *multi*, many persons ; *multa*, many things.

1. In the Plural, Masculine Adjectives often designate persons, and Neuter Adjectives things: *fortes*, the brave; *divites*, the rich; *paupēres*, the poor; *multi*, many: *pauci*, few; *omnes*, all; *mei*, my friends; *utilia*, useful things; *mea, nostra*, my, our things; *omnia*, all things; *haec, illa*, these, those things.

2. In the Singular, Adjectives are occasionally used substantively, especially in the Neuter with an abstract sense: *doctus*, a learned man;

vērum, a true thing, the truth; *nihil sincerū*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere.

8. NOUN UNDERSTOOD.—Many adjectives become substantives, by the omission of their nouns: *patria* (*terra*), native country; *dextra* (*manus*), right hand; *fēra* (*bestia*), wild beast; *hiberna* (*castra*), winter-quarters.

4. WITH RES.—Adjectives with *res* are used with great freedom: *res adveruae*, adversity; *res sēcundae*, prosperity; *res publica*, republic.

5. FROM PROPER NAMES.—Adjectives from proper names are often equivalent to the English objective with *of*: *pugna Mārāthōnia*, the battle of Marathon; *Dīāna Ephēsia*, Diana of Ephesus; *Hercūles Xēnōphontius*, the Hercules of Xenophon.

6. DESIGNATING A PART.—A few adjectives sometimes designate a particular part of an object: *primus*, *mēdius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cētera*, etc.: *prima nox*, the first part of the night; *summus mōne*, the highest part of the mountain.

In Livy and late writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a genitive sometimes occurs:

Ad *ultimum inōpiae*, for ad *ultimam inōpiam*, to extreme destitution. Liv.

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

Nēmo saltat sobrius, No one dances when he is sober, or when sober. Cic.
Hortensium vivum āmāvi, I loved Hortenetus, while he was alive. Cic.
Hōmo nunquam sobrius, a man, who is never sober. Cic.

1. *Prior*, *primus*, *ultimus*, *postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause:

Primus mōrem solvit, He was the first who broke the custom. Liv.

With the adverb *primum*, the thought would be, he first broke the custom, and then did something else.

443. INSTEAD OF ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

Socrātes vēnēnum laetus hausit, Socrates cheerfully drank the poison.
 Sen. *Sēnātus frēquens convēnit*, The senate assembled in great numbers.
 Cic. *Roscius ērat Rōmae frēquens*, Roscius was frequently at Roma. Cic.

Adjectives thus used are: (1) Those expressive of joy, knowledge, and their opposites: *laetus*, *libēta*, *incōitus*, *tristis*, *sciēta*, *insciēta*, *prudēns*, *imprudēns*, etc. (2) *Nullus*, *oīlus*, *tōtus*, *duus*; *prior*, *primus*, *prōprior*, *proximus*, etc. (3) In the Poets several adjectives of time and place:

Dōmesticus ītior, Idle about home. Hor. *Vespertinus pēte tectum*, At evening seek your abode. Hor. See Examples above; also 335. 4.

444. COMPARISON.—A comparison between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hōrum, the former of these (two). Nep. *Gallōrum fortissimi*, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes.

1. WITH THE FORCE OF TOO OR VERY.—The comparative sometimes has the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, and the superlative, the force of *very*: *doctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

2. COMPARATIVE AFTER QUAM.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, both adjectives are put in the comparative; but when it is said to possess one quality rather than another, both are in the positive, the former with *māgis* or *pōtius*:

Clārior quam grātior, more illustrious than pleasing. Liv. *Dīserthus māgis quam sāpiens*, fluent rather than wise. Cic.

In the first case the positive is sometimes used in one or both members; and in the second case *māgis* is sometimes omitted, and occasionally the adjective before *quam* is in the comparative.

3. STRENGTHENING WORDS.—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by a Prep. with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, *supra* (417. 2. 3), *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*, alone, alone of all, far, by far; Comparatives also by *etiam*, even, still; *multo*, much, and Superlatives by *longe*, *multo*, by far, much, *quam*, *quantus*, as possible:

Multo maxima pars, by far the largest part. Cic. *Res ūna omnium difficillima, a thing by far the most difficult of all*. Cic. *Quam maximae cōpiae, forces as large as possible*. Sall. *Quanta maxima vastitas, the greatest possible devastation*. Liv.

4. COMPARISON IN ADVERBS has the same force as in adjectives:

Quam saepissime, as often as possible. Cic. *Fortius quam fēlicius, with more bravery than success*. Liv.

• • •

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

Animal quod sanguinem hābet, an animal which has blood. Cic. *Ego, qui te confirmo, I who encourage you*. Cic. *Vis est in virtutib⁹; eas exalta, There is strength in virtues, arouse them*. Cic.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This rule applies to all Pronouns when used as nouns. Pronouns used as adjectives conform to the rule for adjectives. See 488.

The *Antecedent* is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *animal* is the antecedent of *quod*, and *virtutib⁹* the antecedent of *eas*.

2. AGREEMENT WITH PERSONAL PRONOUN.—When the antecedent is a Demonstrative in agreement with a Personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter :

Tu es is qui me ornasti, *You are the one who commended me.* Cic.

3. WITH TWO ANTECEDENTS.—When a relative or other pronoun, refers to two or more antecedents, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest :

Puéri mūliōresque, qui, *boys and women, who.* Caes. Peccātūm ac culpa, quae, *error and fault, which.* Cic.

1) With antecedents of different genders, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439. 2 and 8); hence *puéri mulieresque qui*, above.

2) With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verba. See 468. 1.

4. WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPPOSITIVE.—A pronoun sometimes agrees with a Predicate-Noun or an Appositive instead of the antecedent:

Animal quem (for *quod*) vōcāmus hōminem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. Thēbae, quod (quae) cāput est, *Thebes which is the capital.* Liv. Ea (*id*) ērat confessio, *That (i. e., the action referred to) was a confession.* Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, qui, *the river Rhine, which.* Caes.

In the last example, *qui* agrees with the appositive *Rhenus*; in the other examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea*, are attracted to agree with their predicate nouns *hominem*, *caput*, and *confessio*.

5. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the pronoun is construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form; and sometimes it refers to the *class of objects* to which the antecedent belongs :

Equitātūs, qui vīdērunt, *the cavalry who saw.* Caes. Eārum rērum utrumque, *each of these things.* Cic. Dēmōcrītūm ömittāmus; spud istos; *let us omit Democritus; with such (i. e., as he).* Cic.

6. ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, or the pronoun *is*, or is implied in a possessive :

Sunt qui censeant, *There are some who think.* Cic. Terra reddit quod accēpit, *The earth returns what it has received.* Cic. Vestrā, qui cum integritatē vixistis, hoc intērest, *This interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Here the antecedent is *vos*, implied in *vestra*.

7. CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445. 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent :

Nos, id quod dēbet, patria dōlectat, *Our country delights us, as it ought (lit. that which it owes).* Cic.

8. RELATIVE ATTRACTED.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated :

Jūdice quo (for *quem*) nosti, *the judge whom you know.* Hor. Dies in-

stat, quo die, *The day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tēnēbant, *Cumae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. ANTECEDENT ATTRACTED.—In Poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause in the same case as the relative:

Urbem quam stātuo, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.* Virg. Mālārum, quas āmor cūras hābet, obliūscī (for mālārum curārum quas), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.

I. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

446. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:

Signifīcāmus, quid sentiāmus, *We show what we think.* Cic. Ego rēgēs ejēci, vos tyrannos intrōducītis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. With *quidem* the pronoun is usually expressed, and then the third person is supplied by *hic*, *is*, *ille*, which are then often redundant: *tu quidem*, you indeed, *ille quidem*, he indeed. *Quidem* adds emphasis; *& quidem* = *ēgo quidem*.

2. The writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nos* for *ego*, *noster* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular.

3. For *Nostrum* and *Vestrūm*, see 396. 1.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Mānus lāva, *Wash your hands.* Cic. Mīhi mea vīta cāra est, *My life is dear to me.* Plaut.

For Possessive with Genitive in the sense of own, see 397. 3.

Reflexive use of Pronouns.

448. *Sui* and *Suis* have a reflexive sense (*himself*, etc.); sometimes also the other Personal and Possessive pronouns, together with *Is*, *Ille*, and *Ipse*:

Se dīlligit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Sua vi mövētur, *He is moved by his own power.* Cic. Me consōlor, *I console myself.* Cic. Persuādent Tulingis ūti cum iis pŕofliciscantur, *They persuade the Tulinī to depart with them.* Caes.

1. *Inter nos, inter vōe, inter se*, have a reciprocal force, *each other, one another, together*; but instead of *inter se*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Collōquimur inter nos, *We converse together.* Cic. Amant inter se, *They love one another.* Cic. Hōmīnes hōminib⁹ ūtiles sunt, *Men are useful to men, i. e., to each other.* Cic.

449. *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand :

Se dilligit, He loves himself. Cic. *Justitia propter sese colenda est, Justice should be cultivated for its own sake.* Cic. *Annulum suum dedit, He gave his ring.* Nep.

1. In SUBORDINATE CLAUSES expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to that subject :

Sentit animus se vi sua moveari, The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power. Cic. *A me petivit ut secum essem, He asked (from) me to be with him (that I would be).* Cic. *Pervestigat quid sui cives cogitent, He tries to ascertain what his fellow citizens think.* Cic.

1) As *Sui* and *Suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *Ia*, *Ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects, which do not admit *sui* and *suus*.

Deum agnoscis ex ejus opibus, You recognise a god by (from) his works. Cic. *Obligat civitatem nihil eos mutatiuros, He binds the state not to change anything (that they will).* Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the Reflexive or the Demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own. Thus in the last example under 448, *cum iis* is the proper language for the writer without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject; *secum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that subject.

3) Sometimes the Reflexive occurs where we should expect the Demonstrative, and the Demonstrative where we should expect the Reflexive.

2. *Suus = His own, etc.* — *Suus* in the sense of *his own, fitting, etc.*, may refer to subject or object :

Justitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own). Cic.

3. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE. — When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *sui* and *suus* refer to the latter :

A Caesare invitior sibi ut sim legatus, I am invited by Caesar (real agent) to be his lieutenant. Cic.

4. SUUS SUBSTANTIVELY. — The Plural of *Suus* used substantively—*his, their friends, possessions, etc.*—is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases :

Fuit hoc luctuosum suis, This was afflicting to his friends. Cic. Here *suis* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

5. SUI and SUUS sometimes refer to an omitted subject :

Deforme est de se praedicare, To boast of one's self is disgusting. Cic.

6. REFLEXIVES REFERRING TO DIFFERENT SUBJECTS. — Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject :

Respondit neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse, He replied that no one had contended with him without (his) destruction. Caes.

Here *se* refers to the subject of *respondit* and *sua* to *neminem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

450. *Hic, Iste, Ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hic* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed, and *ille*, that which is remote from both, and near only to some third person.

Custos *hujus urbis*, *the guardian of this city*. Cic. Mūta *istam* memtem, *Change that purpose of yours*. Cic. Si *ille* negligis, *if you disregard those*. Cic.

1. **HIC AND ILLE IN CONTRASTS.**—*Hic* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space or time:

Non antiquo illo mōre, sed hoc nostro fuit ēruditus, *He was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way*. Cic.

2. **HIC AND ILLE, FORMER AND LATTER.**—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *Hic* generally follows *Ille* and refers to the latter object, while *Ille* refers to the former; but (2) *Hic* refers to the more important object, and *Ille* to the less important:

Ignāvia, lābor: illa, *hic*; *Indolence, labor: the former, the latter*. Cels. Pax, victōria: haec (*pax*) in tua, illa in deōrum pōtestātē est; *Peace, victory: the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods*. Liv.

3. *Hic* and *Ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse, and *Iste* sometimes indicates contempt: *haec verba*, these words, i. e., the following words; *iste*, that man, such a one.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous:

Mēdēa illa, *that well-known Medea*. Cic.

1) *Hic* with or without *hōmo*, is sometimes equivalent to *ēgo*. Alone it is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *nostrus*.

2) *Hic*, *ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quidem*. Scipio non multūm ille quidem dicēbat, *Scipio did not indeed say much*. Cic. See 446. 1.

3) A Demonstrative or Relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive or a Prop. with its case: *hic dōlōr* = *dōlōr hujus rel*, grief on account of this; *haec cūra* = *cūra de hoc*, care concerning this.

451. *Is* and *Idem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives:

Dionysius aufūgit: *is* est in prōvincia, *Dionysius has fled: he is in the province*. Cic. Is qui satis hābet, *he who has enough*. Cic. Eādem audire mālunt, *They prefer to hear the same things*. Liv.

1. *Is* is often omitted, especially before a relative or a genitive:

Flōbat pāter de filii morte, de patris illius, *The father wept over the death of the son, the son over (that) of the father*. Cic. See also 445. 6.

2. *Is* or *Ipsa* with a Conjunction is often used for emphasis, like the English and that too, and that indeed:

Unam rem explicabo eamque maximam, *One thing I will explain and that too a most important one.* Cic.

Id thus used often refers to a clause or to the general thought, and *et ipse* is often best rendered, *too* or *also*: Audire Cratippum, idque Athēnis, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens.* Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered, *also, yet:*

Nihil útile, quod non idem honestum, *Nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Quum dicat—nēgat *Idem*, *Though he asserts—he yet denies (the same denies).* Cic.

4. *Ie—qui* = *he—who, such—as, such—that:*

Il sūmus, qui esse dēbimus, *We are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gens quae nesciat, *The race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Idem—qui; idem—ac, atque, quam, quidēi, ut, cum* with Abl. = *the same— who, the same—as:*

Idem mōres, qui, *The same manners which or as.* Cic. Est *Idem* ac fuit, *He is the same as he was.* Ter.

6. *Is Reflexive.* See 448.

452. *Ipse* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self:*

Ipse Caesar, Caesar himself. Cic. Fac ut te ipsum custōdias, *See that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. *Ipse* WITH SUBJECT.—*Ipse* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject:

Me ipse consolor, *I myself (not another) console myself.* Cic.

2. *Ipse, VERY.*—*Ipse* is often best rendered by *very:*

Ipse ille Gorgias, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With Numerals *Ipse* has the force of—*just so many, just:*

Triginta dies ipsi, *just thirty days.* Cic.

4. *Ipse* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own:*

Nostra ipsorum amicitia, *Our own friendship.* Cic. See 397. 8.

5. *Ipse Reflexive*, sometimes supplies the place of an emphatic *sui* or *suus:*
Lēgatos misit qui ipsi vitam pētērent, *He sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

III. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

453. The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence:

Res lōquitur ipsa; quae semper välet; *The fact itself speaks, and this (which) ever has weight.* Cic. Qui proelium committunt, *They engage battle.* Caes. Quae quum Ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. RELATIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—Relatives and Demonstratives are often correlatives to each other: *hic—qui, iste—qui, etc.* These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—qui, idem—qui*, 451. 4 and 5.

1) *Qui*cunque and *Quia*quis, whoever, whatever, sometimes have the force of *every* by the ellipsis of *fieri pōtest:* *quicunque rētione, in every way, i. e., in whatever way it is possible.*

2. A DEMONSTRATIVE may supply the place of a Relative when otherwise two relative clauses would be brought together:

Quae nec h̄abērēmus nec his utērēmur, Which we should neither have nor use. Cic.

1) A Relative Clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive: *is qui audiunt = auditores, hearers.*

3. TWO RELATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause:

Arteas quas qui tēnent, arts, whose possessors (which, who possess). Cic.

4. A RELATIVE CLAUSE is sometimes equivalent to *Pro* with the Abl.:

Quae tua prūdentia est = qua es prūdentia = pro tua prūdentia = such is your prudence, or you are of such prudence, or in accordance with your prudence, etc. : Spēro, quae tua prūdentia est, te vālere, I hope you are well, such is your prudence (which is, etc.).

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals:

Vāsa, quae pulcherrima vidērat, the most beautiful vessels which he had seen (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. *De servis suis, quem h̄abuit fidēliſſimum, misit, He sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had.* Nep.

6. *Quod Expletive*, or apparently so, often stands at the beginning of a sentence, especially before *nī, nisi, eti*, and sometimes before *quia, quoniam, itinam*, etc. In translating it is sometimes omitted, and sometimes rendered by *now, but, and*:

Quod si cūclōrīnt, if or but if they should fall. Cic.

7. *Qui dicitur, qui vocātur*, or the corresponding active *quem dicunt, quem vocant*, are often used in the sense of *so called, the so called, what they or you call*. etc.:

Vestra quae dicitur vita, mors est, Your so called life (lit. your, which is called life) *is death.* Cic. *Lex ista quam vocas non est lex, That law as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

454. The Interrogative *quis*, is used substantively; *qui*, adjectively:

Quis ēgo sum, Who am I? Cic. *Quid faciet, What will he do?* Cic. *Qui vir fuit, What kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. *QUIS* AND *QUI*.—Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *qui* substantively: *Quis rex unquam fuit, What king was there ever?* Cic. *Qui sis, consider who you are.* Cic.

2. *QUID, why, how is it that*, etc., is often used adverbially (890. 2), or stands apparently unconnected, by the ellipsis of *propter* or a verb: *Quid énīm, why then? what indeed (est or dicam) ? Quid quod, what of the fact that?*

3. Two INTERROGATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause:

Quis quem fraudāvit, who defrauded, and whom did he defraud (lit. who defrauded whom)? Cic.

4. *ATTRACTION*.—The interrogative often agrees with the predicate noun:

Quām (for quid) dicām vōluptātem vīdōtīs, You see what I call pleasure. Cic.

V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

455. *Aliquis, quis, qui*, and *quispiam*, are all indefinite, *some one, any one*:

Est *Aliquis*, *there is some one*. Liv. Dixit *quis*, *some one said*. Cic. Si *quis rex*, *if any king*. Cic. Alia res *quaepiam*, *any other thing*. Cic.

1. *Aliquis* is less indefinite than *quis*, *qui*, and *quispiam*.

2. *Quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *st*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*. *Quis* is generally used substantively and *qui* adjectively. *Aliquis* after *st*, etc., is emphatic.

456. *Quidam*, a certain one, is less indefinite than *aliquis*:

Quidam rhētor antiquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician*. Cic. Accurrit *quidam*, *A certain one runs up*. Hor.

1. *Quidam* with an Adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Justitia mirifica quaedam vldētur, *Justice seems somewhat wonderful*. Cic.

2. *Quidam* with *quidam* and sometimes without it, has the force of *a certain, a kind of, as it were*:

Quādālumna quaedam, *a certain foeter child as it were*. Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative:

Neque *me quisquam agnōvit*, *Nor did any one recognize me*. Cic. Si *quisquam*, *if any one*. Cic. Num censes *ullum ānimal esse*, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nēmo* is the negative of *quisquam*, and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively:

Nōmīnem laesit, *He harmed no one*. Cic. *Nēmo poēta*, *no poet*. Cic.

2. *Nullus* is the negative of *ullus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Gen. and Abl. of *nēmo*, which generally wants those cases:

Nullum ānimal, *no animal*. Cic. *Nullius aures*, *the ears of no one*. Cic.

3. *Nullus* for *non*.—*Nullus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *non*: *Nullus vñit*, *He did not come*. Olo. *Mortui nulli sunt*, *The dead are not*. Cic.

458. *Quīvis*, *Quīlibet*, any one whatever, and *Quisque*, every one, each one, are general indefinites (191):

Quaelibet res, *any thing*. Cic. *Tuōrum quisque nēcessāriōrum*, *each one of your friends*. Cic.

1. *Quisque* with Superlatives and Ordinals is generally best rendered by *all* or by *ever, always*, with *primus* by *very, possible*.

Epicūrōs doctissimus quisque contemnit, *All the most learned despise the Epicureans, or the most learned ever despise, etc.* Cic. *Primo quōq̄tēdie*, *the earliest day possible, the very first*. Cic.

2. *Ut Quisque*—*Ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more*:

Ut quisque sibi plūrimum confidit, Ita maxime excellit, *The more one confides in himself, the more he excels*. Cic.

459. *Alius* and *Alter* are often repeated : *alius—alius*, one—another ; *alii—alii*, some—others ; *alter—alter*, the one—the other ; *altéri—altéri*, the one party—the other :

Alii glòriae serviunt, alii pécuniae, Some are slaves to glory, others to money. Cic. *Altéri díllicant, altéri timent, One party contends, the other fears.* Cic.

1. *Alius* repeated in different cases often involves an ellipsis :

Alius alia via civitatem auxerunt, They advanced the state, one in one way, another in another. Liv. So also with *dilias* or *aliter* : *Aliter alii vivunt, Some live in one way, others in another.* Cic.

2. After *Alius*, *Alter*, and the like, *atque*, *ac*, and *et* often mean *than* :

Non aliis essem atque sum, I would not be other than I am. Cic.

3. *Alter* means *the one, the other* (of two), *the second* ; *alius*, *another, other*. When *alter—alter* refers to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either :

Inimicus, compétitor, cum altéro—cum altéro, an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former. Cic.

4. *Uterque* means *both, each of two*, and in the Plu. *both, each of two parties*.



CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON :

Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic. *Ego rēges ejeci, vos týrannos intrōductis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to 438. See also 301. 2 and 3 :

Thebāni accusati sunt, The Thebans were accused. Cic.

1) In the Infinitive, the Participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject :

Difidētia futūrum quae impéravisset, from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place. Sall.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 367. 2.

1) An Indefinite Subject is often denoted by the Second Pera. Sing., or by the First or Third Plur.: *dicas*, you (any one) may say; *dicimus*, we (people) say; *dicunt*, they say.

3. VERB OMITTED.—See 367. 3.

461. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the Predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus

1. With Collective Nouns, *pars*, *multitudo*, and the like:

Multitudo ēbeunt, *The multitude depart*. Liv. *Pars per agros dilapsi*, *a part (some) dispersed through the fields*. Liv.

1) Here *multitudo* and *pars*, though Sing. and Fem. in form, are Plur. and Masc. in sense. See also 438. 6.

2) Conversely the Imperative Singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually: *Adde defectōnem Sicilliae*, *Add (to this, soldiers,) the revolt of Sicily*. Liv.

3) Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often *Sing.*, and the latter *Plur.*: *Jūventus ruit certantque*, *The youth rush forth and contend*. Virg.

2. With *Millia*, often masculine in sense:

Caesi sunt tria millia, *Three thousand men were slain*. Liv.

3. With *Quisque*, *Uterque*, *Alius—Alium*, *Alter—Altērum*, and the like:

Uterque ēducunt, *they each lead out*. Caes. *Alter altērum vīdēmus*, *We see each other*. Cic.

4. With Singular Subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum*:

Dux cum principib⁹ cāpiuntur, *The leader with his chief is taken*. Liv. See 438. 6.

5. With *Partim*—*Partim* in the sense of *pars*—*pars*:

Bōnōrum partim nēcessāria, *partim non nēcessāria sunt*, *Of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary*. Cic.

462. AGREEMENT WITH APPPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN.—Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or Predicate Noun:

Volsinii, oppidum Tuscōrum, concrēmātūm est, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned*. Plin. *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, *Not every error should be called folly*. Cic.

1. The Verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbs*, *oppidum*, or *civitas*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

1) The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quam*, *nisi*, etc.: *Nihil aliud nisi pax quaeſita est* (not *quaesitum*), *Nothing but peace was sought*. Cic.

2. The verb agrees with the predicate noun, when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

463. AGREEMENT WITH COMPOUND SUBJECT.—With two or more subjects the verb agrees—

I. With one subject and is understood with the others:

Aut mōres spectāri aut fortūna sōlet, *Either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Hōmērus fuit et Hēsiōdus ante Rōmam condītam, *Homer and Hesiod lived (were) before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the Plural Number:

Lentūlus, Scipio pēriērunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cīcōrō vālēmus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tu et Tullia vālētis, *You and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. PERSON.—With subjects differing in Person, the verb takes the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third, as in the examples just given.

2. PARTICIPLES.—See 439.

3. TWO SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb:

Sēnātus pōpūlusque intelligit, *The senate and people (i. e., the state as a unit) understand.* Cic. Tempus nēcessitasque postūlat, *Time and necessity (i. e., the crisis) demand.* Cic.

4. SUBJECTS WITH AUT OR NEC.—With singular subjects connected by *aut, vel, nec, nēque or seu,* the verb generally agrees with the nearest subject, but with subjects differing in person, it is generally Plur.:

Aut Brūtus aut Cassius jūdicāvit, *Either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic. Haec nēque ēgo nēque tu fēclimus, *Neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter.

SECTION II.

USE OF VOICES.

464. In a transitive verb, the Active voice represents the subject as acting upon some object, the Passive, as acted upon by some other person or thing:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. A Deo omnia facta sunt, *All things were made by God.* Cic.

465. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But

I. That which in the active construction would be the object must be the subject in the passive; and

II. That which in the active would be the subject must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, for persons, without it for things: (371.6):

Deus omnia constituit, God ordained all things, or: A Deo omnia constituta sunt, All things were ordained by God. Cic. Dei prōvidentia mundum administrat, The providence of God rules the world, or: Dei prōvidentia mundus administratur, The world is ruled by the providence of God. Cic.

1. The **PASSIVE VOICE** is sometimes equivalent to the Act. with a reflexive pronoun, like the Greek Middle:

Lavantur in flumInibus, They bathe (wash themselves) in the rivers. Caes.

2. **INTRANSITIVE VERBS** (193) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Curritur ad praetorium, They run to the prætorium (it is run to). Cic.

3. **DEONENT VERBS**, though Passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mirabar, I admired that. Cic. Ab urbe proficisci, to set out from the city. Caes.

4. **SEMI-DEONENTS** (272. 3) have some of the Active forms and some of the Passive, without change of meaning.

SECTION III.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cicerō vālēmus, Cicero and I are well. Cic. Hoc te rōgo, I ask you for this. Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used,

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths and customs*:

Nihil est amabilius virtute, Nothing is more lovely than virtue. Cic. Fortes fortuna adjuvat, Fortune helps the brave. Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the *Historical Present*:

Jugurtha vallo moenia circumdat, Jugurtha surrounds the city with a rampart. Sall.

1. **HISTORICAL PRESENT**.—The historical present may sometimes be best rendered by the English Imperfect, and sometimes by the English Present, as that has a similar historical use.

2. PRESENT WITH JAMDIU, JAMDUDUM.—The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, rendered *have*, especially after *jamdiu*, *jamdudum*, etc.

Jamdiu ign̄tro quid ēgas, I have not known for a long time what you are doing. Cic.

1) The Imperfect is used in the same way of a *past* action which had been going on for some time. Thus in the example above, *Jamdiu ign̄rābam*, would mean, *I had not known for a long time.*

2) The Present in the Infinitive and Participle is used in the same way of an action which has been or had been going on for some time.

3. PRESENT APPLIED TO AUTHORS.—The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant:

Xēnōphon fācit Socrātem dispūtantem, Xenophon represents Socrates discussing. Cic.

4. PRESENT WITH DUM.—With *dum*, in the sense of *while*, the Present is generally used, even of past actions:

Dum ea pārant, Sāguntum oppugnābātur, While they were (are) making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked. Liv.

5. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in conditions:

Si vincim̄us, omnia tūta ērunt, If we conquer, all things will be safe. Sall.

II. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time:

Stabant nōbīssimi jūvēnes, There stood (were standing) most noble youths. Liv. *Colles oppidum cingēbant, Hills encompassed the town.* Caes.

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events:

Ante oppidum plānities pātēbat, Before the town extended a plain. Caes. *Fulgentes glādios vidēbant, They saw (were seeing) the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered by *was wont*, etc.:

Pausānias ēpūlābātur mōre Persārum, Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style. Nep.

1. IMPERFECT OF ATTEMPTED ACTION.—The Imperfect is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action:

Sēdābant tūmūltus, They attempted to quell the seditions. Liv.

2. IMPERFECT IN LETTERS.—See 472. 1.

III. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time:

Scribam ad te, *I will write to you.* Cic. Nunquam ḥerrābimus, *We shall never go astray.* Cic.

1. **FUTURE WITH IMPERATIVE FORCE.**—In Latin as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative:

Cūrabis et scribes, *You will take care and write.* Cic.

2. **LATIN FUTURE FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.**—Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future Tense, though sometimes put in the present in English:

Natūram si sēquēmur, nunquam ḥerrābimus, *If we follow nature, we shall never go astray.* Cic.

3. **FUTURE INDICATIVE WITH MELIUS.**—With *melius* the Future Indicative has often the force of the Subjunctive:

Mēlius pēribimus, *We would perish rather, or it would be better for us to perish.* Liv.

IV. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses:

I. **As the PRESENT PERFECT or PERFECT DEFINITE,** it represents the action as at present completed, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have*:

De gēnēre belli dixi, *I have spoken of the character of the war.* Cic.

II. **As the HISTORICAL PERFECT or PERFECT INDEFINITE,** it represents the action as a simple historical fact:

Miltiādes est accusatus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

1. **PERFECT OF WHAT HAS CEASED TO BE.**—The Perfect is sometimes used where the emphasis rests particularly on the *completion* of the action, implying that what was true of the past, is not true of the present:

Hābuit, non hābet, *He had, but has not.* Cic. Fuit Ilium, *Ilium was.* Virg.

2. **PERFECT INDICATIVE WITH PAENE, PROPE.**—The Perfect Indicative with *paene*, *prope*, may often be rendered by *might*, *would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative:

Brūtūm non mīnus āmo, *paene dixi*, quam te, *I love Brutus not less, I might almost say, or I had almost said, than I do you.* Cic.

3. **PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.**—The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297).

Mēmīnit praetērītōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Quum ad viliam vēni, hoc me dēlectat, *When I come (have come) to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic. Mēmīnēram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

4. **PERFECT WITH POSTQUAM.**—*Postquam, ut, ut primum, etc.*, in the sense of *as soon as*, are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is generally used of repeated actions; also after *postquam* when a long or definite interval intervenes:

Postquam cēcīdit Ilium, after (as soon as) Ilium fell. Virg. Anno tertio postquam prōfūgērat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

1) As a Rare Exception the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* (*posteaquam*): *Posteaquam aedificasset classes, after he had built fleets.* Cic.

V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some definite past time:

Cōpias quas pro castris collōcāvērat, rēduxit, He led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp. Caes.

1. **TENSES.**—In letters the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the Imperfect or Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Imperfect or Perfect:

Nihil hābēbam quod scribērem: ad tuas omnes ēpistōlas rescriptsōram, I have (had) nothing to write: I have already replied to all your letters (I had replied, i. e., before writing this). Cic.

1) The Perfect is sometimes used of Future actions, as events which happen *after* the writing of the letter but *before* the receipt of it will be *Future* to the writer but *Past* to the reader.

2. **PLUPERFECT FOR ENGLISH IMPERFECT.**—See 471. 8.

3. **PLUPERFECT TO DENOTE RAPIDITY.**—The Pluperfect sometimes denotes rapidity or completeness of action:

Urbem luctu complēvērant, They (had) filled the city with mourning. Curt.

VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam quum vēnēro, scribām ad te, When I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you. Cic. *Dum tu haec lēges, ēgo illum fortasse convēnēro, When you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. **FUTURE PERFECT TO DENOTE CERTAINTY.**—The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote the *speedy* or *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officium praeſtitō, I will surely discharge my duty. Caes.

2. The FUTURE PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT OR FUTURE is rare, but occurs in conditional clauses :

Si interpretari potuero, his verbis utitur, *If I can (shall have been able to) understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

SECTION IV.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVI.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificavit, *God made the world.* Cic. Nonne expulsus est patria, *Was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hoc feci, dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. SPECIAL USES.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive :

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (512. 2) :

Haec conditio non accipienda fuit, *This condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the *Indicative*, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *Effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so :

Vicēramus, nisi rēcēpisset Antōnium, *We should have (lit. had) conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See 511. 2.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cunque* (187. 4), take the Indicative :

Quisquis est, is est sāpiens, *Whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hoc ultimum, utcunque inītūm est, proelium fuit, *This, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv.

4. In *Expressions of Duty, Necessity, Ability*, and the like, the Latin often uses the Indicative where the English does not :

Tardius quam dēbuērat, *more slowly than he should have done.* Cic.

1) So also in *sum* with *aequum, par, justum, mīlitus, utīlitas, longum, diffīcile,* and the like : Longum est perequī utīltatēs, *It would be tedious (is a long task) to enumerate the uses.* Cic.

SECTION V.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

476. Tense in the Subjunctive does not designate the time of the action as definitely as in the Indicative, but it marks with great exactness its continuance or completion.

477. The Present and Imperfect express *Incomplete action*:

Valeant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Utinam vēra invēnire possem, *O that I were able to find the truth.* Cic.

478. The Perfect and Pluperfect express *Completed action*:

Oblitus es quid dixērim, *You have forgotten what I said.* Cic. Thēmistocles, quum Graeciam libērasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

479. The Future Tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive: the mood itself—used only of that which is merely *conceived* and *uncertain*—is so nearly related to the Future, that those tenses are seldom needed. Their place is however supplied, when necessary, by the periphrastic forms in *rūs* (481. III. 1).

480. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—The Subjunctive Tenses in their use conform to the following

RULE XXXVII.—Sequence of Tenses.

Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical upon Historical:

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Nēmo ērit qui censeat, *There will be no one who will think.* Cic. Quaesiēras nonne pūtārem, *You had asked, whether I did not think.* Cic.

481. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In accordance with this rule,

I. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Principal tense—*present, present perfect, future, future perfect*—is put,

1. In the Present for Incomplete Action:

Video quid āgas,	<i>I see what you are doing.</i>
Vidi quid agas,	<i>I have seen what you are doing.</i>
Vidēbo quid agas,	<i>I shall see what you do.</i>
Vidēro quid agas,	<i>I shall have seen what you do.</i>

2. In the Perfect for Completed Action:

Video quid ēgeris,	<i>I see what you have done.</i>
Vidi quid egeris,	<i>I have seen what you have done.</i>
Vidēbo quid egeris,	<i>I shall see what you have done.</i>
Vidēro quid egeris,	<i>I shall have seen what you have done.</i>

II. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Historical tense—*imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*—is put,

1. In the Imperfect for Incomplete Action :

Vidēbam quid āgōres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidi quid ageres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidēram quid ageres,	<i>I had seen what you were doing.</i>

2. In the Pluperfect for Completed Action :

Vidēbam quid ēgīsses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidi quid ēgīsses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidēram quid ēgīsses,	<i>I had seen what you had done.</i>

III. The Periphrastic Forms in *rūs* conform to the rule :

Video quid actūrus sis,	<i>I see what you are going to do.</i>
Vidēbam quid actūrus esses,	<i>I saw what you were going to do.</i>

1. FUTURE SUPPLIED.—The Future is supplied when necessary (479), (1) by the Present¹ or Imperfect Subjunctive of the periphrastic forms in *rūs*, or (2) by *fūtūrum sit ut*,² with the regular Present, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the regular Imperfect. The first method is confined to the Active, the second occurs in both voices :

Incertum est quam longa vīta fūtūra sit, It is uncertain how long life will continue. Cic. *Incertum ērat quo missūri classem förent, It was uncertain whither they would send the fleet.* Liv.

2. FUTURE PERFECT SUPPLIED.—The Future Perfect is supplied, when necessary, by *fūtūrum sit ut*, with the Perfect, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the Pluperfect. But this circumlocution is rarely necessary. In the Passive it is sometimes abridged to *fūtūrus sim* and *fūtūrus essem*, with the Perfect participle :

Non dūbīto quin confecta jam res fūtūra sit, I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished. Cic.

IV. The HISTORICAL PRESENT is treated sometimes as a Principal tense, as it really is in Form, and sometimes as a Historical tense, as it really is in Sense.

1. As Principal tense according to its Form :

Ubii ḫrant, ut sībi parcat, The Ubii implore him to spare them. Caes.

2. As Historical tense according to its Sense :

Persuādet Castico ut regnum occūpāret, He persuaded Casticus to seize the government. Caes.

V. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE often refers to *present* time, especially in conditional sentences (510. 1); accordingly, when thus used, it is treated as a Principal tense :

¹ The Present, of course, after Principal tenses, and the Imperfect after Historical tenses, according to 480.

² *Fūtūrum sit*, etc., after Principal tenses, and *fūtūrum esset*, etc., after Historical tenses.

Měmōrāre possem quibus in lōcis hostes fūdērit, *I might (now) state in what places he routed the enemy.* Sall.

VI. The PRESENT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES, Present and Future PARTICIPLES, as also GERUNDS and SUPINES, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (540. 571):

Spōro fōre¹ ut contingat, *I hope it will happen* (*I hope it will be that it may happen*). Cic. Non spērāvērat fōre ut ad se dēfīcērent, *He had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

482. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the séquence of tenses deserve notice :

1. AFTER PERFECT TENSE.—The Latin Perfect is sometimes treated as a Historical tense, even when rendered with *have*, and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*:

Quōniam quae subsidia hābēres expōsui,² nunc dicam, *Since I have shown what aids you have (or had), I will now speak.* Cic.

2. AFTER HISTORICAL TENSES.—Conversely Historical tenses, when followed by clauses denoting *consequence* or *result*, often conform to the law of sequence for Principal tenses, and thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect*:

Epāminondas fide sic ūsus est, ut possit jūdicāri, *Epaminondas used such fidelity that it may be judged.* Nep. Adeo excellēbat Aristides abstīnētia, ut Justus sit appellātus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *Result* of a *past* action may itself be *present* and may thus be expressed by a Principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit jūdicāri*, may be judged now; when it is represented as at present completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, has been called i. e. even to the present day; but when it is represented as simultaneous with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule of sequence (480).

3. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ORATIO OBLIQUA.—In indirect discourse (528. and 533. 1) dependent upon a Historical tense, the narrator often uses the Principal tenses to give a lively effect to his narrative; occasionally also in direct discourse:

Exl̄itus fuit öratiōnis: Nēque ullos vācāre agros, qui dāri possint; *The close of the oration was, that there were (are) not any lands unoccupied which could (can) be given.* Caes.

¹ Here *fōre* shares the tense of *spōro*, and is accordingly followed by the Present *contingat*, but below it shares the tense of *spērāvērat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect *dēfīcērent*.

² *Expōsui*, though best rendered by our Perf. Def. with *have*, is in the Latin treated as the Historical Perf. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you had, I will now speak, &c.*

SECTION VI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

483. The Subjunctive represents the action of the verb, not as an actual fact, but as something supposed or conceived. It may denote that the action is conceived,

1. As Possible, Potential.
2. As Desirable.
3. As a Purpose or Result.
4. As a Condition.
5. As a Concession.
6. As a Cause or Reason.
7. As an Indirect Question.
8. As dependent upon another subordinate action : (1) By Attraction after another Subjunctive, (2) In Indirect Discourse.

484. VARIETIES.—The Subjunctive in its various uses may accordingly be characterized as follows :

- I. The Potential Subjunctive.
- II. The Subjunctive of Desire.
- III. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result
- IV. The Subjunctive of Condition.
- V. The Subjunctive of Concession.
- VI. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason.
- VII. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.
- VIII. The Subjunctive by Attraction.
- IX. The Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

I. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE XXXVIII.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible*:

Forsitan quaerātis, Perhaps you may inquire. Cic. *Hoc nōmo dixērit, No one would say this.* Cic. *Huic cēdāmus, hujus conditiōnes audiāmus, Shall we yield to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. *Quis dūbitet (= nōmo dūbitat), Who would doubt, or who doubts (= no one doubts)?* Cic. *Quid fācērem, What was I to do, or what should I have done?* Virg.

486. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used,

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*, as in the first and second examples.

II. In *Questions of Appeal*,¹ to ask not what is, but what *may be* or *should be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last example under the rule.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real*:

Quamquam ēp̄lis cāreat sēnectus, though old age may be without its feasts. Cic. *Quōniam non possent, since they would not be able.* Caes. *Ubi res poscēret, whenever the case might demand.* Liv.

Here the Subjunctive after *quamquam*, *quōniam*, and *ubi*, is entirely independent of those conjunctions. In this way many conjunctions which do not require the Subjunctive, admit that mood whenever the thought requires it.

1. **USE OF THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.**—This Subjunctive, it will be observed, has a wide application, and is used in almost all kinds of sentences and clauses, whether declarative or interrogative, principal or subordinate, whether introduced by conjunctions or relatives.

2. **How rendered.**—The Potential Subjunctive is generally best rendered by our Potential signs—*may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, etc., or by *shall* or *will*.

3. **INCLINATION.**—The Subjunctive sometimes denotes inclination:

Ego censem, I should think, or I am inclined to think. Liv.

4. **IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.**—In the Potential sense, the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dēcēres*, you would have said; *crēdēres*, *pūtāres*, you would have thought; *vīdēres*, *cernēres*, you would have seen:

Moesti, crēdēres victos, rēdeunt in castra, Sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp. Liv.

5. **SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION.**—Subordinate clauses in narration sometimes take the Subjunctive to denote that the action is *often* or *indefinitely repeated*. Thus with *ibi*, whenever, *quādīas*, as often as, *quicunque*, whoever, *ut quisque*, as each one, and the like:

Id fētiālis ūbi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, The fētial priest was wont to hurl a spear whenever (i. e., every time) he had said this. Liv.

6. **PRESENT AND PERFECT.**—In the Potential Subjunctive the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present:

Tu Plātōnem laudāvēris, You would praise Plato. Cic.

1) The Perfect with the force of the Present occurs also in some of the other uses of the Subjunctive.

7. **CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.**—The Subjunctive in the conclusion of conditional sentences is the Potential Subjunctive, but conditional sentences will be best treated by themselves. See 502.

¹ These are also variously called. *Deliberative, Doubting, or Rhetorical Questions.*

II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.

RULE XXXIX.—Desire, Command.

487. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired*:

Valeant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Amēmus patriam, *Let us love our country.* Cic. Rōbōre titāre, *Use your strength.* Cic. Scribēre ne pigrēre, *Do not neglect to write.* Cic.

488. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—The Subjunctive of Desire is used,

I. To express a **WISH**, as in *prayers, exhortations, and entreaties*, as in the first and second examples.

II. To express a **COMMAND** mildly, as in *admonitions, precepts, and warnings*, as in the third and fourth examples.

1. **WITH UTINAM.**—The Subjunctive of *Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes—especially in the poets, by *ut, si, o si*:

Utinam cōn̄cta efficēre possim, *May I be able to accomplish my endeavors.* Cic.

2. **FORCE OF TENSES.**—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled:

Sint beāti, *May they be happy.* Cic. Ne transiēris Ibērum, *Do not cross the Ebro.* Liv. Utinam possem, utinam pōtuissem, *Would that I were able, would that I had been able.* Cic. See also 486. 6. 1).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered, *should have been, ought to have been:*

Hoc dicōret, *He should have said this.* Cic. Mortem oppētiasses, *You should have met death.* Cic.

3. **NEGATIVE NE.**—With this Subjunctive the negative is *ne*, rarely *non*:

Ne audeant, *Let them not dare.* Cic. Non rēcēdāmus, *Let us not recede.* Cic.

4. **IN ASSEVERATIONS.**—The first person of the subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn affirmations or asseverations:

Mōriar, si pūto, *May I die, if I think.* Cic. Ne sim salvus, si scribo, *May I not be safe, if I write.* Cic.

So with *ita* and *sic*: Sollicitat, ita vivam, *As I live, it troubles me.* Cic.

Here *ita vivam* means literally, *may I so live*, i. e., may I live only in case this is true.

5. **IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.**—The Subjunctive of desire is sometimes used in relative clauses:

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *Select a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Sēnectus, ad quam utinam pērvénit, *old age, to which may you attain.* Cic.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.

RULE XL.—Purpose or Result.

489. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used,

I. With *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quōmīnus*:

PURPOSE.—*Emititur ut vincat*, *He drives that he may conquer*. Cic.
Punit ne peccētur, *He punishes that crime may not be committed*. Sen.

RESULT.—*Ita vixit ut Athēniensib⁹ esset c̄rissimus*, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians*. Nep.

II. With *qui* = *ut is*, *ut ēgo*, *tu*, etc.:

PURPOSE.—*Missi sunt, qui (ut si) consūlērent Apollinem*, *They were sent to consult Apollo (who should or that they should)*. Nep.

RESULT.—*Non is sum qui (ut ego) his ūtar*, *I am not such an one as to use these things*. Cic.

1. *Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *fācio*, or *dgo*, rarely with *est* a circumlocution for the Indicative: *fācio ut dicam* = *dico*; *fācio ut scribam* = *scribo*: *Invitus fācio ut rēcordar*, *I unwillingly recall*. Cic.

Conjunctions of Purpose or Result.

490. UT AND NE.—*Ut* and *ne* are the regular conjunctions in clauses denoting Purpose or Result. *Ut* and *ne* denote Purpose; *ut* and *ut non*, Result.

1. With connective *ne* becomes *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *nēqua*. *Nēve, nen, = aut ne or et ne*: *Lēgem tūlit nēquis acōsārētur nēve multārētur*, *He proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished*. Nep.

491. PURE PURPOSE.—*Ut* and *ne*—*that; in order that, that not, in order that not, lest, etc.*—are used after verbs of a great variety of significations to express simply the Purpose of the action. A correlative—*ideo*, *idcirco*, etc.—may or may not precede:

Lēgum idcirco servi sūmus, ut libēri esse possimus, *We are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free*. Cic. See also the examples under the Rule.

492. MIXED PURPOSE.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ne* are used to denote a *Purpose* which partakes more or less of the character of a *Direct Object*, sometimes of a *Subject*, *Predicate* or *Appositive*—Mixed Purpose. Thus with verbs and expressions denoting

1. EFFORT.—striving for a purpose; attaining a purpose:

nitor, contendō, stūdeo,—cūro, id ēgo, ὅpēram do, etc., fācio, efficiō, impetro, consēquor, etc.:

Contendit, ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Cūrāvi ut bēne vivērem, *I took care to lead a good life.* Sen. Effecit ut impērātor mittērētur, *He caused a commander to be sent (attained his purpose).* Nep. But see 495.

2. EXHORTATION, IMPULSE—urging one to effort:

admōneo, mōneo, hortor,—cōgo, impello, mōveo,—ōro, rōgo,—impēro, praecipio, etc.:

Te hortor ut lēgas, *I exhort you to read.* Cic. Mōvēmur ut bōni simus, *We are influenced to be good.* Cic. Te rōgo ut eum jūves, *I ask you to aid him.* Cic. See also 551. II. 1 and 2; 558. VI.

3. DESIRE AND ITS EXPRESSION: hence decision, decree, etc.:

opto, postōlo,—censeo, dēcerno, stātuo, constituo, etc.—rarely vōlo, nōlo, mālo:

Opto ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this.* Cic. Sēnātus censuērat, ūti Aeduos dāfendēret, *The senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui.* Caes. See 551. II. and 558. II. and VI.

4. FEAR, DANGER:

mētuo, tīmeo, vēreor,—pēricūlum est, cūra est, etc.:

Tīmeo, ut sustīneas, *I fear you will not endure them.* Cic. Vēreor ne läbōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor.* Cic.

1) By a Difference of Idiom *ut* must here be rendered *that not*, and *ne* by *that or lest.* The Latin treats the clause as a wish, a desired purpose.

2) After verbs of fearing *ne non* is sometimes used for *ut*, regularly so after negative clauses: Vēreor ne non possit, *I fear that he will not be able.* Cic.

3) After verbs of fearing, especially *vēreor*, the infinitive is sometimes used: Vēreor laudāre, *I fear (hesitate) to praise.* Cic.

493. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities:

1. Ut ne, rarely ut non, is sometimes used for ne:

Praedixit, ut ne lēgātos dīmittērent, *He charged them not to (that they should not) release the delegates.* Nep. Ut plūra non dicam, *not to say more, i. e., that I may not.* Cic.

2. Ut is sometimes omitted, especially with vōlo, nōlo, mālo, fūcio, and verbs of directing, urging, etc. Ne is often omitted with cōsē:

Tu vēlim sis, *I desire that you may be.* Cic. Fac hābeas, *see (make) that you have.* Cic. Sēnātus dēcēvit, dārēt dōram consūles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it.* Sall. See also 535. 1, 2).

3. Clauses with Ut and Ne may depend upon a noun or upon a verb omitted:

Fēcit pācem his condītiōnibus, ne qui afficērentur exsiliō, *He made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile.* Nep. Ut Ita dicam, *so to speak (that I may speak thus).* Cic. This is often inserted in a sentence, like the English *so to speak.*

4. *Nēdum* and *Ne* in the sense of *much less, not to say*, are used with the Subjunctive :

Vix in tectis frigus vīlātur, nēdum in māri sit fācile, *The cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy (to avoid it) on the sea.* Cic.

494. PURE RESULT.—*Ut* and *ut non*—*so that, so that not*—are often used with the Subjunctive, to express simply a *Result* or a *Consequence* :

Ita vixit ut Athēnienib⁹ esset cārissimus, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. Ita laudo, ut non pertimescam, *I so praise as not to fear.* Cic.

A correlative—*ita* in these examples—generally precedes : thus, *ita, sic, tam, ddeo, tantōpēre,—tālis, tantus, ejusmodi.*

495. MIXED RESULT.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ut non* are used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Result* which partakes of the character of a *Direct Object, Subject, Predicate, or Appositive* : Thus

1. Clauses as **OBJECT AND RESULT** occur with *fācio, efficio*, of the action of irrational forces :

Sol efficit ut omnia flōreant, *The sun causes all things to bloom,* i. e., produces that result. Cic. See 492. 1.

2. Clauses as **SUBJECT AND RESULT** occur with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, remains, follows, is distant*, etc. :

accidit, contingit, evēnit, fit, restat,—sēquitur,—ābest, etc.

Fit ut quisque dēlectētur, *The result is (it happens) that every one is delighted.* Cic. Sēquitur ut falsum sit, *It follows that it is false.* Cic.

1) The Subjunctive is sometimes, though rarely, used when the predicate is a Noun or Adjective with the copula *sum* :

Mos est ut nōlīnt, *It is their custom not to be willing* (that they are unwilling). Cic. Proxīmum est, ut dōceam, *The next point is, that I show.* Cic. See 556. I. 1 and 2.

2) Subjunctive Clauses with *ut*, in the form of questions expressive of surprise, sometimes stand alone, by the omission of some predicate, as *crēdendum est, vērisimile est*, is it to be credited, is it probable ?

Tu ut unquam te corrīgas, *that you should ever reform?* i. e., Is it to be supposed that you will ever reform? Cic.

3) See also 556 with its subdivisions.

3. Clauses as **APPOSITIVE AND RESULT, or PREDICATE AND RESULT**, occur with Demonstratives and a few Nouns :

Hābet hoc virtus ut dēlectet, *Virtue has this advantage, that it delights.* Cic. Est hoc vītium, ut invīdia glōriae cōmes sit, *There is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory.* Nep.

496. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities :

1. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, regularly so with *ōportet*, generally with *ōpus est* and *nēcessē est*:

Te *ōportet* *virtus trahat*, *It is necessary that virtue should attract you.*
Cic. Causam *hābeat nēcessē est*, *It is necessary that it should have a cause.*
Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *Quam*—with or without *ut*:

Libērīlius quātū *ut posset*, *too freely to be able* (more freely than so as to be able). Nep. Imponēbat amplius quam ferre possent, *He imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. *Tantum abest*.—After *tantum abest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs:

Philōsōphia, tantum abest, *ut laudētur ut etiam vītūpērētur*, *So far is it from the truth (so much is wanting), that philosophy is praised that it is even censured.* Cic.

497. Quo.—*Quo, by which, that,* is sometimes used for *ut*, especially with comparatives:

Mēdico dāre quo sit stūdiōsior, *to give to the physician, that (by this means) he may be more attentive.* Cic.

For *non quo* of Cause, see 520. 3.

498. QUIN.—*Quin* (*quī* and *ne*), *by which not, that not*, is often used to introduce a Purpose or Result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative. Thus

1. *Quin* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ne* and *ut non*:

Rētinēri non pōtērant, *quin tēla conjicērent*, *They could not be restrained from hurling (that they might not) their weapons.* Caes. Nihil est tam diffīcile quin (*ut non*) investigāri possit, *Nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated.* Ter.

After verbs of *hindering, opposing*, and the like, *quīn* has the force of *ne*.

2. *Quin* is often used after *Nemo, Nullus, Nihil, Quis?*

Adest nēmo, *quin vīdeat*, *There is no one present who does not see.* Cic.
Quis est quin cernat, *Who is there who does not perceive?* Cic.

Is or id is sometimes expressed after *quin*:

Nihil est quin id intēreat, *There is nothing which does not perish.* Cic.

3. *Quin* is often used in the sense of *that, but that, without* with a participial noun, especially after negative expressions, implying *doubt, uncertainty, omission*, and the like:

Non est dūbiūm quin bēnēfīciūm sit, *There is no doubt that it is a benefit.* Sen. Nullum intērmisi diem quin sīlquid dārem, *I allowed no day to*

pass, without giving something. Cic. *Facere non possum quin litteras mittam, I cannot but send a letter.* Cic.

1) Such expressions are: non dūbito, non dūbium est—non multum ābest, paullum ābest, nihil ābest, quid ābest?—non, vix, aegre abstineo; mihi non tempō; non, nihil praetermitto—fācere non possum, fieri non pōtest.

2) The Infinitive, for *Quin* with the Subjunctive, occurs with verbs of doubting: *Quis dūbitat pātēre Eurōpam, Who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

3) *Non Quin* of Cause. See 520. 3.

4) *Quin* is used in questions in the sense of *why not?* and with the Imperative in the sense of *well, but:* *Quin agite, but come.* Virg. It occasionally means *nay, even, rather.*

499. QUOMINUS.—*Quōmīnus* (*quo and mīnus*), *that thus the less, that not,* is sometimes used for *ne* and *ut non*, after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like:

Non dēterret sāpientem mors quōmīnus reipublicae consūlat, Death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic. Cic. *Non rēcūsāvit, quomīnus poenam sūbīret, He did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. *Per eum stētit quōmīnus dīmīcārētur, It was owing to him (stood through him), that the engagement was not made.* Caes.

1. Expressions of *hindering*, etc., are: *dēterreo, impēdio, prōhibeo,—obsto, obstō, officio,—rēcūso, per me stat, etc.*

2. Verbs of *hindering* admit a variety of constructions: the Infinitive, the Subjunctive with *ut, ne, quo, quin*, or *quōmīnus*.

Relative of Purpose or Result.

500. A Relative Clause denoting a Purpose or a Result is equivalent to a clause with *ut*, denoting purpose or result, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason. The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a pronoun: *qui = ut ēgo, ut tu, ut is, etc.*:

PURPOSE.—*Missi sunt qui (ut ii) consūlērent Apollīnem, They were sent to consult Apollo* (who should, or that they should). Nep. *Missi sunt dēlecti qui Thermōpylas occūpārent, Picked men were sent to take possession of Thermopylae.* Nep.

RESULT.—*Non ī sum qui (= ut ēgo) his ūtar, I am not such a one as to use these things.* Cic. *Innōcentia ī est affectio tālis ānlīmi, quae (= ut ea) nō-ceat nēmlīni, Innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one, or as to injure no one.* Cic.

1. **RELATIVE PARTICLES.**—The subjunctive is used in the same way in clauses introduced by *relative particles*; *ubi, unde, etc.*:

Dōmūm ībi hābītāret, lēgit, He selected a house that he might dwell in it (where he might dwell). Cic.

2. PURPOSE AND RESULT.—Relative clauses denoting purpose are readily recognized; those denoting result are used, in their more obvious applications, after such words as *tam*, *so*; *tālis*, *is*, *ejusmodi*, such, as in the above examples; but see also 501.

3. INDICATIVE AFTER TALIS, ETC.—In a relative clause after *tālis*, *is*, etc., the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the fact:

Mihi causa tālis oblatā est, in qua orātiō decessē nōmini pōtest, Such a cause has been offered me, (one) in which no one can fail of an oration. Cic.

501. Relative clauses of Result, in their less obvious applications, include,

I. Relative clauses after *Indefinite* and *General* antecedents. Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, may often be supplied :

Nunc dicas illiquid (*ejusmodi*, or *tāle*) quod ad rem pertineat, Now you state something which belongs to the subject (i. e., something of such a character as to belong, etc.). Cic. Sunt qui pūtent, there are some who think. Cic. Nōmo est qui non cūpiat, there is no one who does not desire, i. e., such as not to desire. Cic.

1. In the same way *quod*, or a relative particle, *tibi*, *unde*, *quo*, *cur*, etc., with the Subjunctive, is used after *est*, there is reason, *non est*, *nihil est*, there is no reason, *quid est*, what reason is there? *non hābeo*, *nihil hābet*, I have no reason:

Est quod gaudeas, There is reason why you should rejoice, or so that you may. Plaut. Non est quod crōdas, There is no reason why you should believe. Sen. Nihil hābeo, quod incūsem sēnctūtem, I have no reason why I should accuse old age. Cic.

2. INDICATIVE AFTER INDEFINITE ANTECEDENT.—A Relative clause after an indefinite antecedent also takes the Indicative, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt qui non audient dicēre, There are some who (actually) do not dare to speak. Cic. Multa sunt, quae dici possunt, There are many things which may be said. Cic. So also clauses with Rel. participles. See 1 above.

In poetry and late prose the Indicative often follows *sunt qui*:

Sunt quos jūvat, there are some whom it delights. Hor.

3. RESTRICTIVE CLAUSES with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod nōmīnērim*, as far as I remember, etc., take the subjunctive.

II. Relative clauses after *Unus*, *Sōlus*, and the like, take the subjunctive:

Sāpientia est tāna, quae moestītiam pellat, Wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness (such as to dispel). Cic. Sōli centum ērant qui creāri possent, There were only one hundred who could be appointed (such that they could be). Liv.

III. Relative clauses after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Idōneus*, and *Ap-tus* take the subjunctive:

Fibūlae dignae sunt, quae lēgantur, The fables are worthy to be read (that they should be read). Cic. Rūfum Caesar idōneum jūdīcāvērat quem mittēret, Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send (whom he might send). Caes.

IV. Relative clauses after Comparatives with *Quam* take the subjunctive:

Damna majōra sunt quam quae (= *ut ea*) aestimari possint, *The losses are too great to be estimated* (greater than so that they can be). Liv.

IV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION.

502. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood,—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion*:

Si n̄gēm, mentiar, *If I should deny it, I should speak falsely.* Cic.
Here *si negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLI.—Subjunctive of Condition.

503. The Subjunctive of Condition is used,

I. With *dum*, *mōdo*, *dummōdo*:

Mānent ingēnia, mōdo permāneat industria, *Mental powers remain, if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With *ac si*, *ut si*, *quāsi*, *quam si*, *tanquam*, *tanquam si*, *vělūt*, *vělūt si*:

Crūdēlitātem, vělūt si ādasset, horrēbant, *They shuddered at his cruelty, as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with *si*, *nīsi*, *ni*, *sin*, *qui = si is, si quis*:

Dies dēficiat, si vělim nūmērāre, *The day would fail me, if I should wish to recount.* Cic. Imprōbe fēcēris, nīsi mōnuēris, *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. Si vōluissest, dīmīcasset, *If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

1. **SI OMITTED.**—Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence:

Nēgat quis, nēgo, *Does any one deny, I deny.* Ter. Rōges me, nihil respondeam, *Should you ask me, I should make no reply.* Cic. See also *Imperative*, 585. 2.

2. **CONDITION SUPPLIED.**—The condition may be supplied,

1) **By Participles:** Non pōtestia, vōluptāte omnia dīrgentes (*si dīrgis-tis*), rēlinēre virtūtem, *You cannot retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure.* Cic.

2) **By Oblique Cases:** Nēmo sīne spe (*nīsi spēm hābēret*) se offerret ad mortem, *No one without a hope (if he had not a hope) would expose himself to death.* Cic.

3. IRONY.—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi v̄ero*, *nisi forte* with the Indicative, and with *quāsi*, *quāsi v̄ero* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:

Nisi forte insānit, unless perhaps he is insane. Cic. *Quāsi v̄ero nēcessē sit, as if indeed it were necessary.* Caes.

4. ITA—SI, ETC.—*Ita—si*, so—if, means *only—if*. *Si quidem*, if indeed, sometimes has nearly the force of *since*.

5. ER OMITTED.—See 587. I. 6.

504. FORCE OF TENSES.—In conditional sentences the Present and Perfect tenses represent the supposition as not at all improbable, the Imperfect and Pluperfect represent it as contrary to the fact. See examples above. See also 476 to 478.

1. PRESENT FOR IMPERFECT.—The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Imperfect, when a condition, in itself contrary to reality, is still conceived of as possible :

Tu si hic sis, illter sentias, If you were the one (or, should be), you would think differently. Ter.

2. IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.—The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Pluperfect, with the nice distinction that it contemplates the supposed action as *going on*, not as completed :

Num Opimum, si tum esses, tēmērārium cīvem pūtāres? Would you think Opimius an audacious citizen, if you were living at that time (Pluperf. would you have thought—if you had lived)? Cic.

505. DUM, MÖDO, DUMMÖDO.—Dum, mōdo, and dum-mōdo, in conditions, have the force of—if only, provided that, or with ne, if only not, provided that not :

Dum res māneant, verba fingant, Let them make words, if only the facts remain. Cic. *Mōdo permāeat industria, if only industry remains.* Cic. *Dummōdo rēpellat pērifōlūm, provided he may avert danger.* Cic. *Mōdo ne laudārent, if only they did not praise.* Cic.

When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the indicative :

Dum lāges vigēbant, while the laws were in force. Cic.

506. AC SI, UT SI, QUĀSI, ETC.—Ac si, ut si, quam si, quāsi, tanquam, tanquam si, vēlut, vēlut si, involve an ellipsis of the real conclusion :

Misērior es, quam si dōculos non hābāres, You are more unhappy than (esses, you would be) if you had not eyes. Cic. *Crūdēltātem, vēlut si ades-set, horrēbant, They shuddered at his cruelty as (they would) if he were present.* Caes. *Ut si in suam rem āliēna convertant, as if they should appropri-ate others' possessions to their own use.* Cic. *Tanquam audiant, as if they may hear.* Sen.

Cēu and Sicūti are sometimes used in the same way :

Cēu bella fōrent, as if there were wars. Virg. *Sicūti audiri possent, as if they could be heard.* Sall.

507. Si, Nisi, Ni, Sin, Qui.—The Latin distinguishes three distinct forms of the conditional sentence with *si*, *nisi*, *ni*, *sin*:

- I. Indicative in both Clauses.
- II. Subjunctive, Present or Perfect, in both Clauses.
- III. Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both Clauses.

508. First Form.—Indicative in both Clauses.—This form assumes the supposed case as *real*, basing upon it any statement which would be admissible, if it were a known fact:

Si haec civitas est, civis sum ēgo, *If this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic.
 Si non lēbat, non nēcessē ērat, *If it was not lawful, it was not necessary.* Cic.
 Dōlōrem si non pōtēro frangōre, occultābo, *If I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.* Cic.
 Parvi sunt fōris arma, nisi est consilium dōmi, *Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic.

1. **CONDITION.**—The condition is introduced, when affirmative, by *si*, with or without other particles, as *quidem*, *mōdo*, etc., and when negative, by *si non*, *nisi*, *ni*. The time may be either *present*, *past*, or *future*. See examples above.

2. **CONCLUSION.**—The conclusion may take the form of a command:
 Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic.

3. **Si non, Nisi.**—*Si non* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *si non* introduces the negative condition on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a qualification or an exception. Thus in the second example above the meaning is, *If it was not lawful, it follows that it was not necessary*, while in the fourth the meaning is, *Arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home.*

509. Second Form.—Subjunctive Present or Perfect in both Clauses.—This form assumes the condition as *possible*:

Haec si tēcum patria lōquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat, *If your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request?* Cic.
 Imprōbe fēcēris, nisi mōnuēris, *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule, 508; also 486. 7.

When dependent upon a Historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of tenses (480).

Mētuit ne, si iret, retrāhērētur, *He feared lest if he should go, he might be brought back.* Liv.

510. Third Form.—Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect in both Clauses.—This form assumes the supposed case as *contrary to the reality*, and simply states what would have been the result, if the condition had been fulfilled:

S&ipientia non exp&eter&etur, si nihil effic&ret, *Wisdom would not be sought* (as it is), *if it accomplished nothing*. Cic. Si optima t&enre poss&emus, haud s&ane consilio &g;r&emus, *If we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel*. Cic. Si v&oluisset, dim&asset, *If he had wished, he would have fought*. Nep. Nunquam &bis&et, nisi sibi viam m&unvisset, *He would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way*. Cic. See also 486. 7.

1. Here the *Imperfect* relates to Present time, as in the first and second examples: the *Pluperfect* to Past time, as in the third and fourth examples.

2. In the Periphrastic forms in *rue* and *dus* and in expressions of *Duty*, *Necessity*, and *Ability*, the *Perfect* and *Imperfect Indicative* sometimes occur in the conclusion.

Quid f&ut&rum fuit, si plebs >&tari copta esset, *What would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated?* Liv. See also 512. 2.

1) When the context, irrespective of the condition, requires the *Subjunctive*, the tense remains unchanged without reference to the tense of the principal verb:

Adeo est in&opia coactus ut, nisi timuisse&et, Galliam r&ep&et&it&rus fu&erit, *He was so pressed by want that if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul*. Liv.

Here *r&ep&et&it&rus fu&erit* is in the Subj. not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subj. of Result with *ut*; but it is in the Perfect, because, if it were not dependent, the Perfect Indicative would have been used.

511. MIXED FORMS.—The Latin sometimes unites a condition belonging to one of the three regular forms with a conclusion belonging to another, thus producing certain Mixed Forms.

I. The *Indicative* sometimes occurs in the Condition with the *Subjunctive* in the Conclusion, but here the *Subjunctive* is generally dependent not upon the condition, but upon the very nature of the thought:

P&ream, si p&ot&erunt, *May I perish* (subj. of desire, 487), *if they shall be able*. Cic. Quid timeam, si be<us f&ut&rus sum, *Why should I fear* (486. II.), *if I am to be happy?* Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive* sometimes occurs in the Condition with the *Indicative* in the Conclusion. Here the *Indicative* often gives the effect of reality to the conclusion, even though in fact dependent upon contingencies; but see also 512:

Dies d&ef&icit, si v&el&im causam d&efend&re, *The day would (will) fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause*. Cic. Vic&er&amus nisi r&ec&episset Ant&onium, *We had conquered, had he not received Antony*. Cic.

1. The *Future Indicative* is often thus used in consequence of its near relationship in force to the Subjunctive, as whatever is Future is more or less contingent. See first example.

2. The *Historical tenses*, especially the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used, for effect, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so, as in the last example.

3. Conditional sentences made up partly of the *second form* (509) and partly of the *third* are rare.

512. SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.—The combination of the Subjunctive in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion is often only apparent. Thus

1. When the truth of the conclusion is not in reality affected by the condition, as when *si* has the force of *even if*, *although*:

Si hoc plāceat, tāmen vōlunt, Even if (although) this pleases them, they still wish. Cic.

2. When that which stands as the conclusion is such only in appearance, the real conclusion being understood. This occurs

1) With the Indicative of *Dēbō*, *Poſsum*, and the like:

Quem, si ulla in te piētas esset, cōlēre dēbēbas, Whom you ought to have honored (and would have honored), if there were any filial affection in you. Cic. *Dēlēri exercitus pōtuit, si persēcūti victōres essent, The army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

2) With the Imperfect and Perfect Indicative of other verbs, especially if in a periphrastic conjugation or accompanied by *Paene* or *Prōpe*:

Rōlictūri agros ērant, nīſi littēras misisset, They were about to leave their lands (and would have done so), had he not sent a letter. Cic. *Pons Iter paene hostībus dēdit, ni ūnus vir fuisseſet, The bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have done so), had there not been one man.* Liv.

513. RELATIVE INVOLVING CONDITION.—The relative takes the subjunctive when it is equivalent to *si* or *dum* with the subjunctive:

Errat longe, qui crēdat, etc., He greatly errs who supposes, etc., i. e., if or provided any one supposes, he greatly errs. Ter. *Haec qui videat, cōgātur, If any one should see these things, he would be compelled.* Cic.

V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCESSIONS.

514. A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although*:

Quamquam intelligunt, though they understand. Cic.

RULE XLII.—Subjunctive of Concession.

515. The Subjunctive of Concession is used,

I. With *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum* (although):

Licet irrideat, plus tamen rātio vālēbit, Though he may deride, reason will yet avail more. Cic. *Ut dēsint vires, tamen est laudanda vōluntas, Though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid.

II. With *qui* = *quum* (*licet*) *is*, *quum ēgo*, etc., though he:

Absolvīte Verrem, qui (quum is) se fāteatur pēcūnias cēpisee, Acquit Verres, though he confesses (who may confess) that he has accepted money. Cic.

III. Generally with *etsi*, *tāmetsi*, *ētiamssi*:

Quod sentiunt, etsi optimum sit, tamen non audent dicēre, They do not dare to state what they think, even if (though) it be most excellent. Cic.

516. Concessive Clauses may be divided into three classes :

I. Concessive Clauses with *quamquam* in the best prose generally take the Indicative :

Quamquam intelligunt, tamen nunquam dicunt, Though they understand, they never speak. Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive* may of course follow *quamquam*, whenever the thought itself, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood (485).

2. The *Subjunctive*, even in the best prose, sometimes occurs with *quamquam* where we should expect the Indicative: *Quamquam ne id quidem suspiciōnēm hābērit, Though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3. In poetry and some of the later prose, the subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction.

4. *Quamquam* and *etsi* sometimes have the force of *yet*, *but yet*, *and yet*: *Quamquam quid lōquor, And yet what do I say?* Cic.

II. Concessive Clauses with *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum* (although);—*qui* = *quum* (or *licet*) *is*, *ego*, *tu*, etc., take the Subjunctive :

Non tu possis, quantumvis excellas, You would not be able, however much (although) you excel. Cic. *Ne sit summum mālum dōlor, mālum certe est, Though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. See 518.

I. **UT AND NE.**—This concessive use of *ut* and *ne* may readily be explained by supplying some verb like *fac* or *sine*: thus, *ut dēsint vires* (515. I.) = *fac or sine ut dēsint vires*, make or grant that strength fails. See 489.

The *Concessive Particle* is sometimes omitted:

Sed hābeat, tamen, But grant that it has it, yet. Cic.

UT—SIC OR ITA, AS—SO, though—yet, does not require the subjunctive.

2. QUAMVIS AND QUANTUMVIS.—These are strictly adverbs, in the sense of *however much*, but they generally give to the clause the force of a concession. When used with their simple adverbial force to qualify adjectives, they do not affect the mood of the clause: *quamvis multi*, however many.

3. MOOD WITH QUAMVIS.—In Cicero and the best prose, *quamvis* takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in the poets and later prose writers it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignitatem regia, quamvis carobat nomine, *He was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

4. RELATIVE IN CONCESSIONS.—The relative denoting concession is equivalent to *licet*, or *quum*, in the sense of *though*, with a Demonstrative or Personal pronoun, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason: *qui = licet* (*quum*) *is, licet ego, tu, etc.* See examples under the Rule, 515.

III. Concessive Clauses with the compounds of *si*: *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi* in the use of Moods and Tenses conform to the rule for conditional clauses with *si*:

Etsi nihil habeat in se gloria, tamen virtutem sequitur, Though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue. Cic. *Etiamsi mors oppentina esset, even if death ought to be met.* Cic.

VI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE AND TIME.

RULE XLIII.—Subjunctive of Cause.

517. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used,

I. With *quum* (*cum*), since; *qui = quum is, etc.*:

Quum vita metus plena sit, since life is full of fear. Cic. *Quae quum Ita sint, perge, Since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. *O vis veritatis, quae (quum ea) se defendat, O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

II. With *quod, quia, quoniam, quando*, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumperet juventutem, Socrates was accused, because (on the alleged ground that) he corrupted the youth. Quint.

Causal Clauses with Quum and Qui.

518. QUUM.—*Quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes,

I. CAUSE OR CONCESSION:

Quum sint in nobis ratio, prudentia, since there is in us reason and prudence. Cic. *Phocion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset, Phocion was poor, though he might have been very rich.* Nep. See also 515.

II. TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or CONCESSION:

Quum dīmīcāret, occīsus est, When he engaged battle, he was slain. Nep. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiēbam frēquentē, I often heard Zeno, when I was at Athens. Cic.

1. QUUM IN NARRATION.—*Quum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is very frequent in narration even in temporal clauses. See examples under II. above.

This use of *Quum* with the Subjunctive may in most instances be readily explained by the fact that it involves *Cause* as well as *Time*. Thus *quum dīmīcāret*, in the first example, not only states the *time* of the action—*occīsus est*, but also its *cause* or *occasion*: the engagement was the *occasion* of his death. So with *quum essem*, as presence in Athens was an indispensable condition of hearing Zeno. But in some instances the notion of *Cause* or *Concession* is not at all apparent.

2. QUUM WITH TEMPUS, ETC.—*Quum* with the Subjunctive is sometimes used to characterize a period:

Id saecūlūm quum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, that age when (such that) Greece was full of poets. Cic. Erit tempus, quum dēsidiēras, the time will come, when you will desire. Cic. So without tempus, etc.: Fuit quum arbitrārēr, there was (a time) when I thought. Cic.

3. QUUM WITH INDICATIVE.—*Quum* denoting time merely, with perhaps a few exceptions in narration, takes the Indicative:

Quum quiescunt, probant, While they are quiet, they approve. Cic. Pēr-ruit, quum nēcessē ērat, He obeyed when it was necessary. Cic.

519. QUI, CAUSE OR REASON.—A Relative clause denoting cause or reason, is equivalent to a Causal clause with *Quum*, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason:

O fortunāte ādōlēscens, qui (quum tu) tuse virtūtis Hōmērūm praeconēm invēnēris, O fortunate youth, since you (lit. who) have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor. Cic.

1. EQUIVALENTS.—In such clauses, *qui* is equivalent to *quum īgo*, *quum tu*, *quum is*, etc.

2. INDICATIVE.—When the statement is to be viewed as a *fact* rather than as a *reason*, the Indicative is used:

Hibēo sēnectūti grātiām, quae mihi sermōnis āviditātem auxit, I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation. Cic.

3. QUI WITH CONJUNCTIONS.—When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus,

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *quum*, *quippe*, *ut*, *utpōtē*:

*Quae quum Ita sint, since these things are so. Cic. Quippe qui blandi-
tur, since he flatters. Cic. Ut qui cōlōni essent, since they were colonists. Cic.*

But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*.

2). The Indicative is generally used with *quia*, *quōniām*:

Quae quia certa esse non possunt, since these things cannot be sure. Cic. Qui quōniām intelligi nōluit, since he did not wish to be understood. Cic.

Causal Clauses with Quod, Quia, Quoniam, Quando.

520. *Quod, quia, quoniam*, and *quando* generally take,

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority*:

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, since a thanksgiving has been decreed.
Cic. *Gaudete quod spectant te, Rejoice that (because) they behold you.* Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully, or on another's authority*:

Aristides nonne expulsus est patria, quod justus esset, Was not Aristides banished because (on the alleged ground that) he was just? Cic.

1. QUOD WITH DICO, ETC.—*Dico* and *pito* are often in the Subjunctive instead of the verb depending upon them:

Quod se bellum gesturos dicērent = quod bellum gestūri essent, ut dicabant, because they were about, as they said, to wage war. Cæa.

2. CLAUSES WITH QUOD UNCONNECTED. See 554. IV.

3. NON QUO, ETC.—*Non quo, non quod, non quin*, rarely *non quia*, also *quam quod*, etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote that something was not the true reason:

Non quo hæb̄erem quod scrib̄erem, not because (that) I had anything to write. Cic. *Non quod dōleant, not because they are pained.* Cic. *Quia nō quiv̄erat quam quod ignōrāret, because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know.* Liv.

4. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. See 485 and 486.

RULE XLIV.—Time with Cause.

521. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used,

I. With *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, until:

Expectas dum dicat, You are waiting till he speaks, i. e., that he may speak. Cic. *Ea continēbis quoad te videam, You will keep them till I see you.* Cic.

II. With *ant̄quam*, *priusquam*, before, before that:

Ant̄quam de re pùblica dicam, expōnam consilium, I will set forth my plan before I (can) speak of the republic, i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic. Cic. *Priusquam incipiās, before you begin.* Sall.

1. EXPLANATION.—Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time*: *dum dicat* is nearly equivalent to *ut dicat*, which is also often used after *excepto*. *Ant̄quam dicam* is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dicam*: *I will set forth my views, that I may afterwards speak of the republic.*

2. **WITH OTHER CONJUNCTIONS.**—The Subjunctive may of course be used in any temporal clause, when the thought, irrespective of the temporal particle, requires that mood; see 486. III.

Ubi res poscēret, whenever the case might require. Liv.

522. DUM, DONEC, and QUOD take

I. The *Indicative*,—(1) in the sense of *while, as long as*, and (2) in the sense of *until*, if the action is viewed as an *actual fact*:

Dum lēges vīgēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Quod rēnuntiātūm est, *until it was (actually) announced.* Nep.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed not so much as a fact as something *desired or proposed*:

Differāt, dum dēservescat Ira, *Let them defer it, till their anger cools,* i. e., that it may cool. Cic. See also examples under the rule.

1. DONEC, IN TACITUS, generally takes the Subjunctive:

Rhēnus servat vīolentiam cursus, dōnec Oceāno misceātur, *The Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current, till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

2. DONEC, IN LIVY, occurs with the Subjunctive even in the sense of *while*, but with the accessory notion of *cause*:

Nihil trēplidābant dōnec ponte ēgērentur, *They did not fear at all while (and because) they were driven on the bridge.* Liv.

523. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM generally take,

I. The *Indicative*, when they denote mere priority of time:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic. Antēquam in Sīcliam vēni, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when they denote a dependence of one event upon another. Thus,

1. In any *Tense*, when the accessory notion of *purpose or cause* is involved:

Priusquam incīpias, consulto ūpus est, *Before you begin there is need of deliberation, i. e., as preparatory to your beginning.* Sall. Tempestas minātur, antēquam surgat, *The tempest threatens, before it rises, i. e., the threatening of the tempest naturally precedes its rising.* Sen.

2. In the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as the regular construction in *narration*, because the one event is generally treated as the occasion or natural antecedent of the other. See also 471. 4.

Antēquam urbēm cāpērent, *before they took the city.* Liv. Priusquam de meo adventu audire pōtuissent, in Mācēdōniā perrexi, *Before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cio.

3. *Pridie quam* takes the same moods as *Priusquam*.

1) INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—With *antequam* and *priusquam*, the Indicative and Subjunctive are sometimes used without any apparent difference of meaning, but the Subjunctive probably denotes a closer connection between the two events:

Ante de incommodis dico, pauca dicenda, Before I (actually) speak of disadvantages, a few things should be mentioned. Cic. *Antequam de re publica dicam, expōnam consilium, Before I speak of the republic, I will set forth my plan.* Cic.

2) ANTE—QUAM, PRIUS—QUAM.—The two parts of which *antequam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam* are compounded are often separated, so that *ante*, *prius*, or *post* stands in the principal clause and *quam* in the subordinate clause:

Paucis ante diēbus, quam Syracusae caperentur, a few days before Syracuse was taken. Liv. See *Timætæ*, 704. IV. 8.

VII. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

524. A clause which involves a question without directly asking it, is called an indirect or dependent question.

RULE XLV.—Indirect Questions.

525. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain. Cic. *Quaeritur, cur doctissimi homines dissentiant, It is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. *Quaesiēras, nonne pūtarem, you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. *Qualis sit ānimus, ānimus nescit, The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. WITH INTERROGATIVES.—*Indirect* or *Dependent* questions, like those not dependent, are introduced by interrogative words: *quid*, *cur*, *nonne*, *quālis*, etc.; rarely by *sī*, *etīc*, *seu*, whether; *ut*, how. See examples above.

2. SUBSTANTIVE FORCE.—*Indirect* questions are used substantively, and generally, though not always, supply the place of subjects or objects of verba. But an Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes inserted after the leading verb.

Ego illum nescio qui fuērit, I do not know (him), who he was. Ter.

3. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—An *indirect* question may be readily changed to a *direct* or *independent* question.

Thus the direct question involved in the first example is: *Quid dies fēret, What will a day bring forth?* So in the second: *Our doctissimi homines dissentunt, Why do the most learned men disagree?*

4. SUBJUNCTIVE OMITTED.—After *nescio quis*, I know not who. = *quidam*, some one; *nescio quāmōdo*, I know not how, etc., as also after *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, very much, there is an ellipsis of the Subjunctive:

Nescio quid ānimus praeſagīt, The mind forebodes, I know not what (it forebodes, praeſdyiat, understood). Ter. *Id mīrum quantum p̄fuit, This profited, it is wonderful how much*, i. e., it wonderfully profited. Liv.

5. INDIRECT QUESTIONS DISTINGUISHED.—Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished from certain similar forms. Thus,

1) *From Relative Clauses*.—Clauses introduced by Relative Pronouns or Relative Adverbs always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while Indirect Questions are generally so used :

Dicam quod sentio (*rel. clause*). *I will tell that which (id quod) I think.*
 Cic. Dicam quid intelligam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.*
 Cic. Quaerāmus ubi mālēfīcium est, *Let us seek there (ibi) where the crime is.* Cic.

In the first and third examples, *quod sentio* and *ubi—est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ibi* as the antecedent or correlative of *ubi*; but in the second example, *quid intelligam* is an indirect question and the object of *dicam*: *I will tell (what?) what I know*, i. e., will answer that question.

2) From Direct Questions and Exclamations :

Quid ēgendum est? Nescio, *What is to be done? I know not.* Cic.
 Vide! quam conversa res est, *See! how changed is the case.* Cic.

6. INDICATIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—The Indicative in Indirect Questions is sometimes used in the poets; especially in *Plautus* and *Terence*:

Si mēmōrāre vēlim, quam fīdēli ēnīmo fui, possum, *If I wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

7. QUESTIONS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA. See 530. II. 2.

526. SINGLE AND DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Indirect questions, like those which are direct (346. II.), may be either single or double.

I. An Indirect Single Question is generally introduced by some interrogative word—either a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num*. Here *num* does not imply negation :

Rōglitat qui vir esset (481. IV.), *He asked who he was.* Liv. Epāmīnondas quaeſīvit, salvusne esset clipeus, *Epaminondas inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dūbito num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. See also the examples under the Rule, 525.

II. An Indirect Double Question (*whether—or*) admits of two constructions :

1. It generally takes *utrum* or *ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second :

Quaerītur, virtus suamne propter dignitatem, an propter fructus aliquos expētātur, *It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2. But sometimes it omits the particle in the first member, and takes *an* or *ne* in the second. Other forms are rare :

Quaerītur, nātūra an doctrīna possit effici virtus, *It is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature or by education.* Cic. See also 346. 1. 1).

1) In the second member, *necne*, sometimes *an non*, is used in the sense of *or not*:
Säplentia beatos efficiat necne, quaestio est, Whether or not wisdom makes men happy, is a question. Cic.

2) *An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dubito an, neocio an, haud scio an*, I doubt whether not, I know not whether not = I am inclined to think; *dubitum est an, incertum est an*, it is uncertain whether not = it is probable:

Dubito an Thrasylbum primum omnium ponam, I doubt whether I should not place Thrasybulus first of all, i. e., I am inclined to think I should. Nep.

3) *An* sometimes has the force of *aut*, perhaps by the omission of *incertum est*, as used above:

Simoniades an quis alius, Simonides or some other one. Cic.

VIII. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

RULE XLVI.—Attraction.

527. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive:

Vereor, ne, dum minuere vellim laborem, augeam, I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it. Cic. *Tempus est hujusmodi, ut, ubi quisque sit, ibi esse minime velit, The time is of such a character that every one wishes to be least of all where he is.* Cic. *Mos est, ut dicat sententiam, qui velit, The custom is that he who wishes expresses his opinion.* Cic.

1. APPLICATION.—This rule is applicable to clauses introduced by conjunctions, adverbs, or relatives. Thus, in the examples, the clauses introduced by *dum*, *ubi*, and *qui*, take the subjunctive, because they are dependent upon clauses which have the subjunctive.

2. INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—Such clauses generally take,

1) The *Indicative*, when they are in a measure *parenthetical* or give special prominence to the *fact* stated:

Milites misit, ut eos qui fugerant persquarentur, He sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled, i. e., the fugitives. Caes. Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam, vel in iis quos nunquam vidimus, diligamus, Such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen. Cic.

The *Indicative* with *dum* is very common, especially in the poets and historians:
Fuere qui, dum dubitabat Scaevinus, hortarentur Piso, There were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated. Tac. See also 467. 4.

2) The *Subjunctive*, when the clauses are essential to the general thought of the sentence, as in the examples under the rule.

3. AFTER INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—The principle just stated (2) applies also to the use of Moods in clauses dependent upon the Infinitive. This

often explains the Subjunctive in a condition belonging to an Infinitive, especially with *non possum*:

Nec bōnitas esse pōtest, si non per se expētātur, *Nor can goodness exist*
 (= it is not possible that), *if it is not sought for itself.* Cic.

But clauses dependent upon the Infinitive are found most frequently in the *Oratio Obliqua* and are accordingly provided for by 529.

IX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE,—

Oratio Obliqua.

528. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua*:

Plātōnem fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeo te dōlōrem ferre mōdērāte, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Utilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Oratio Recta*. Thus in the first example, *Plātōnem in Itāliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be: *Plāto in Itāliam vēnit*.

2. QUOTATION.—Words quoted without change belong of course to the Direct Discourse:

Rex “duumvīros” inquit “sēcundum lēgem fīcio,” *The king said, “I appoint duumvirs according to law.”* Liv.

RULE XLVII.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

529. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the *Oratio Obliqua*:

Ad postūlāta Caesāris respondit, cur vēnlret (*direct*: cur vēnis?), *To the demands of Caesar he replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēnō cum lēgiōne vēniat (*direct*: cum lēgiōne vēni), *He writes to Labienus to come* (that he should come) *with a legion.* Caes. Hippias glōriātus est, annūlum quem hābēret (*direct*: hābeo) se sua mānu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

NOTE.—For convenience of reference the following outline of the use of Moods, Tenses, Pronouns, etc. in the *Oratio Obliqua* is here inserted.

530. MOODS IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.—The Principal clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, undergo the following changes of Mood :

I. When *Declarative*, they take the Infinitive (551) :

Dicēbat ānimos esse dīvīnos (direct: *ānīmi sunt dīvīni*), *He was wont to say that souls were divine.* Cic. Plātōnem Tārentum vēnisse rēpērīo (*Plāto Tārentum vēnit*), *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Cāto mīrāri se (*mīror*) sīēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic.

II. When *Interrogative* or *Imperative*, they generally take the Subjunctive according to Rule XLVII.

1. **VERB OMITTED.**—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose :

Pýthia praeccépit ut Miltiādem impōrātōrem sūmērent; incepta pros-pōra fūtūra, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander, (telling them) that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

2. **RHETORICAL QUESTIONS.**—Questions which are such only in form, requiring no answer, are generally construed, according to sense, in the Infinitive. They are sometimes called Rhetorical questions, as they are often used for Rhetorical effect instead of assertions : thus *num possit*, can he? for *non pōtēt*, he can not; *quid sit turpius*, what is more base? for *nihil est turpius*, nothing is more base.

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or third person :

Respondit num mēmōriam dēpōnēre posse, *He replied, could he lay aside the recollection.* Caes. Here the direct question would be: *Num mēmōriam dēpōnēre possim?*

3. **IMPERATIVE CLAUSES WITH THE INFINITIVE.** See 551. II. 1.

531. MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Subordinate clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, put their finite verbs in the Subjunctive :

Orābant, ut sībi auxiliū ferret quod p̄mērentur (direct: nōbis auxiliū fer, quod p̄mīmur), *They prayed that he would bring them help, because they were oppressed.* Caes.

1. **INFINITIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.**—It must be remembered (453), that Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, sometimes have the force of Principal clauses. When thus used in the Oratio Obliqua, they may be construed with the Infinitive :

Ad eum dēfērtur, esse cīvēm Rōmānum qui quērērētur: quem (= et eum) asservātūm esse, *It was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. So also comparisons : Te suspīcor iisdem, qūlbus me ipsum, commōvēri, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I am.* Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.—The Infinitive occurs, especially in Livy and Tacitus, even in clauses after *quia*, *quum*, *quamquam*, and some other conjunctions :

Dicit, se moenibus inclusos teneare eos; quia per agros vagari, *He says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because (otherwise) they would wander through the fields.* Liv. See also 551. I. 5 and 6.

3. INDICATIVE IN PARENTHETICAL CLAUSES.—Clauses may be introduced parenthetically in the oratio obliqua without strictly forming a part of it, and may accordingly take the Indicative :

Référunt silvam esse, quae appellatur Bácenis, *They report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis.* Caes.

4. INDICATIVE IN CLAUSES NOT PARENTHETICAL.—Sometimes clauses not parenthetical take the Indicative to give prominence to the *fact* stated. This occurs most frequently in Relative clauses :

Certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concessérat, omnes discessisse, *He was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.* Caes.

532. TENSES.—Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua generally conform to the ordinary rules for Infinitive and Subjunctive Tenses (480, 540), but the law of Sequence of Tenses admits of certain qualifications :

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after a Historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative :

Caesar respondit, si obsides albi dentur, sese pácem esse factúrum, *Cæsar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace.* Caes.

2. In Conditional sentences of the third form (510),

1) The condition retains the Imperfect or Pluperfect without reference to the tense of the Principal verb ;

2) The Conclusion changes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive into the Periphrastic Infinitive in *rus* (or *dus*) *esse* or *fuisse* :

Censes Pompéium laetárum fuisse, si sciret, *Do you think Pompey would have rejoiced, if he had known?* Cic. Clamitabat, si ille adesset, venturos esse, *He cried out that they would come, if he were present.* Caes.

But the Regular Infinitive, instead of the periphrastic forms, sometimes occurs in this construction, especially in expressions of *Duty*, etc. (475. 4).

3. In Conditional Sentences of the second form (509), the Condition generally conforms to the Rule for Sequence of Tenses (480), but the Conclusion changes the Subjunctive to the Future Infinitive :

Respondit, si Aeduui satisfácient, sés cum iis pácem esse factúrum, *He replied that if they would satisfy the Aeduians, he would make peace with them.* Caes. Légátos mittit, si ita fecisset, amicitiam fútúram, *He sent messengers saying that, if he would do thus, there would be friendship.* Caes.

Here *mittit* is the Historical Present. See 467. III.

4. The Future Perfect in a Subordinate clause of the Direct discourse is changed in the Indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a Principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Historical tense :

Agunt ut dimicent; Ibi impērium före, unde victōria fuērit, They arrange that they shall fight; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory (whence the victory may have been). Liv. *Appārabat regnūtūrum, qui vicisset, It was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

533. PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, ETC.—Pronouns and adverbs, as also the persons of the verbs, are often changed in passing from the *Direct* discourse to the *Indirect*:

Glōriatus est annūlum se sua mānu confēcisse (*direct*: *annūlum ego mea mānu confēci*), *He boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

1. Pronouns of first and second persons are often changed to the third. Thus above *ēgo* in the direct discourse becomes *se*, and *mea* becomes *sua*. In the same way *hic* and *iste* are often changed to *ille*.

2. Adverbs meaning *here* or *now* are often changed to those meaning *there* or *then*; *nunc* to *tum*; *hic* to *illuc*.

3. In the use of pronouns observe

1) That references to the SPEAKER whose words are reported are made, if of the 1st Pers. by *ēgo*, *meus*, *noster*, etc., if of the 2d Pers. by *tu*, *tuus*, etc., and if of the 3d Pers. by *sui*, *suis*, *ipse*, etc., though sometimes by *hic*, *is*, *ille*.

2) That references to the REPORTER, or Author, are made by *ēgo*, *meus*, etc.

3) That references to the PERSON ADDRESSED by the reporter are made by *tu*, *tuus*, etc.

Ariovistus respondit nos esse iniquos qui se interpellāremus (*direct*: *vos estis iniqui qui me, etc.*), *Ariovistus replied that we were unjust who interrupted him.* Caes.

Here *nos* refers to the Reporter, Caesar, *we Romans*. *Se* refers to the Speaker, Ariovistus. In the second example under 533, *te* refers to the Person Addressed.

SECTION VII.

IMPERATIVE.

I. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

534. The Imperative has but two Tenses :

I. The PRESENT has only the Second person, and corresponds to the English Imperative :

Justitiam cōle, Practise justice. Cic. *Perge, Cātilina, Go, Catiline.* Cic.

II. The Future has the Second and Third persons, and corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let*:

Il consules appellantor, They shall be called consuls, or let them be called consuls. Cic. *Quod dixero, facitote, You shall do what I say (shall have said).* Ter.

1. FUTURE FOR PRESENT.—The Future Imperative is sometimes used where we should expect the Present:

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebretote illos dies, Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days. Cic.

This is particularly common in certain verbs: thus *sco* has only the forms of the Future in common use.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Imperative Present is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, of an action which belongs entirely to the future:

Ubi sciem vidi'ris, tum ordines dissipa, When you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks. Liv.

II. USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

RULE XLVIII.—Imperative.

535. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties:

Justitiam cole, Practise justice. Cic. *Tu ne cede maliis, Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. *Si quid in te peccavi, ignosce, If I have sinned against you, pardon me.* Cic.

1. CIRCUMLOCUTIONS.—Instead of the simple Imperative, several circumlocutions are common:

1) *Cura ut, fac ut, fac*, each with the Subjunctive:

Cura ut vénias, See that you come. Cic. See 489.

2) *Fac ne, cāve ne, cāve*, with the Subjunctive:

Cāve fācias, Beware of doing it, or see that you do not do it. Cic.

3) *Nōli, nōlīte*, with the Infinitive:

Nōli imitāri, do not imitate. Cic. See 538. 2.

2. IMPERATIVE CLAUSE FOR CONDITION.—An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause:

Lācesse; jam vīdēbis frārentem, Provoke him (i. e., if you provoke him), you will at once see him frantic. Cic.

3. IMPERATIVE SUPPLIED.—The place of the Imperative may be variously supplied:

1) By the Subjunctive of Desire (487):

Sint beati, Let them be happy. Cic. *Impii ne audient, Let not the impious dare.* Cic.

2) By the Indicative Future :

Quod optimum vIdēbitur, fācies, *You will do* (for Imper. do) *what shall seem best.* Cic.

536. The Imperative Present, like the English Imperative, is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties. See examples under the Rule.

537. The Imperative Future is used,

I. In commands involving future rather than present action :

Rem pendītōe, *You shall consider the subject.* Cic. Cras pētīto; dābītur, *Ask to-morrow ; it shall be granted.* Plaut.

II. In laws, orders, precepts, etc. :

Constīles nēmīni pārēnto, *The consul shall be subject to no one.* Cic. Sālus pōpūli suprēma lex esto, *The safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

538. IMPERATIVE IN PROHIBITIONS.—In prohibitions or negative commands,

1. The negative *ne*, rarely *non*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve*, or *neu*, is generally used, rarely *nēque* :

Tu ne cēde mālis, *Do not yield to misfortune.* Virg. Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe ne sēpēlito, nēve tūrito, *Thou shalt not bury or burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

2. Instead of *ne* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use *nōli* and *nōlite* with the Infinitive :

Nōlite pātāre (*for ne pūtāte*), *do not think* (be unwilling to think). Cic.

SECTION VIII.

INFINITIVE.

539. The treatment of the Latin Infinitive embraces four topics :

- I. The Tenses of the Infinitive.
- II. The Subject of the Infinitive.
- III. The Predicate after the Infinitive.
- IV. The Construction of the Infinitive.

I. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

540. The Infinitive has three tenses, *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*. They express however not absolute, but *relative* time, denoting respectively Present, Past, or Future time, relatively to the Principal verb.

1. **PECULIARITIES.**—These tenses present the leading peculiarities specified under these tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

541. The PRESENT INFINITIVE represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Cūpīo me esse clēmentam, *I desire to be mild*. Cic. Māhuit se diligī quam mātui, *He preferred to be loved rather than feared*. Nep.

1. **REAL TIME.**—Hence the real time denoted by the Present Infinitive is the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. **PRES. FOR FUT.**—The Present is sometimes used for the Future and sometimes has little or no reference to time:

Oras argentum dāre dixit, *He said he would give the silver to-morrow*. Ter.

3. **PRES. WITH DĒBEO, POSSUM, ETC.**—After the past tenses of *dēbo*, *spōrēt*, *possum*, and the like, the Present Infinitive is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect; sometimes also after *mēmīni*, and the like:

Dēbuit officiālēr ēsse, *He ought to have been more attentive*. Cic. Id pōtuit fācere, *He might have done this*. Cic.

542. The PERFECT INFINITIVE represents the action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Plātōnēm fārunt in Itāliā vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic. Conscius mihi ēram, nihil a me commissum ēsse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me*. Cic.

1. **REAL TIME.**—Hence the real time denoted by the Perfect Infinitive is that of the Perfect tense, if dependent upon the Present, and that of the Pluperfect, if dependent upon a Historical tense, as in the examples.

2. **PRES. FOR PRES.**—In the poets the Perfect Infinitive is sometimes used for the Present, rarely in prose:

Tētigīsē timēt pōstām, *They fear to touch (to have touched) the poet*. Hor.

3. **PASSIVE INFINITIVE.**—The Passive Infinitive with *essē* sometimes denotes the result of the action: *victus ēsse*, to have been vanquished, and so, to be a vanquished man. *Fuisse* for *essē* emphasizes the completeness of the action: *victus fuisse*, to have been vanquished. See 575. 1.

543. The FUTURE INFINITIVE represents the action as about to take place in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Brātūm visūm irī a me pōtū, *I think Brutus will be seen by me*. Cic. Orāclūm dātūm ērat victriōes Athēnās före, *An oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious*. Cic.

Hence after a Principal tense the real time of the Future Infinitive is Future, but after a Historical tense the real time can be determined only by the context.

544. CIRCUMLOCUTION FOR FUTURE INFINITIVE.—Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the circumlocution *fūtūrum esse ut*, or *fōre ut*, with the Subjunctive,—Present after a Principal tense, and Imperfect after a Historical tense,—is frequently used :

Spēro fōre ut contingat id nōbis, *I hope this will fall to our lot* (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). Cic. Non spērāvērat Han-nībal, fōre ut ad se dēfīcērent, *Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him*. Liv. See 556. II. 1.

1. CIRCUMLOCUTION NECESSARY.—*Fūtūrum esse ut*, or *fōre ut*, with the Subjunctive, for the Future Infinitive, is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the Participle in *rūs*.

2. FÖRE UT WITH PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—Sometimes *fōre ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in Passive and Deponent verbs, *fōre* with the Perfect Participle may be used with the same force :

Dico me sātis ādeptum fōre, *I say that I shall have obtained enough*. Cic.

3. FUTURUM FUISSĒ UT WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Fūtūrum fuiisse ut* with the Subjunctive may be used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of the third form when made dependent :

Nisi nuntiī essent allati, existimābant fūtūrum fuiisse, ut oppidū āmittērōtur, *They thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought*. Caes. See 538. 2.

II. SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

RULE XLIX.—Subject.

545. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative :

Sentimus cālēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot*. Cic. Plātōnem Tārentum vēnisse rēpērio, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum*. Cic.

1. HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively description the Infinitive is sometimes used for the Indicative Imperfect. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative :

Hostes gaesa conjicēre, *The enemy hurled their javelins*. Caes.

The Historical Infinitive may often be explained by supplying *coepit* or *coepērunt*; but in most instances it is better to treat it simply as an *idiom* of the language.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The Subject of an Infinitive may be omitted :

1) When it denotes the same person or thing as the subject of the principal clause, or may be readily supplied from the context :

Magna nēgōtia vōlunt āgēre, *They wish to accomplish great undertakings*. Cic. Peccāre ille t nēmīni, *It is not lawful for any one to sin*. Cic.

2) When it is indefinite or general :

Diligī jucundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE OMITTED.—*Esse* and *fuisse* are often omitted in the compound forms of the Infinitive and with predicate adjectives, other infinitives less frequently (551. 5) :

Audīvi sōltum Fabricium, *I have heard that Fabricius was wont.* Cic.
Spērāmus nōbis prōfūtūros, *We hope to benefit you.* Cic.

III. PREDICATE AFTER INFINITIVE.

546. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after an Infinitive regularly agrees with the Subject, expressed or understood (362.3) :

Ego me Phidiam esse mallem, *I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. Trādītum est, Hōmērum caecum fuisse, *It has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic. Jāgurtha omnībus cārus esse (*historical infinitive*), *Jugurtha was dear to all.* Sall.

547. A Predicate Noun or Adjective, after an Infinitive whose Subject is omitted, is often attracted into the Nominative or Dative :

I. It is attracted into the Nominative to agree with the Subject of the principal verb, when the latter is the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

Nōlo esse laudātor, *I am unwilling to be an eulogist.* Cic. Beatus esse sine virtute nōmo pōtest, *No one can be happy without virtue.* Cic.

1. This occurs most frequently (1) after verbs of *duty, ability, courage, custom, desire, beginning, continuing, ending,* and the like—dēbeo, possum, audeo, sōleo, cūpio, vōlo, mālo, nōlo, incipio, pergo, dēsīno, etc., and (2) after various Passive verbs of *saying, thinking, finding, seeming,* and the like—dīcor, trādōr, fērōr—crēdōr, existimōr, pūtōr—rēpērior—vīdeōr, etc.:

Quis scientior esse dēbuit, *Who ought to have been more learned?* Cic. Pārens dici pōtest, *He can be called a parent.* Cic. Stolcus esse vōluit, *He wished to be a Stoic.* Cic. Dēsinant esse tīmīdi, *Let them cease to be timid.* Cic. Inventor esse dīclītūr, *He is said to be the inventor.* Cic. Prudens esse pūtābātur, *He was thought to be prudent.* Cic.

2. Participles in the compound tenses of the Infinitive are also attracted :
Pōllēctus esse dīclītūr, *He is said to have promised.* Cic.

II. The Predicate Noun or Adjective is sometimes attracted into the Dative to agree with a Dative in the principal clause, when the latter denotes the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

Patrīcio trībūnō plēbis fiēri non licēbat, *It was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. Mihi negligēnti esse non licuit, *It was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

1. This is rare, but is the regular construction after *licet*, and sometimes occurs after *necessere est*, when used after *licet*, and occasionally in other connections:

Illi timidis licet esse, nobis necessere est fortibus viris esse, It is permitted them to be timid, it is necessary for us to be brave men. Liv. But,

2. Even with *licet* the attraction does not always take place:

Ei consulem fieri licet, It is lawful for him to be made consul. Cæs.

IV. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

548. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, has in general the construction of a Noun in the Nominative or Accusative, and is used,

I. As a Nominative—Subject of a Verb.

II. As an Accusative—Object of a Verb.

III. In Special Constructions.

I. Infinitive as Subject.

549. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as a Nominative, and is thus made the Subject of a sentence, according to Rule III.:

WITH SUBJECT.—*Fæcinus est vinciri civem Römanum, That a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. *Certum est liberos amari, It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. *Lægem brævem esse öportet, It is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

WITHOUT SUBJECT.—*Ars est difficultia rem publicam regere, To rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. *Cerum esse jucundum est, It is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. *Haec scire juvat, To know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. *Peccare licet nemini, To sin is not lawful for any one.* Cic.

1. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—When the subject is an Infinitive, the Predicate is either (1) a Noun or Adjective with *Sum*, or (2) an Impersonal verb or a verb used Impersonally. See the examples above.

1) *Tempus = tempestivum* is thus used with the Infinitive:

Tempus est dicere, It is time to speak. Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may be the subject of another Infinitive:

Intelligi necessere est esse deos, It must be understood that there are gods. Cic. *Esse deos* is the subject of *intelligi*, and *intelligi esse deos* of *necessere est*.

3. INFINITIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—The Infinitive sometimes takes a Demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it:

Quibusdam hoc displaceat philosphari, This philosophizing (this to philosophize) displeases some persons. Cic. *Vivere ipsum turpe est nobis, To live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

4. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION FOR IMPERSONAL.—With Passive verbs, instead of the Infinitive with a subject accusative, a Personal construction is

common, by which the Subject Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative of the leading verb :

Aristides justissimus fuisse trahitur (for *Aristidem justissimum fuisse traditur*), *Aristides is said to have been most just.* Cic.

1) The Personal Construction is used, (1) regularly with *videor, jubeor, vedor*, and the Simple Tenses of many verbs of saying, thinking, and the like—*dicor, trādor, feror, perhibeοr, pūtor, existimor*, etc., also with *coepitus sum* and *desitus sum* with a Passive Infinitive, and (2) sometimes with other verbs of saying, showing, perceiving, finding, and the like.

Sōlem e mundo tollere videntur, They seem to remove the sun from the world. Cic. *Platōnem audīisse dicitur, He is said to have heard Plato.* Cic. *Dii beūti esse intelliguntur, The gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

2) In successive clauses the Personal construction is often followed by the Impersonal.

3) *Videor* with or without a Dative often means *to fancy, think:* *mihi videor* or *videor*, I fancy; *ut vidēmur*, as we fancy.

II. Infinitive as Object.

550. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as an Accusative, and is thus made the object of a verb, according to Rule V.:

Te dicunt esse sāpientem, They say that you are wise. Cic. *Haec vitare cūplimus, We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. *Mānere dēcrevit, He decided to remain.* Nep.

551. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as object with a great variety of verbs. Thus,

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring,—*Verba Sentiendi et Dēclarandi.*

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.

III. With Verbs of Emotion and Feeling.

I. WITH VERBS OF PERCEIVING AND DECLARING.—*Sentimus calēre ignem, We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. *Mihi narrāvit te sollicitum esse, He told me that you were troubled.* Cic. *Scrisserunt Thēmistōlem in Asiam transisse, They wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. VERBA SENTIENDI.—*Verbs of Perceiving* include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses: *audio, video, sentio*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind: thinking, believing, knowing, *cōgito, pūto, existimo, crēdo, op̄ero, —intelligo, scio*, etc.

2. VERBA DECLARANDI.—*Verbs of Declaring* are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts: *dico, narro, nuntio, dōces, ostendo, prōmitto*, etc.

3. EXPRESSIONS WITH THE FORCE OF VERBS.—The Infinitive with a subject may be used with expressions equivalent to verbs of perceiving and declaring. Thus:

With *fōma fort*, report says, *testis sum*, I am a witness = I testify; *conscutus mihi sum*, I am conscious, I know:

Nullam mihi rēlātam esse grātiām, tu es testis, You are a witness (can testify) *that no grateful return has been made to me.* Cic.

4. PARTICIPLE FOR INFINITIVE.—Verbs of Perceiving take the Accusative with the Present Participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action :

Cātōnem vīdi in bibliothēca sēdēntem, I saw Cato sitting in the library. Cic.

5. SUBJECTS COMPARED.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared by means of *quam*, *idem*—*qui*, etc.; if the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative with its Infinitive omitted may follow in the second :

Plātōnem fōrunt Idem sensisse, quod Pŷthāgōram, They say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras. Cic.

6. PREDICATES COMPARED.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared and the Infinitive with a Subject is used in the first clause, the Infinitive with its subject omitted often follows in the second :

Num pūtātis, dixisse Antōniūm mīnēcius quam factūrum fuisse, Do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted? Cic.

But the second clause may take the subjunctive, with or without *ut*:

Audeo dīcere ipos pōtius cultōres agrōrum fōre quam ut cōlī prohibeant, I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled. Liv.

II. WITH VERBS OF WISHING AND DESIRING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring*:

Te tua frui virtūte cūpīmus, We desire that you should enjoy your virtue. Cic. *Pontem jūbet rescindī, He orders the bridge to be broken down* (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. *Lex eum nēcāri vētuit, The law forbade that he should be put to death.* Liv.

1. VERBS OF WISHING.—The Infinitive is thus used not only with verbs which directly express a wish, *cūpio*, *vōlo*, *nōlo*, *mōlo*, etc., but also with many which involve a wish or command : *pātior*, *sīno*, to permit; *impēro*, *jūbeo*, to command; *prohibeo*, *vēto*, to forbid. See also 558. II.

2. SUBJUNCTIVE FOR INFINITIVE.—Several verbs involving a wish or command admit the Subjunctive:

1) *Opto.* See 492. 8.

2) *Vōlo*, *mōlo*, *nōlo*, *impēro*, and *jūbeo* admit the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Vōlo ut respondeas, I wish you would reply. Cic. *Mālo to hostis mētuat, I prefer that the enemy should fear you.* Cic.

3) *Concedō*, *permittō*, rarely *pātior* and *sīno*, admit the Subjunctive with *ut*: *Concedō ut haec apta sint, I admit that these things are suitable.* Cic.

III. WITH VERBS OF EMOTION OR FEELING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling*:

Gaudeo, te mihi suādēre, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Mīrāmur, te laetāri, *We wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Verbs of emotion are *gaudeo*, *dōleo*, *mīror*, *quārō*, and the like; also *aegre fōro*, *grāvitor fōro*, etc.

552. INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as Object with many verbs:

Vincēre scis, *You know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Crēdūli esse coopērunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Haec vitare cū-pimus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Sōlent cōgitāre, *They are accustomed to think.* Cic. Nēmo mortem effūgēre pōtest, *No one is able to escape death.* Cic.

1. VERBS WITH THE INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may depend upon verbs signifying to dare, desire, determine—begin, continue, end—know, learn, neglect—owe, promise, etc., also to be able, be accustomed, be wont, etc.

2. INFINITIVE AS A SECOND OBJECT.—With a few verbs—*dōceo*, *cōgo*, *assuāficio*, *arguo*, etc.—the Infinitive is used in connection with a direct object; see 874. 4 :

Te sāpēre dōcet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Natiōnes pārēre assuefācīt, *He accustomed the nations to obey.* Cic.

In the Passive these verbs of course retain the Infinitive:

Num sum Graece lōqui dōcendus, *Must I be taught to speak Greek?* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.—By a construction according to sepsis, the Infinitive is used after adjectives in the sense of participles or verbs with the Infinitive :

Est pārētus (*vult*) audire, *He is prepared to hear* (is willing to hear). Cic.

Pēlides cēdēre nescius (= nesciens), *Pelides not knowing how to yield.*

Hor. Avīdi committēre pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

This construction is rare in good prose, but common in poetry.

4. INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.—The Infinitive regarded as a noun in the accusative, sometimes depends upon a preposition :

Multum intērest inter dāre et accipēre, *There is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

III. Infinitive in Special Constructions.

553. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is generally used as the Subject or Object of a verb, but sometimes occurs in other relations. It is thus used,

I. As Predicate ; see 362 :

Exītus fuit Grātiōnis : sibi nullam cum his āmicitiam, *The close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes. Vivēre est cōglātāre, *To live is to think.* Cic.

Here *sibi—dmicitiam* is used substantively, and is the Predicate Nominative after *fuit*, according to Rule I. *Cōglātāre* is in the same construction after *est*.

II. As Appositive; see 363:

Oraculum dātum ērat victrices Athēnas före, *The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given.* Cic. Illud sōleo mīrāri non me accipēre tuas littēras, *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

1. **WITH SUBJECT.**—In this construction the Infinitive takes a subject accusative, as in the examples.

2. **EXPLANATION.**—In the examples, the clause *victrices Athēnas före* is in apposition with *oraculum*, and the clause *non me accipēre tuas littēras*, in apposition with *illud*.

III. In Exclamations; see 381:

Te sic vexāri, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne incepto dēsistōre victim, *that I vanquished should abandon my undertaking!* Virg.

1. **WITH SUBJECT.**—In this construction the Infinitive takes a Subject, as in the examples.

2. **EXPLANATION.**—This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (381, 381. 3). It may often be explained as an Accus. by supplying some verb, as *dōleo*, etc., or as a Nom. by supplying *crēdendum est* or *crēdibili est*. Thus the first example becomes: *I grieve (dōlen) that you, etc.,* and the second becomes: *Is it to be supposed (crēdendum est) that I vanquished, etc.*

3. **IMPASSIONED QUESTIONS.**—This construction is most frequent in impassioned questions, as in the second example.

IV. As Ablative Absolute. See 431. 4.

V. To express Purpose:

Pōcūs ēgit altos visēre montes, *He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Non pōpūlāre pēnātes vēnlīmus, *We have not come to lay waste your homes.* Virg.

This construction is confined to poetry.

VI. Poetic Infinitive for Gerund. See 563. 6.

SECTION IX.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

554. Subject and Object Clauses, in which, as we have just seen (549 and 550), the Infinitive is so freely used, assume four distinct forms:

I. **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**—These represent the Subject or Object as *Interrogative* in character:

Quaeritur, cur dissentiant, *It is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid agendum sit, nescio, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic. See 525.

II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—These have simply the force of Nouns, merely supplying the place of the Nominative, or the Accusative:

Antēcēlēre contigit, *It was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened).
 Cic. Magna nēgōtia vōluit āgōrē, *He wished to achieve great undertakings*.
 Cic. See 549, 550.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.—These clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne*, etc., are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then involve Purpose or Result:

Contigit ut patriam vindicāret, *It was his good fortune to save his country*. Nep. Vōlo ut mihi respondeas, *I wish you would answer me*. Cic. See 492, 495.

Here *ut—vindicāret* is at once subject and result: it was his good fortune to save his country, or his good fortune was such that he saved his country. In the second example, *ut—respondeas* expresses not only the object desired, but also the purpose of the desire.

IV. CLAUSES WITH QUOD.—These again are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then either give prominence to the fact stated, or present it as a Ground or Reason:

Bēnēfīcium est quod nēcessē est mōri, *It is a blessing that it is necessary to die*. Sen. Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (because) I have interrupted you*. Cic. See 520.

Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark:

Quod me Agāmemnōnem aemilāri pūtas, fallēris, *As to the fact that you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken*. Nep.

I. FORMS OF SUBJECT CLAUSES.

555. INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are interrogative in character, of course take the form of indirect questions. See 525. 2 and 554. I.

556. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are not interrogative, with some predicates take the form of Infinitive clauses, or clauses with *quod*; while with other predicates they take the form of Subjunctive clauses with *ut*, *ne*, etc. Thus,

I. With most impersonal verbs and with predicates consisting of *est* with a Noun or Adjective, the Subject may be supplied (1) by the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative, or, (2) if-

the fact is to be made prominent or adduced as a reason, by a clause with *quod*:

Me poenitet vixisse, I regret that I have lived. Cic. *Quod te offendit me poenitet, I regret that (or because) I have offended you.* Cic.

1. **SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.**—*Mos est, mōris est, consuētūdo est, consuetudinis est, It is a custom, etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:*

Mos est hōmīnum ut nōlīnt, It is a custom of men that they are not willing. Cic.

2. **ADJECTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.**—*Rēliquum est, proxīmum est, extrēmū est—vērum est, vērisimile est, falsum est—glōriōsum est, mirum est, optimum est, etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:*

Rēliquum est ut certēmus, it remains that we contend. Cic. *Vērum est ut bōnos dilligant, It is true that they love the good.* Cic.

II. With Impersonal verbs signifying to *happen*—accidit, contingit, evēnit, fit—*ut, ut non*, with the Subjunctive, is generally used (495. 2):

Thrāsybūlo contigit, ut patriam vindicāret, It was the good fortune of Thrasybulus (happened to him) to deliver his country. Nep.

1. Here belong *accēdit ut, est ut, futūrum esse ut*, or *fōrē ut*. See 544.

2. Clauses with *quod* also occur with verbs of happening.

III. With Impersonal verbs signifying *it follows, remains, is distant*, and the like, the Subjunctive clause with *ut* is generally used:

Rēlinquitur, ut quiescāmus, It remains that we should submit. Cic. See 495. 2.

IV. Subjunctive clause standing alone. See 495. 2. 2).

II. FORMS OF OBJECT CLAUSES.

557. **INTERROGATIVE.**—Object clauses which are interrogative in character, of course, take the form of indirect questions. See 554. I.

558. **NOT INTERROGATIVE.**—Object clauses which are not interrogative in character, supplying the place of direct objects after transitive verbs, sometimes take the form of Infinitive clauses, sometimes of Subjunctive clauses, and sometimes of clauses with *quod*. Thus,

I. Verbs of DECLARING take,

1. Regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. See 551. I.

2. But the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, when they involve a command:

Dōlibellae dixit, ut ad me scribēret ut in Itāliam vēnirem, *He told Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy.* Cic. See 492. 2.

II. Verbs of DETERMINING, *stātuo, cōstituo, dēcerno*, and the like, take,

1. Generally the Infinitive, when the subject is the same as that of the principal verb, rarely the Subjunctive:

Mānēre dēcrēvit, *He determined to remain.* Nep. Stātuērunt, ut libertātem dēfendērent, *They determined to defend liberty.* Cic. See 551. II.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (expressed or understood), when a new subject is introduced:

Constitūērat, ut trībūnus quērērētur, *He had arranged that the tribunes should enter the complaint.* Sall. Sēnātus dēcrēvit, dārent ḥpēram cōstūlēs, *The senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. See 492. 3.

Sītuo, dēcerno, etc., when they mean *to think, deem, suppose, etc.*, become *verba sentiendi* (551. I. 1), and of course take the infinitive:

Laudem sāpientiae stātuo esse maximam, *I deem it to be the highest praise of wisdom.* Cic.

III. Verbs of STRIVING, ENDEAVORING, take the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See 492. 1. But *contendo, nītor, stūdeo*, and *tento*, generally take the Infinitive when the subject is the same:

Lōcum oppugnāre contendit, *He proceeds to storm the city.* Caes. Tentābo de hoc dīcēre, *I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint. See 552.

IV. Verbs of CAUSING, MAKING, ACCOMPLISHING, take the Subjunctive with *ut, ne, ut non.* See 492, 495.

1. EXAMPLES.—*Fācio, effīcio, perfīcio—ādipiscor, impetro—assēquor, consēquor*, and sometimes *fēro*, are examples of verbs of this class.

2. FACIO AND EFFICIO.—*Fācio* in the sense of *assume, suppose*, takes the Infinitive; *effīcio* in the sense of *prove, show*, either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive with *ut*, etc.:

Fac ānimos non rēmānēre post mortem, *Assume that souls do not survive after death.* Cic. Vult effīcēre ānimos esse mortāles, *He wishes to show that souls are mortal.* Cic.

V. Verbs of EMOTION OR FEELING, whether of joy or sorrow, take,

1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative, to express the Object in view of which the feeling is exercised. See 551. III.

2. Clauses with *quod*, to make more prominent the Reason for the feeling:

Gādeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (or because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. Dōlēbam quod sōciūm āmisēram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See 520. I.

For VERBS OF DESIRING, see 551. II. 2.

VI. Verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, ADVISING, WARNING, COM-

MANDING, and the like, take the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Oro ut hōmīnes mīsēros conserves, *I implore that you would preserve the unhappy men.* Cic. Postūlant ut signum detur, *They demand that the signal be given.* Liv. See 492. 2.

1. EXAMPLES.—Verbs of this class are numerous—the following are examples: ὄρε, ῥόγο, πέτο, πρέσσο, οἰδέσκω—φλάγιτο, ποστύλο, πραεῖπο—hortor, μόνεο, συαίδεο—impello, incito, μόνεο, commōveo.

2. USED AS VERBA DECLARANDI.—Some of these verbs in particular significations become *verba declarandi* (551. 2), and accordingly take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: thus μόνεο, in the sense of *remind* and *persuadēo* in the sense of *convince*.

3. INFINITIVE.—Even in their ordinary significations some of these verba, especially *hortor*, *mόνεο*, and *postūlo*, sometimes take the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative:

Postūlat se absolvī, *He demands that he should be acquitted.* Clu. See 551. II. 1 and 2.

The Infinitive is much more common in poetry than in prose.

SECTION X.

GERUND.

559. The Gerund is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers, as a noun it is itself governed.

560. The Gerund has four cases: Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, governed like nouns in the same situation:

Bēste vīvendi cūpīdītāte incensi sūmus, *We are animated with the desire of living happily.* Cic. Charta iūtīlis scribendo, *paper unfit for writing.* Plin. Ad āgendum nātus, *born for action.* Cic. In āgendo, *in acting.* Cic.

1. ACCUSATIVE.—The Accusative of the Gerund is used only after Prepositions.

2. GERUND AND INFINITIVE.—The gerund and the infinitive are kindred forms, expressing the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun (196. II.). They are also complements of each other, the one supplying the parts which are wanting in the other. Thus the infinitive supplies the nominative and the accusative after verbs (548); the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, and ablative, and the accusative after prepositions.

561. Gerunds with Direct Objects are regularly used only in the Genitive and in the Ablative without a preposition:

Jus vōcandi sēnātūm, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Injūriās fērendo laudem mērēbēris, *You will merit praise by bearing wrongs.* Cic.

562. GERUNDIVE.—The place of the Gerund with a Direct Object is supplied by putting that object in the case of the Gerund and changing the latter into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with it. The participle is then called a *Gerundive*:

Inīta sunt consilia urbis dēlendae = urbem dēlendi, Plans have been formed for destroying the city (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. Nūma sācerdōtibus creāndis ūlūmum adjēcīt, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests. Liv.*

1. EXPLANATION.—With the Gerund, the first example would be: *Inīta sunt consilia urbum dēlendi*, in which *dēlendi* is governed by *consilia*, and *urbem* by *dēlendi*. In changing this to the Gerundive construction,

1) *Urbem*, the object, is changed into *urbis*, the case of the gerund, and is governed by *consilia*.

2) *Dēlendi*, the gerund, is changed into *dēlendae*, the gerundive, in agreement with *urbis*.

2. GERUNDIVE.—For the sake of brevity, the term *Gerundive* is used not only to designate the *Participle*, but also the *Construction as a whole*, including both the participle and the noun with which it agrees.

3. USE OF GERUNDIVE.—The Gerundive may be used for the Gerund with a Direct Object, and is almost invariably so used when the Gerund would be in the Dative or would depend upon a preposition. But see 563. 2.

But in a few instances the Gerund with a Direct Object occurs in the Dative or dependent upon a preposition. See 564. 1; 565. 2; and 566. 2.

4. GERUNDIVES OF UTOR, FRUOR, ETC.—In general only the gerundives of transitive verbs are used with their nouns as equivalents for Gerunds with Direct Objects; but the gerundives of *utor*, *fruor*, *fugor*, *pōtiōr*, and *sesor*, originally transitive verbs, admit this construction:

Ad mūnus fungendum, for discharging the duty. Cic. Spes pōtiundōrum castrōrum, the hope of getting possession of the camp. Caes.

5. PASSIVE SENSE.—In a few instances, the Gerund has in appearance a passive sense:

Nēque hābent propriam percipiendi nōtam, Nor have they any proper mark of distinction, i. e., to distinguish them. Cic.

I. GENITIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

563. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives:

GERUND.—*Ars vīvendi, the art of living. Cic. Stūdiūsus ērat audiendi, He was desirous of hearing. Nep. Jus vīcandi sēnātūm, the right of summoning the senate. Liv. Cūplidus te audiendi, desirous of hearing you. Cic.*

GERUNDIVE.—*Lībido ejus vīdendi, the desire of seeing him. Cic. Plātōnis stūdiūsus audiendi fuit, He was fond of hearing Plato. Cic.*

1. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive occurs most frequently—

1) With *ars*, *scientia*, *consuetudo*,—*cūpīdītas*, *libido*, *stūdīum*, *consiliūm*, *vōlūptas*, *spes*,—*pōtestas*, *fācūltas*, *dīffīcūltas*, *occāsio*, *tempus*,—*gēnūs*, *mōdūs*, *rātio*,—*causa*, *grātia*, etc.

2) With adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *recollection*, and their *opposites*: *avīdus*, *cūplīdus*, *stūdiōsus*—*conscius*, *gnārus*, *ignārus*—*pērītus*, *impērītus*, *insuētus*, etc.

2. GERUND PREFERRED.—A gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object should not be changed to the participial construction, because the latter could not distinguish the gender:

Artem vēra ac fāsa dijūdicandi, *the art of distinguishing true things from the false*. Cic.

3. GERUND WITH GENITIVE.—The Gerund in the Genitive sometimes assumes so completely the force of a noun as to govern the Genitive instead of the Accusative:

Rejiciendi jūdīcum pōtestas, *the power of challenging (of) the judges*. Cic.

Here *rejiciendi* may be governed by *pōtestas*, and may itself by its substantive force govern *jūdīcum*, the challenging of the judges, etc. But these and similar forms in *di* are sometimes explained not as Gerunds but as Gerundives, like Gerundives with *mei*, *nostri*, etc. See 4 below.

4. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH MEI, NOSTRI, ETC.—With the Genitive of personal pronouns—*mei*, *nostri*, *tui*, *vestri*, *sui*—the participle ends in *di* without reference to Number or Gender:

Cōpia plācandi tui (*of a woman*), *an opportunity of appeasing you*. Ov.
Sui conservandi causa, *for the purpose of preserving themselves*. Cic.
Vestri adhortandi causa, *for the purpose of exhorting you*. Liv.

This apparent irregularity may be accounted for by the fact that these genitives, though used as Personal Pronouns, are all strictly in form in the neuter singular of the Possessives *meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, etc., hence the participle in *di* agrees with them perfectly.

5. PURPOSE.—The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is sometimes used to express Purpose or Tendency:

Haec trādendae Hannibāli victōriæ sunt, *These things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal*. Liv.
Lēges pellendi clāros viros, *laws for driving away illustrious men*. Tac.
Prōfīcīscūtur cognoscendae antiquitatis,
He sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity. Tac.

This genitive is sometimes best explained as Predicate Genitive (401), as in the first example; sometimes as dependent upon a noun, as *pellendi* dependent upon *lēges* in the second example; and sometimes simply as a Genitive of Cause (398, 409. 4), as in the third example; though in such cases, especially in the second and third, *causa* may be supplied.

6. INFINITIVE FOR GERUND.—The Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is often used in the poets with nouns and adjectives, sometimes even in prose:

Cūpido Stȳgios innūre lācus, *the desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes*. Virg.
Avīdus committēre pugnam, *eager to engage battle*. Ovid.

II. DATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

564. The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative :

GERUND.—*Quum solvendo non essent, Since they were not able to pay*
Cic. *Aqua utilis est bibendo, Water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

GERUNDIVE.—*Löcum oppido condendo cępērunt, They selected a place*
for founding a city. Liv. *Tempora dēmētendis fructibus accommōdāta,*
seasons suitable for gathering fruits. Cic.

1. GERUND.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare and confined mostly to late writers ; with an object it is almost without example.

2. GERUNDIVE OF PURPOSE.—In Livy, Tacitus, and late writers, the Dative of the Gerundive often denotes purpose :

Firmandae vālētūdīi in Campāniā concessit, He withdrew into Cam-
pania to confirm his health. Tac.

3. GERUNDIVE WITH OFFICIAL NAMES.—The Dative of the Gerundive also stands after certain official names, as *dēcēmōtri, triumōtri, comītīa :*

Dēcēmvīros lēgībus scribēndis crēavīmus, We have appointed a commit-
tee of ten to prepare laws. Liv. But the Dative is perhaps best explained as dependent upon the verb.

III. ACCUSATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

565. The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used after a few prepositions :

GERUND.—*Ad discendum prōpensi sūmus, We are inclined to learn* (to learning). Cic. *Inter lūdendum, in or during play.* Quint.

GERUNDIVE.—*Ad cōlēndos agros, for cultivating the fields.* Cic. *Ante condēdam urbēm, before the founding of the city.* Liv.

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The Accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *ad* ; sometimes after *inter* and *ob* ; very rarely after *ante*, *circa*, and *in*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—The accusative of a gerund with a direct object sometimes occurs, but is rare :

Ad placandum deos pertinet, It tends to appease the gods. Cic.

3. PURPOSE.—With verbs of *giving, permitting, leaving, taking, etc.*, the purpose of the action is sometimes denoted by the Gerund with *ad*, or by the Gerundive in agreement with a noun :

Ad Imītandum mihi prōpōltūm exemplar illud, That model has been set
before me for imitation. Cic. *Attribuit Itāliam vastandam (for ad vastan-*
dūm) Cătilīnæ, He assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage (to be ravaged). Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF GERUNDS OR GERUNDIVES.

566. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used,

I. As Ablative of Means or Instrument:

GERUND.—*Mens discendo àllitur, The mind is nourished by learning.* Cic.
Sálutem hóminibús dando, by giving safety to men. Cic.

GERUNDIVE.—*Légendis óratoribús, by reading the oratores.* Cic.

II. With Prepositions :

GERUND.—*Virtutes cernuntur in ágendo, Virtues are seen in action.* Cic.
Déterrere a sribendo, to deter from writing. Cic.

GERUNDIVE.—*Brátus in libéranda patria est interfectus, Brutus was slain in liberating his country.* Cic.

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *in*; sometimes after *a* (*ab*), *de*, *ex* (*e*); very rarely after *cum* and *pro*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—After prepositions, the ablative of the gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare :

In tribuendo suum culque, in giving every one his own. Cic.

3. WITHOUT A PREPOSITION, the ablative of the gerund or gerundive denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time*, *separation*, etc. :

Inclpiendo rëfugi, I drew back in the very beginning. Cic.

SECTION XI.

SUPINE.

567. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases, as a noun it is itself governed.

568. The Supine has but two cases : the Accusative in *um* and the Ablative in *u*.

RULE L.—Supine in Um.

569. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE :

Légati vénérunt res rëpétitum, Deputies came to demand restitution. Liv.
Ad Caesárem congrátulárum convénérunt, They came to Caesar to congratulate him. Caes.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion :

Filiam Agrippae nuptum dedit, He gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa. Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally :

Bónos omnes perditum eunt, They are going to destroy all the good. Sall.

But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is often used for the simple verb :

Ultum ire, (= uicisci) injúrias festinat, He hastens to avenge the injuries. Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *iri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*, forms, it will be remembered (315, III. 1), the Future Passive Infinitive :

Brútum visum iri a me puto, I think Brutus will be seen by me. Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* as an expression of purpose is not very common, its place is often supplied even after verbs of motion by other constructions :

1) By *ut* or *qui* with the Subjunctive. See 489.

2) By Gerunds or Gerundives. See 563. 5; 564. 2; 565. 3.

3) By Participles. See 578. V.

570. The Supine in *u* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (429) :

Quid est tam jucundum auditu, What is so agreeable to hear (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictu est, It is difficult to tell. Cic.

1. The Supine in *u* is used chiefly with—*jucundus, optimus—fæcilia, præclivia, difficilis—incredibilis, mémorabilis—honestus, turpis, faa, nefas—dignus, indignus—opus est.*

2. The Supine in *u* is very rare, and does not occur with an object. The only examples in common use are : *auditu, cognitu, dictu, and factu.*

3. As the Supine in *u* is little used, its place is supplied by other constructions :

1) By *ad* with the Gerund: *Verba ad audiendum jucunda, words agreeable to hear.* Cic.

2) By the Infinitive: *Facile est vincere, It is easy to conquer.* Cic.

3) By a Finite Mood with an adverb: *Non facile dijudicatur amor fictus, Pretended love is not easy to detect* (is not easily detected). Cic.

SECTION XII.

PARTICIPLES.

I. TENSES OF PARTICIPLES.

571. Participles, like Infinitives, express only relative time, and represent the action as Present, Past, or Future, relatively to the principal verb.

PECULIARITIES.—Tenses in Participles present the leading peculiarities specified under the corresponding tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

572. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—The present participle represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Oculus se non videntis alia cernit, The eye, though it does not see itself (not

seeing itself), *discerns other things*. Cic. *Plato scribens mortuus est, Plato died while writing*. Cic.

573. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.—The future active participle represents the action as about to take place, in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Sapiens bōna semper plāctūra laudat, The wise man praises blessings which will always please (being about to please). Sen.

But the Future Passive generally loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is often best rendered by a verbal noun. See 562 and 580.

574. PERFECT PARTICIPLE.—The perfect participle represents the action as completed at the time of the principal verb.

Uva mātūrāta dulcescit, The grape, when it has ripened (having ripened), *becomes sweet*. Cic.

1. The Perfect Participle, both in Deponent and in Passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in Passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun. See 590.

2. For the Participle with *h̄d̄bea*, see 888. 1. 2).

II. USE OF PARTICIPLES.

575. Participles are verbs in force, but Adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs they govern oblique cases, as adjectives they agree with nouns :

Anīmus se non vīdens ālia cernit, The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things. Cic.

1. Participles in the Present or Perfect, rarely in the Future, may be used as adjectives or nouns: *scripta ep̄istola*, a written letter; *mortuī*, the dead. Participles with the force of adjectives may be used as predicate adjectives with *sum*: *occupātērānt*, they were occupied; as a verb, *had been occupied*.

576. Participles are used to abridge or shorten discourse by supplying the place of finite verbs with relatives or conjunctions. They are used with much greater freedom in Latin than in English.

577. PARTICIPLE FOR RELATIVE CLAUSE.—In abridged sentences, the Participle often supplies the place of a Relative Clause :

Omnis aliud agentes, aliud simulantem improbi sunt, *All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

578. FOR OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Participle often supplies the place of a subordinate clause with a conjunction. It may express,

I. Time :

Plato scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Ituri in proelium canunt, *They sing when about to go into battle.* Tac.

II. Cause, Manner, Means :

Sol dicens diem conficit, *The sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Milites renuntiant, se perfidiam veritos revertisse, *The soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy (having feared).* Caes.

III. Condition :

Mendaci homini ne verum quidem dicenti credere non solamus, *We are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Reluctante natura, irritus labor est, *If nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen.

IV. Concession :

Scripta tua jam diu exspectans, non audeo tamen flagitare, *Though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

V. Purpose :

Perseus rediit, bellum casum tentatus, *Perseus returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.* Liv. Attribuit nos trucidandos Cethego, *He assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

579. PARTICIPLE FOR PRINCIPAL CLAUSE.—The Participle sometimes supplies the place of a principal or coördinate clause, and may accordingly be best rendered by a finite verb with *and* or *but*:

Classem devictam cepit, *He conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep. Re consentientes vocibus differabant, *They agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

580. PARTICIPLE FOR VERBAL NOUN.—The Passive Participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of*:

In amicis eligendis, *in selecting friends.* Cic. Homer fuit ante Romanam conditam, *Homer lived (was) before the founding of Rome* (before Rome founded). Cic.

581. PARTICIPLE WITH NEGATIVE.—The Participle

with a negative, as *non, nihil*, is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without*:

Misérum est, nihil prōficientem angi, *It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything.* Cic. Non erubescens, *without blushing.* Cic.



CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sapientes fēliciter vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Fācile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. Haud aliter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

583. Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns:

1. When the nouns are used with the force of adjectives or participles:

Mīlme largitor dux, *a leader by no means liberal.* Liv. Pōpulus lītē rex, *a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively).* Virg.

2. When in sense a participle or verb may be supplied:

Mārius, plāne vir, *Marius, truly a man.* Cic. Omnes circa pōpūli, *all the surrounding peoples.* Liv. See also 353. 2.

584. The Common Negative Particles are: *non, ne,* *haud.*

1. *Non* is the usual negative, *ne* is used in prohibitions, wishes and purposes (489), and *haud*, in *haud scio an* and with adjectives and adverbs; *haud mīrābile*, not wonderful; *haud dīler*, not otherwise. *Nī* for *ne* is rare. *Ne non* after *vīdē* is often best rendered *whether.*

2. In *non mōdo non* and in *non sōlum non*, the second *non* is generally omitted before *sed*, or *vērum*, followed by *ne—quidem* or *vix* (rarely *dīlam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first:

Assentātio non mōdo āmīca, sed ne libēro quidem digna est. *Flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man.* Cic.

3. *Minus* often has nearly the force of *non*; *si minus = si non.* *Sin dīler* has nearly the same force as *si minus.*

585. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English:

Nihil non arrōget, *Let him claim everything.* Hor. Nēque hoc Zēno non vīdet, *Nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. *Non* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative:

Nonnēmo, *some one;* nonnihil, *something;* nonnunquam, *sometimes.*

Nēmo non, *every one;* nihil non, *every thing;* nunquam non, *always.*

2. After a general negative, *ne—quidem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *nēque—nēque, nēve—nēve,* and the like, repeat the negation distributively:

Non prætērēendum est ne id quidem. *We must not pass by even this.* Cic. Nēmo unquam nēque poēta nēque orātor fuit, *No one was ever either a poet or orator.* Cic.

3. *Sic* and *ita* mean *so, thus.* *Ita* has also a limiting sense in *so far* which does not belong to *sic*, as in *ita—sī* (308. 4). *Adeo*, to such a degree or result; *tam, tantopēra,* so much, *tam* used mostly before adjectives and adverbs, and *tantopēra* before verba.

586. For the use of Prepositions, see 432 to 437.

587. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (309). They comprise five classes:

I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union :

Castor et Pollux, *Castor and Pollux.* Cic. Sēnātus pōpūlusque, *the senate and people.* Cic. Nec ērat diffīcile, *Nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. **LIST.** See 810. 1.

2. **DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.**—*Et* simply connects; *que* implies a more intimate relationship; *atque* generally gives prominence to what follows, especially at the beginning of a sentence; *ac*, abbreviated from *atque*, has generally the force of *et.* *Nēque* and *nec* have the force of *et non.* *Et* and *ētiam* sometimes mean *even.*

Atque and *ac* generally mean *as, than* after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness; *similis, dissimilis, similiter, par, páriter, aequē, alīna, alīter, sēcūs: aequē ac,* equally as; *dīlīter atque,* otherwise than. See also 451. 5.

3. **Qu, AC, ATQUE.**—*Qu* is an enclitic, i. e., is always appended to some other word. *Ac* in the best prose is used only before consonants; *atque*, either before vowels or consonants.

4. **ETIAM, QUOCQUE, ADEO,** and the like, are sometimes associated with *et, atque, ac,* and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quocque* follows the word which it connects: *is quocque, he also.* *Etiam*, also, further, even, is more comprehensive than *quocque* and often adds a new circumstance.

5. **CORRELATIVES.**—Sometimes two copulatives are used: *et (que)—et (que), tum—tum, quum—tum, both—and;* but *quum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause; *non sōlūm (non mōdo, or non tantum)—sed etiam (vērum etiam), not only—but also;* *nēque (nec)—nēque (nec), neither—nor;* *nēque (nec)—et (que), not—but (and);* *et—nēque (nec), (both)—and not.*

6. **OMITTED.**—Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or

omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pax et tranquillitas et concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordiaque*.

Et is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *non*.

II. Disjunctive Conjunctions denote separation :

Aut vestra aut sua culpa, either your fault, or his own. Liv. *Duabus tribus hōris, in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 810. 2.

2. **AUT, VEL, VE.**—*Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut vērum aut fālēum*, either true or false. *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective and is often followed by *pōtius. etiām or dīcam: laudātur vel etiām dīmātur*, he is praised, or even (rather) loved. It sometimes means *even* and sometimes *for example*. *Vēlūt* often means *for example*. *Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *non hōnor aut virtus*, neither (not) honor nor virtue.

3. **SIVE (SI—VE)** does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, Pallas or Minerva (another name of the same goddess).

III. Adversative Conjunctions denote opposition or contrast :

Cūpīo me esse clēmentum, sed me inertiae condēmno, I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction. Cic.

1. LIST. See 810. 8.

2. **DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.**—*Sed* and *tērūm* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vēro* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atqui* often introduces an objection; *cēlērum*, but still, as to the rest; *tamen*, yet.

3. **COMPOUNDS OF TAMEN** are: *attāmen, sedtāmen, vēruntāmen*, but yet.

4. **AUTEM** and **VERO** follow the words which they connect: *hic autem, hic vēra*, but this one. They are often omitted, especially before *non*. They are admissible with *qui* only when it is followed by its antecedent.

IV. Illative Conjunctions denote inference :

In umbra igitur pugnābimus, We shall therefore fight in the shade. Cic.

1. LIST. See 810. 4.

2. **OTHER WORDS.**—Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives: *eo, ideo, idcirco, proptērea, quamobrem, quāpropter, quāre, quōcīrca*.

3. **IGITUR.**—This generally follows the word which it connects: *hic igitur, this one therefore*. After a digression *igitur, sed, sed tāmen, vērum, tērūm tāmen, etc.*, are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered *I say: Sed si quis; if any one, I say.*

V. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Difficile est consilium: sum ēnim sōlus, Counsel is difficult, for I am alone. Cic. *Etēnīm jus āmant, For they love the right.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 810. 5.

2. **ETENIM** and **NAMQUE** denote a closer connection than *enim* and *nam*.

3. **ENIM** follows its word.

588. Subordinate Conjunctions connect subordinate with principal constructions (309. II.). They comprise eight classes.

I. Temporal Conjunctions denote time :

Pāruit quum nēcessē ērat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic. Dum ēgo in Sicilia sum, *while I am in Sicily.* Cic. See also 311. 1; 521-523.

1. **Dum** added to a negative means *yet*; *nondum*, not yet; *vixdum*, scarcely yet.

II. Comparative Conjunctions denote comparison :

Ut optasti, Ita est, *It is as you desired.* Cic. Vēlūt si ādesset, *as if he were present.* Caes. See also 311. 2; 503, 506.

1. **CORRELATIVES** are often used: Tam—quam, *as, so—as, as much as*; tam—quam quod maxime, *as much as possible*; non minus—quam, *not less than*; non māgis—quam, *not more than*.

Tam—quam and *ut—ita* with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by *the* with the comparative : *ut maxime—ita maxime*, the more—the more.

III. Conditional Conjunctions denote condition :

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Nisi est conellū dōmi, *unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic. See also 311. 3; 503, 507.

1. *Nisi*, if not, in negative sentences often means *except*, and *nisi quod*, except that, may be used even in affirmative sentences. *Nisi* may mean *than*. *Nihil dīlud nisi* = nothing further (more, except); *nihil dīlud quam* = nothing else (other than).

IV. Concessive Conjunctions denote concession :

Quamquam intelligunt, *though they understand.* Cic. Etsi nihil hābeat, *although he has nothing.* Cic. See also 311. 4; 515, 516.

V. Final Conjunctions denote purpose :

Esse ḫportet, ut vivas, *It is necessary to eat, that you may live.* Cic. See also 311. 5; 489-499.

VI. Consecutive Conjunctions denote consequence or result :

Atticus Ita vixit, ut Athēniensib⁹ esset cārissimus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. See also 311. 6; 489-499.

VII. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Quae quum Ita sint, *Since these things are so.* Cic. See also 311. 7; 517, 518.

VIII. Interrogative Conjunctions or Particles denote inquiry or question :

Quaesiēras, nonne pūtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. See also 311. 8; 346. II., 525. 526.

IV. INTERJECTIONS.

589. Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, as *eheu*, alas! and sometimes with certain cases of nouns. See 381 and 381. 3.

590. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections. Thus:

Pax (peace), be still! *miserum, miserable, sad, lamentable!* *ōro, pray!*
āge, āgite, come, will! *mehercūles, by Hercules!* *per deum fidem, in the name of the gods!* *sōdes = si audes (for audies), if you will hear!*

CHAPTER VII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

591. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body. The enclosed numerals refer to the various articles in the work where the several topics are more fully discussed.

NOUNS.

AGREEMENT.

I. A PREDICATE NOUN denoting the same person or thing as its Subject, agrees with it in CASE (362):

Ego sum nuntius, I am a messenger. Liv.

II. An APPPOSITIVE agrees with its Subject in CASE (363):

Chiliius rex mōritur, Chiliius the king dies. Liv.

NOMINATIVE.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nomina-tive (367):

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv.

VOCATIVE.

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

Perge, Laeli, Proceed, Laelius. Clc.

ACCUSATIVE.

V. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative (371) :

Deus mundum aedificavit, *God made the world.* Cic.

VI. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373) :

Hamilcārem imp̄rātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep.

VII. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive (374) :

Me sententiam rōgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic.

VIII. DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative (378) :

Septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *He reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv.
Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *to walk five miles.* Cic.

IX. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative (379) :

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

X. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application (380) :

Cāpita vēlāmur, *We have our heads veiled.* Virg. Nūbe hūmēros amictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud.* Hor.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an Interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381) :

Heu me mīsērum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic.

DATIVE.

XII. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative (384) :

Tempōri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic.

Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage (385).

Dative with Compounds (386).

Dative of Possessor (387).

Dative of Apparent Agent (388).

Ethical Dative (389).

RULES OF SYNTAX.

wo Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OB-
JECT—occur with a few verbs (390):

im̄nibus āvāritiā, *Avarice is (for) an evil to men.* Cic.

With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality
is put in the Dative (391):

irum est, *It is dear to all.* Cic.

Few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the
the analogy of their primitives (392):

tio lēgib⁹s, *obedience to the laws.* Cic. Congruenter nātū-
o nature. Cic.

GENITIVE.

ny noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the
another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

tiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic.

Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete
ing (399):

dis, *desirous of praise.* Cic.

A Predicate Noun denoting a different person
n its Subject, is put in the Genitive (401):

tium ērant, *All things belonged to (were of) the enemy.* Liv.

he Genitive is used (406),

isēreor and misēresco :

ibōrum, *pity the labors.* Virg.

ēcordor, mēmīni, rēmīniscor, and obliviscor :

aetēritōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic.

rēfert and intērest :

aniūm, *It is the interest of all.* Cic.

Few verbs take the Accusative of the Person
itive of the Thing (410):

of Reminding, Admonishing :

te commōnēfācit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic.

of Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting :

ris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic.

sēret, Poenitet, Pūdet, Taedet, and Piget :

misēret, *We pity them.* Cic.

For the *Genitive of Place*, see Rule XXVI.

ABLATIVE.

XXI. CAUSE, MANNER, and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative (414) :

Utilitate laudatur, *It is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic.

XXII. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative (416) :

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg.

XXIII. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative (417) :

Nihil est amabilius virtute, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.

XXIV. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative (418) :

Uno die longior, *longer by one day.* Cic.

XXV. The Ablative is used (419),

I. With *tūtor*, *fruor*, *fugor*, *pōtior*, *vescor*, and their compounds:

Plurīmis rēbus fruīmur, *We enjoy very many things.* Cic.

II. With *fido*, *confido*, *nitor*, *innitor*:

Sālus vēritate nītūr, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT:

Non ēgeo mēdiciña, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic.

IV. With *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, and *frētus*:

Digni sunt amicitia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

V. With *ōpus* and *ūsus*:

Auctoritātē tua nōbis ōpus est, *We need your authority.* Cic.

XXVI. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative (421) :

In Itālia fuit, *He was in Italy.* Nep. Ex Afrīca, *from Africa.* Liv.
Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

XXVII. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition (425) :

Oriundi ab Sabinis, *descended from the Sabines.* Liv. Caedem a vobis depello, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Cic.

XXVIII. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative (426) :

Octogesimo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic.

XXIX. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing (428) :

Summa virtute adolescens, *a youth of the highest virtue.* Caes.

XXX. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application (429) :

Nomine, non potestate fuit rex, *He was king in name, not in power.* Nep.

XXXI. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE (431) :

Servio regnante, *in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

XXXII. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions (432) :

Ad amicum, *to a friend.* Cic. In Italia, *in Italy.* Nep.

ADJECTIVES.

XXXIII. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438) :

Fortuna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

PRONOUNS.

XXXIV. A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445) :

Animal, quod sanguinem habet, *an animal which has blood.* Cic.

VERBS.

AGREEMENT.

XXXV. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460) :

Ego reges ejeci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

XXXVI. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES.

XXXVII. Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical, upon Historical (480):

Nititur ut vincat, He strives to conquer. Cic. *Quaesieras nonne pătam rem, You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

XXXVIII. The POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE represents the action not as real, but as *possible* (485):

Forsitan quaeratis, perhaps you may inquire. Cic.

XXXIX. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE represents the action not as real, but as *desired* (487):

Vſeant cives, May the citizens be well. Cic.

XL. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE or RESULT is used (489),

I. With *ut, ne, quo, quin, quōminus:*

Enititur ut vincat, He strives that he may conquer. Cic.

II. With *qui = ut si, ut ēgo, tu, etc.:*

Missi sunt, qui (ut si) consilient Apollinem, They were sent to consult Apollo. Nep.

XLI. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION is used (503),

I. With *dum, mōdo, dummōdo:*

Mōdo permāeat industria, if only industry remains. Cic.

II. With *ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vēlūt, vēlūt si:*

Vēlūt si ādasset, as if he were present. Caes.

III. Sometimes with *si, nīsi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis:*

Si vēlim nūmērāre, if I should wish to recount. Cic.

XLII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONCESSION is used (515),

I. With *licet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, ne, quum, although:*

Licet irrideat, though he may deride. Cie.

II. With **qui** = **quum** (*licet*) **is**, **quum** **ego**, etc., though he:
Absolvite Verrem, qui (quum is) fateatur, Acquit Verres, though he confesses. Cic.

III. Generally with **etiam**, **tametsi**, **etiamsi**:
Etsi optimum sit, even if (though) it be most excellent. Cic.

XLIII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON is used (517),

I. With **quum** (*cum*), since; **qui** = **quum** **is**, etc.
Quum vita mētus plēna sit, since life is full of fear. Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Quod corrumpēret jūventūtem, because (on the ground that) he corrupted the youth. Quint.

XLIV. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or PURPOSE is used (521),

I. With **dum**, **dōneō**, **quoad**, until:

Exspectas, dum dicat, You are waiting till he speaks, i. e., that he may speak. Cic.

II. With **antēquam**, **priusquam**, before:

Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, before I (can) speak of the republic. Cic.

XLV. The Subjunctive is used in INDIRECT QUESTIONS (525):

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain. Cic.

XLVI. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive (527):

Vēreor, ne, dum mīnuēre vōlím lābōrem, augeam, I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it. Cic.

XLVII. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the Oratio Obliqua (529):

Respondit, cur vēniret, He replied, why did he come. Caes. Scribit Lābiēno vēniat, He writes to Labienus to come. Caes.

IMPERATIVE.

XLVIII. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties (535):

Justītiam cōle, Practise justice. Cic.

INFINITIVE.

XLIX. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative (545):

Sentimus călere ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Participles are construed as adjectives (575), Gerunds and Supines as nouns (559, 567). But

L. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (569):

Vénérunt res rěpétitum, *They came to demand restitution.* Liv.

PARTICLES.

LI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (582) :

Săpientes fěliciter vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic.

1. For PREPOSITIONS, see Rule XXXII.

2. CONJUNCTIONS are mere connectives. See 587 and 588.

3. INTERJECTIONS are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address.

See 589.

• • •

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

SECTION I.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

592. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

I. GENERAL RULES.

593. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place:

Sol ūriens diem conficit, *The sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Animus aeger semper errat, *A diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiādes Athēnas libērāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

594. Emphasis and euphony often affect the arrangement of words:

I. BEGINNING.—Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Silent lēges inter arma, *Laws are silent in war.* Cic. Nūmītōri Rēmus dēdītur, *Remus is delivered to Numitor.* Liv. Ignī āger vastābātur, *The field was ravaged with fire.* Sall.

II. END.—Any word, except the predicate, may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence:

Nōbis non sātisfācit ipse Dēmosthēnes, *Even Demosthenes does not satisfy us.* Cic. Consūlātūm pētīvit nūnquam, *He never sought the consulship.* Cic. Exsistit quaēdam quaestio subdifficilis, *There arises a question somewhat difficult.* Cic.

III. SEPARATION.—Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by separation:

Oījurgātiōnes nonnūnquam incidunt nēcessāriae, *Sometimes necessary re-proofs occur.* Cic. Justītiae fungātūr offīciis, *Let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

595. CONTRASTED GROUPS.—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second:

Fragile corpus ānimus sempīternus mōvet, *The imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

596. KINDEED WORDS.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other:

Ad sēnem sēnēx de sēnectāte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter se ālii ālii prōsunt, *They mutually benefit each other.* Cic.

597. WORDS WITH A COMMON RELATION.—A word which has a common relation to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed,

I. Generally before or after both :

Pacis et artes et gloria, both the arts and the glory of peace. Liv. *Belli pacisque artes, the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

A Genitive or Adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter :

Haec percutentatio ac denuntiatio belli, this inquiry and this declaration of war. Liv.

II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction :

Honoris certamen et gloriae, a struggle for honor and glory. Cic. *Agri omnes et maria, all lands and seas.* Cic.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

598. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—The modifiers of a noun generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns :

Popolus Romanus decrevit, The Roman people decreed. Cic. *Herodotus, pater historiae, Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. *Liber de officiis, the book on duties.* Cic.

1. **NOUN.**—A noun as modifier of another noun is generally an appositive, a genitive, or a case with a preposition, as in the examples.

2. **WITH EMPHASIS.**—Modifiers when emphatic are placed before their nouns :

Tuscanus ager Romano adjacet, The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman. Liv. *Cato's orations, Cato's orations.* Cic.

3. **ADJECTIVE AND GENITIVE.**—When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the usual order is, *adjective—genitive—noun* :

Magna clivium penuria, a great scarcity of citizens. Cic.

599. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.—The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it :

Facile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. *Omnis aetatis communis, common to every age.* Cic. *Avitus laudis, desirous of praise.* Cic.

600. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.—The modifiers of the verb generally precede it :

Gloria virtutem sequitur, Glory follows virtue. Cic. *Mundus deo patet, The world is subject to God.* Cic. *vehementer dixit, He spoke vehemently.* Cic. *Gloria ducitur, He is led by glory.* Cic.

1. **AFTER THE VERB.**—When the verb is placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow. See first example under 594. I.

2. **EMPHASIS.**—An emphatic modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (594):

Facillime cognoscuntur adolescentes, Most easily are the young men recognised. Cic.

3. **TWO OR MORE MODIFIERS.**—Of two or more modifiers belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

Rex Scythia bellum intulit, The king waged war against the Scythians.
Nep. Mors propter brevitatem vitae nunquam longe absit, Death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life. Cic.

601. MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.—The modifiers of the adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

Valde vehementer dixit, He spoke very vehemently. Cic. *Congruenter naturae vivit, He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

602. SPECIAL WORDS.—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus,

I. *The Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun :

Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city. Cic.

1. *Illi* in the sense of well-known (450. 5) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

Médæ illa, that well-known Medea. Cic.

2. *Quisque*, the indefinite pronoun, follows some other word:

Justitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own). Cic.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tenuis* and *versus* follow their cases:

In Asiam profugit, He fled into Asia. Cic. *Collo tenuis, up to the neck.* Ov.

1. **AFTER A PRONOUN.**—The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry :

Res qua de agitur, the subject of which we are treating. Cic. *Italiam contra, over against Italy.* Virg.

2. **CUM APPENDED.**—See 184, 9 and 187, 3.

3. **INTERVENING WORDS.**—Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Acc. of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *ōro* is omitted:

Post Alexandri magni mortem, after the death of Alexander the Great. Cic.
Ad bñne vivendum, for living well. Ola. *Per te deoē ōro, I pray you in the name of the gods.* Ter. *Per ēgo vos deos = per deos ēgo vos ōro* (*ōro understood*). *I pray you in the name of the gods.* Curt.

III. *Conjunctions and Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally

stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *enīm*, *quidem*, *quōque*, *vero*, and generally *igitur*, follow some other word:

Si peccāvi, ignosce, If I have erred, pardon me. Cic. *Ii qui sūpēriōres sunt, those who are superior.* Cic. *Ipse autem omnia vīdēbat, But he himself saw all things.* Cic.

1. **EMPHATIC WORDS and RELATIVES** often precede the conjunction.
Id ut audivit, as he heard this. Nep. *Quae quum ita sint, since these things are so.* Cic.

2. **Ns—QUIDEM** takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:
Ne in oppīdis quidem, not even in the towns. Cic.

3. **Quidem** often follows *pronouns, superlatives, and ordinals*:
Ex me quidem nīshl audiet, He will hear nothing from me. Cic.

4. **Que, ea, ne**, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word, but if that word is a monosyllabic preposition, they are often appended to the next word: *ad plēbem, for adve, etc., or to the people;* *in fōrōque = inqus fōro,* and in the forum. *Aपud quosque, and before whom, occurs for euphony.*

IV. **Non**, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word, but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it generally stands at the beginning of the clause:

Hac villa cārēre non possunt; They are not able to do without this villa. Cic. *Non fuit Jūpiter mētuendus, Jupiter was not to be feared.* Cic.

V. **Inquam**, sometimes *Aio*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb:

Nihil, inquit Brūtus, quod dicam, Nothing which I shall state, said Brutus. Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word:

Perge, Laeli, Proceed, Laelius. Cic.

SECTION II.

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

I. IN COMPLEX SENTENCES.

603. SUBJECT OR PREDICATE.—A clause used as the subject of a complex sentence (357) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the predicate at the end:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain. Cic. *Exītus fuit ḫrātiōnis: sibi nullam cum his āmīctiam esse, The close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men.* Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence. See 593.
2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as of words. See 594.

604. SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.—Clauses used as the subordinate elements of complex sentences, admit three different arrangements:

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence:

Hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt, *The enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to route.* Caes. Sententia, quae tutissima videtur, vicit, *The opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause:

Quum quiescant, probant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Quilibet sit animus, animus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, *If this is a state I am a citizen.* Cic.

This arrangement is especially common when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—qui*, *talis—quidlis*, *tantus—quantus*, *tum—quam*, *ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *qui*, *quidlis*, *quantus*, *quam*, *ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause:

Enititur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Sol efficit ut omnia florarent, *The sun causes all things to bloom.* Cic.

This arrangement is common when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence or is explanatory of the principal clause. Hence clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples. See also examples under articles 489–499.

605. LATIN PERIOD.—A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause, as under I., is called a Period in the strict sense of the word.

In a freer sense the same term is also applied to any sentence in which the clauses are so arranged as not to make complete sense before the end of the sentence. In this sense the examples under II. are periods.

II. IN COMPOUND SENTENCES.

606. Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (587) generally follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg. Gyges a nullo videtur, ipse autem omnia videt, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

PART FOURTH.

P R O S O D Y.

607. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

608. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity. Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.¹

609. The quantity of syllables is determined by poetic usage. But this usage conforms in many cases to general laws, while in other cases it seems somewhat arbitrary.

1. Syllables whose quantity conforms to known rules are said to be long or short by *rule*.
2. Syllables whose quantity does not conform to known rules are said to be long or short by *authority*.
3. The rules for quantity are either *general*, i. e., applicable to most syllables, or *special*, i. e., applicable to particular syllables.

SECTION I.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

610. RULE I.—Diphthongs and Contracted syllables are LONG :

Haec, coena, aura; *ālius* for *ālius*, *cōgo* for *cōlgo*, *occido* for *occae-*
do, *nil* for *nihil*.

1. *Pras* in composition is usually short before a vowel: *praēcūtus*, *prae*st*utus*.
2. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, are not strictly diphthongs, and accordingly do not come under this rule.

¹ Sometimes long and sometimes short.

611. RULE II.—A vowel is LONG BY POSITION before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants:¹

Major, *rēxi*, *gāza*, *mēnsa*, *servus*.

1. But one of the consonants at least must belong to the same word as the vowel: *ab rūpe*, *pēr saza*.

1) A final vowel is not usually affected by consonants at the beginning of the following word, except before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, and *st*, where a short vowel is rare.

2) *H* and *U* must never be treated as consonants under this rule,² except in rare instances where *u* is so used by Synaeresis. See 669. II.

2. Before a mute followed by *L* or *R*, a vowel naturally short becomes common: *dīplex*, *dgri*, *pātres*.

1) In Greek words a vowel is also common before a mute with *M* or *N*: *Tēcmessa*, *cīcnuſ*.

2) A mute at the end of the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part makes the preceding vowel long by position: *bb-rumpo*, *bb-rōgo*.

3) A vowel naturally long, of course, remains long before a Mute and Liquid: *ācer*, *ācriſ*.

3. Compounds of *jūgum* retain the short vowel before *j*: *bijūgus*, *quadrījūgus*.

612. RULE III.—A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is SHORT BY POSITION:

Pius, *piae*, *dōččo*, *trāho*.

No account is taken of the breathing *h*; hence *a* in *traho* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are long before a vowel:

1. **A**,—(1) in the genitive ending *āi* of Dec. I.: *aulāi*,—(2) in proper names in *āius*: *Claius* (Cajus),—(3) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iū*, in the verb *āio*.

2. **E**,—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel: *dīēi*; and sometimes in *fidēi*, *rēi*, *spēi*,—(2) in proper names in *eius*: *Pom-pēius*,—(3) in *āheu*.

3. **I**,—(1) in the verb *fīo*, when not followed by *er*: *fīam*, *fīebam*, but *fīōi*,—(2) in the genitive *ālūs*. In other genitives *i* in *ālus* is common in poetry, though long in prose, but the *i* in *altrēius* is short,—(3) in *dīus*, *a*, *um*, for *divus*, *a*, *um*,—(4) sometimes in *Dīna*.

4. **O**,—is common in *āhe*.

¹ Strictly speaking, the syllable, and not the vowel, is lengthened, but the language of convenience refers the quantity of the syllable to the vowel.

² *Qu*, *gu*, and *su*, when *u* has the sound of *w*, are treated as single consonants.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *āer*, *Aēndas*, *Briēdis*, *Mēnēlāus*, *Trēs*.

This often occurs in proper names in—*ēa*, *īa*, *ēus*, *īus*, *dōn*, *īon*, *ēis*, *īis*, *ēis*; *Mēdēa*, *Alexandria*, *Pēnēua*, *Dārius*, *Orion*.

SECTION II.

SPECIAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

I. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. Monosyllables.

613. RULE IV.—Monosyllables are long:

a, *āa*, *tā*, *sā*, *dā*, *āi*, *quī*, *dō*, *prō*, *tū*, *dōs*, *pēs*, *sīs*, *bōs*, *sūs*, *pār*, *sōl*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are short:

1. Enclitics: *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, *cē*, *tē*, *pē*, *pīē*.

2. Monosyllables in *b*, *d*, *l*, *m*, *t*: *āb*, *ād*, *fēl*, *sūm*, *ēt*; except *sōl*, *sōl*.

3. *An*, *bīs*, *cīs*, *cōr*, *ēs*, *fāc*, *fōr*, *īn*, *īs*, *nēc*, *ōs* (ossis), *pōr*, *tōr*, *quā* (indefinite), *quīs*, *vīr*; probably also *vās* (vādis), and sometimes *hēc* and *hōs* as Nom. or Acc. forms.

II. Polysyllables.

1. FINAL VOWELS.

614. RULE V.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **a**, **e**, and **y** are short; **i** and **u**, long; **o**, common:

Viā, *māriā*, *mārē*, *mīšy*; *māri*, *audi*, *fructū*, *cornū*; *āmō*, *sermō*.

615. **A** final is short: *mensā*, *templā*, *bōnā*.

EXCEPTIONS.—**A** final is long,

1. In the Ablative: *mensā*, *bōnd*, *illā*.

2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* (rarely *es*): *Aēndā*, *Pullā*.

3. In Verbs and Indeclinable words: *āmā*, *cūrā*; *cīrcā*, *jūxtā*, *antēd*, *frustrā*. Except *ītā*, *quiā*, *ējā*, and *pītā* used adverbially.

616. **E** final is short: *servē*, *urbē*, *rēgē*.

EXCEPTIONS.—**E** final is long,

1. In Dec. I. and V.: *ēpītōmē*, *re*, *diē*. Hence in the compounds—*hōdīdē*, *postrīdīdē*, *quārē*.

2. In Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *Tempē*, *mēlē*.

3. In the Sing. Imperative Act. of Conj. II.: *mōnd*, *dōd*. But *e* is sometimes short in *cāvā*.

4. In *fērē*, *fermē*, *ohē*, and in Adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II.: *doctē*, *rectē*. Except *bēnē*, *mālē*, *infernē*, *internē*, *sūpernē*.

617. V final is short: *mīsy*, *mōly*, *cōtȳ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are, of course, long: *mīy* = *mīsy*.

618. I final is long: *servī*, *bōnl*, *audi*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I final* is,

1. COMMON in *mīhl*, *tīl*, *sīl*, *īl*, *ūl*. But

Observe compounds *ūldem*, *ūlique*, *ūbique*, *ūbīnam*, *ūbīvis*, *ūbīlunque*, *nēcūbl*, *scūbl*.

2. SHORT,—(1) in *nēl*, *quāst̄*, *cūt̄* (when a dissyllable),—(2) in the Greek ending *āl* of Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *Troāst̄*,—(3) in the Dat. and Voc. Sing., which end short in the Greek: *Alexl*, *Pārldl*.

Uū follows the rule, but not the compounds, *ūtīnam*, *ūtīque*, *scūll*.

619. U final is long: *fructū*, *cornū*, *dictū*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Indū* for *in*, and *nēnū* for *non*.

620. O final is common: *āmō*, *sermō*, *virgō*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*O final* is,

1. LONG,—(1) in Datives and Ablatives: *servō*, *illō*, *quō*,—(2) in Greek words, when it represents a long Greek vowel: *ēchō*, *Argō*,—(3) in Adverbs: *faloō*, *multō*, *ergō*, *quando*, *omnīnō*; except those mentioned under 2 below.

2. SHORT in *duō*, *ēgō*, *octō*, and the adverbs *cīl*, *illōl*, *immō*, *mōdō*, and its compounds, *duimōdō*, *quōmōdō*, etc.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES IN MUTES OR LIQUIDS,—

C, D, L, M, N, R, T.

621. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable,

Final syllables in **c** are long;

Final syllables in **d**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, **t**, are short:

alec, *illūc*; *illūd*, *consūl*, *āmēm*, *carmēn*, *āmōr*, *cāpūt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following occur,

1. *Dōnēc* and *liēn*.

2. *M final* with the preceding vowel is generally elided before a vowel.
See 669. I.

3. In Greek words,—(1) *en* is long; often also *an*, *in*, *on*, *yn*: *Hymēn*, *Anchisēn*, *Titān*, *Delphin*, *Actaeōn*, *Phorcyn*.—(2) *er* is long in *aer*, *aethēr*, *crāter*, and a few other words with long ending in the original.

4. This rule does not, of course, apply to syllables long by previous rules.

3. FINAL SYLLABLES IN S.

622. RULE VII.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **as**, **es**, and **os** are long; **is**, **us**, **ys**, short:

āmās, mensās, mōnēs, nūbēs, hōs, servōs; āvīs, urbīs, bōnūs, servūs, chlāmýs.

623. As final is long: Aeneās, bōnās, illās.

EXCEPTIONS.—*As final* is short,

1. In *anās* and in a few Greek nouns in *ās*: *Arcās*, *lampās*.
2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcādās*, *hērōas*.

624. Es final is long: nūbēs, mōnēs.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Es final* is short,

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III., which increase short in the Gen.: *mīlēs* (*Itis*), *obeēs* (*Idis*), *īnterprēs* (*Etis*). Except *ābēs*, *ārīes*, *pāriēs*, *ōrēs*, and compounds of *pēs*; as *bīpēs*, *trīpēs*, etc.
2. In *pēnēs* and the compounds of *ēs*; as *ādēs*, *pōtēs*.
3. In Greek words,—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Gen.: *Arcādēs*, *Troādēs*,—(2) in a few neuters in *es*: *Hippōmēnēs*,—(3) in a few Vocatives singular: *Dēmosthēnēs*.

625. Os final is long: custōs, virōs.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Os final* is short,

1. In *compōs*, *impōs*, *exōs*.
2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Delōs*, *mōlēs*.

626. Is final is short: āvīs, cānīs.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Is final* is long,

1. In Plural Cases: *mensīs*, *servīs*, *vōbīs*.
Hence *fōrīs*, *grātīs*, *ingratīs*.
2. In Nominatives of Dec. III., increasing long in the Gen.: *Quīrīs* (*Itis*), *Sālāmīs* (*Inis*).
3. In the Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs*.
Māvīs, *quīvīs*, *dītervīs* follow the quantity of *vis*.
4. In the Sing. Pres. Subjunct. Act.: *possīs*, *vēlīs*, *nōlīs*, *mālīs*.
5. Sometimes in the Sing. of the Fut. Perf. and of the Perf. Subj.: *āmdērīs*, *dōcūrīs*.

627. Us final is short: *servūs, bōnūs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Us final* is long,

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Gen.: *virtūs* (*ūtis*), *tellūs* (*ūris*).

But *pdlūs* (*u* short) occurs in Horace. Ars P. 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Gen. Sing., and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur., *fructūs*.

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs, Sapphūs, triplūs*.
But we have *Oedipūs* and *pdlīpūs*.

628. Vs final is short: *chlāmȳs, chēlȳs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are of course long: *Erynn̄ys* for *Erynn̄ȳes*.

II. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

629. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the nominative singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermo, sermōnis, sermōnibus*.

Sermōnis, having one syllable more than *sermo*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.

630. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *āmās, āmātis, āmābātis*.

Amātis has one increment, *āmābātis* two.

631. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult, if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first increment*, and those following this are called successively the *second, third, and fourth increments*. Thus

In *sermon-i-bus*, the first increment is *mon*, the second *i*; and in *mon-u-2-3-ramus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *ra*.

I. Increments of Declension.

632. RULE VIII.—In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e, i, u**, and **y**, short:

aetas, aetātis, aetātibus; sermo, sermōnis; puer, puēri, puērōrum;

fulgur, fulgūris; chlāmys, chlamydis; bōnus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; miser, misēri; supplex, supplicis; sātur, satūri.

Vowels long or short by position are of course excepted.

633. A in the increments of declension is long: *pax, pācis; bōnus, bonārum; duo, duābus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment,

1. Of masculines in *al* and *ar*: *Hannibāl, Hannibālis; Caesar, Caesāris.*
Except *Car* and *Nar*.

2. Of nouns in *s* preceded by a consonant: *daps, dāpis; Arabs, Arābis.*
3. Of Greek nouns in *a* and *ās*: *poēma, poēmātis; Pallas, Pallādīs.*
4. Of the following:—(1) *baccar, hēpar, jābar, lar, nectar, par* and its compounds,—(2) *ānas, mas, vas* (*vādis*),—(3) *sal, fax*, and a few rare Greek words in *ax*.

634. O in the increments of declension is long: *hōnor, hōnōris; bōnus, bonōrum; duo, duōbus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* is short in the first increment,

1. Of Neuters in Decl. III.: *aequor, aequōris; tempus, tempōris.* Except *os* (*ōris*), *ādor* (*adōris*), and comparatives.

2. Of words in *s* preceded by a consonant: *īnops, inōpis.* Except *Cyclops* and *hydrops*.

3. Of *arbor, bos, tēpus, —compos, impos, mōmor, immēmor, —Allōbrox, Cappādox, praecox.*

4. Of most Patrials: *Mācēdo, Macedōnis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns,—(1) those in *or*: *r̄hētor, Hector*,—(2) many in *o* and *on* increasing short in Greek: *ādon, aedōnis*,—(3) in Greek compounds in *pus*: *trīpus* (*ōdis*), *Oedīpus*.

635. E in the increments of declension is short: *puer, puēri; tibēr, libēri.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is long in the first increment,

1. Of Decl. V., except in the forms *fūdei, rēi, and spēi*; as *diēi, diērum, diēbus, rēbus.*

2. Of nouns in *ēn*, mostly Greek: *līen, līenis; Sīren, Sirēnis.* So *Anio, Anēnēis.*

3. Of *Celtibēr, Iber, ver, —hēres, lōcīples, merces, quies, inquies, rēquies, plebs, —lex, rex, ālēc, dlex, vervex.*

4. Of a few Greek words in *es* and *er*, except *aēr* and *aether*; as *tēbes, lebēris; crāter, crāteris.*

636. I in the increments of declension is short: *miles, militis, militibūs; anceps, ancipitīs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long in the first increment,

1. Of most words in *ix*: *rādīx, radīcis; fēlix, felīcis.*

But short in: *appendīx, cōdīx, Cīlīx, filīx, fornīx, nīx, pīx, edīx, strīx*, and a few others, chiefly proper names.

2. Of *dis, glis, lis, vis, Quiris, Samnis.*
3. Of *dolphin* and a few rare Greek words.
4. For quantity of the ending *ius*, see 612. 3.

637. U in the increments of declension is short: *dux, dūcis; arcus, arcūbus; sātūr, satūri.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the first increment,

1. Of nouns in *us* with the genitive in *uris, utis, udis: jus, jūris; sālus, salūtis; pālus, palūdis.* Except *interus, Ligus, pēcus.*

2. Of *fūr, frūx, lux, plus, Pollux.*

638. Y in the increments of declension is short: *chlä-myss, chlamydis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—This increment occurs only in Greek words, and is long in those in *yn, īnis*, and in a few others.

II. Increments of Conjugation.

639. RULE IX.—In the Increments of Conjugation (630), **a**, **e**, and **o** are long; **i** and **u** short:

āmāmus, amēmus, amātōte, rēgīmus, sūmus.

1. In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *jēro, cōlo*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris, volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *jērbam* and *vōlbam*, the increments are *re* and *le*.

2. In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (254), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dēdīmus* has but one increment *dē*.

640. A in the increments of conjugation is long: *āmāre.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment of *do: dāre, dābam, cir-cumdābam.*

641. E in the increments of conjugation is long: *mō-nēre.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is short before *r,*

1. In the tenses in *ram, rim, ro: āmāvēram, amāvērim, amāvēro; re-sērat, recērit.*

2. In first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conj. III.: *rēgēre, regērem, regērer.*

3. In the Fut. ending *bēris, bēre: āmābēris, or -ēre, mōnēbēris.*

4. Rarely in the Perf. ending *erunt: stēterunt for stēderunt.* See 235, also *Systole*, 669. IV.

642. O in the increments of conjugation is long without exception: *mōnētōte, rēgētōte.*

643. I in the increments of conjugation is short: *rēgi-tis, reximus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long, except before a vowel,

1. In the first increment of Conj. IV., except *īmus* of the Perf.: *audēre, audīvi, audītūm; sentio, sentīmus, sensīmus* (perf.).

2. In Conj. III. in the first increment of perfects and supines in *īvi* and *ītum* (276. III.) and of the parts derived from them (except *īmus* of Perf. : *trīvīmus*): *cūpīvi, cūpīvērat, cūpītūs; pētīvi, pētītūs; cāpēssīvi, cāpēssītūrūs*. *Gāvīus* from *gaudeo* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings *īmus* and *ītis* of Pres. Subj.: *sīmus, sītis; vēlīmus, vēlītis* (289. 8).

4. In *nōlīte, nōlīto, nōlītō*, and in the different persons of *ībam, ībo*, from *eo* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings *ītīmus* and *ītītis* of the Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj.: *āmāvōrīmus, āmāvōrītis*.

644. U in the increments of conjugation is short: *vōlū-mus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the Supine and the parts formed from it: *vōlātūm, vōlātūrūs, āmātūrūs.*

III. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

645. RULE X.—The following derivative endings have the penult long:

I. *ārum, ārum, āstrum :*

fībrum, sīmūlārum, ārātrum.

II. *ēdo, īdo, īdō ; āgo, īgō, īgo :*

dulcēdo, cūpido, sōlitudo ; vōrāgo, īrīgo, aerīgo.

III. *āia, īia, īia, ītia, īna, īne—in patronymics :*

Ptōlēmāis, Chrīysēis, Minōis, Icāriōtis, Nērīne, Acrīmōne.

Except *Dāndīs, Phōcāis, Thēbāis, Nērīs.*

IV. *āla, īla ; īlia, īlia, īlis :*

quērlā, īvīle ; mortālia, fidēlis, cūrālis.

V. *ānus, īnus, īnus, īnus ; īna, īna, īna, īna :*

urbānus, īgēnus, patrōnus, tribūnus ; membrāna, hābēna, amēna, K-ēna.

Except *gallēnus.*

VI. *āris, īrus ; ītus, īsus ; īvus, īvus :*

militāris, īvārus ; cānōrus, īmīmōsus ; octāvus, aestīvus.

VII. ātus, itus, ūtus; ātim, itim, ūtim; ētum, ēta:
ālētus, turrītus, cornūtus; singūlātum, vīritum, trībūtum; quercētum,
mōnēta.

Except (1) dñhēlītus, fortūtus, grātūtus, hālītus, hospītus, servītus, spirītus;
(2) aſtūtum, stātum, and adverbs in itus, as divinītus; and (3) participles provided for
by 689.

VIII. ēni, īni, ūni,—in distributives:
septēni, quini, octēni.

646. RULE XI.—The following derivative endings
have the penult short:

I. īdes, iădes, īdes,—in patronymics:

Aeneādes, Lāertiādes, Tantālides.

Except (1) those in īdes from nouns in eus and es; as, Pēlides (Peleus), Nēo-
clides (Neocles), and (2) Amphidrāides, Amḡclides, Bēlides, Cōrōnides, Lycurḡides.

II. īcūs, ūcūs, ūcūs:

Cōrinthiācūs, mōdīcūs, cāpīdūs.

Except dñcūs, antīcūs, aprīcūs, mendīcūs, postīcūs, pādīcūs.

III. ūlus, ūla, ūlum; ūlus, ūla, ūlum; cūlus, ūla, ūlum,—in
diminutives:

filiōlus, filiōla, atriōlum; hortūlus, virgūla, oppīdūlum; floscūlus,
particīla, mūnuscūlum.

IV. ītas, itas,—in nouns; īter, itus,—in adverbs:

piētas, vērītas; fortīter, divinītus.

V. ātīlis, ilis, bilis,—in verbs; ūnus,—in adjectives denoting
material or time:

versātīlis, dōcīlis, āmābīlis; ādāmantīnus, cedrīnus, crastīnus, diūtīnus.

Except mātūtīnus, rēpentīnus, veepertīnus.

1. Ilis in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long: cōvīlis, hos-
tīlis, puērīlis, vīrlīlis.

2. Unus denoting characteristic (825) usually has the penult long: cānī-
nus, īquīnus, mārinus.

647. RULE XII.—The following derivative endings
have the antepenult long:

I. āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ūrius:

rōsāceus, pannūceus, sūbītāneus, cībārius, cōlumbārium, censōrius.

II. ābilis, ātīlis, ātīcūs:

āmābīlis, versātīlis, āquātīcus.

III. āginta, īginti, ēsimus,—*in numerals*:
nōnāginta, vīginti, centēsimus.

648. RULE XIII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult short:

- I. ībilis, ītūdo, īlentus, īlentus.
crēdibīlis, sōlitūdo, vīnōlentus, īpūlentus.
- II. īrio,—*in desideratives*:
ētīrio, emptīrio, partīrio.

IV. QUANTITY OF STEM SYLLABLES

I. In Primitives.

649. The quantity of stem-syllables in primitive words, when not determined by the General Rules (Sec. I.), is in most cases best referred to authority. Thus,

In māter, cēdo, scrībo, dōno, ūtor, the first syllable is *long by authority*, while in pāter, tēgo, mīco, sōno, ūter, it is *short by authority*.

650. RULE XIV.—The quantity of stem-syllables remains unchanged in inflection:

- In DECLENSION,—āvis, īvem; nūbes, nūbium.
In COMPARISON,—lēvis, lēvior, lēvisāmus.
In CONJUGATION,—mōneo, mōnēbam, mōnui.

1. Position may however affect the quantity: āger, īgri (611, 612); possum, pōtui; solvo, sōlūtum; volvo, vōlūtum.

Here ī becomes ī before gr. The o in possum, solvo, and volvo, long only by position, becomes short before a single consonant.

2. Gigno gives gēnui, gēnūtum, and pōno, pōsui, pōsūtum.
3. See also 651, 652.

651. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position:

jāvo, jūvi, jātum; fōveo, fōvi, fōtum.

1. These Perfects and Supines, if formed from Presents with the first syllable short, are exceptions to 650.

2. Seven Perfects have the first syllable short:

bībi, dēdi, fīdi, scīdi, stīti, stībi, tūli.

3. Ten Supines have the first syllable short:

*citum, dātum, itum, litum, quitum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum, situm.*¹

652. In trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects the first two syllables are short:

cădo, cēcidi; cāno, cēcini; disco, dīdici.

1. *Caedo* has *cēcidi* in distinction from *cēcidi* from *cēdo*.

2. The second syllable may be made long by position: *cācurri, mōmordi.*

II. In Derivatives.

653. RULE XV.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives:

bōnus, bōnitas; tīmeo, tīmor; ānimus, ānimōsus; cīvis, cīvīcus; cūra, cūro.

1. Frequentatives in *ito*, have i short: *clāmīto*. See 382. I.

2. In a few Derivatives the short vowel of the primitive is lengthened:

<i>hōmo,</i>	<i>hūmānus,</i>	<i>rēgo,</i>	<i>rēx, rēgis, rēgīla,</i>
<i>lāteo,</i>	<i>lāterna,</i>	<i>sēcūs,</i>	<i>sēcius,</i>
<i>lēgo,</i>	<i>lēx, lēgis,</i>	<i>sēdeo,</i>	<i>sēdes, sēdūlus,</i>
<i>mācer,</i>	<i>mācēro,</i>	<i>sēro,</i>	<i>sēmen,</i>
<i>mōveo,</i>	<i>mōbilis,</i>	<i>suspīcor,</i>	<i>suspīcio,</i>
<i>persōno,</i>	<i>persōna,</i>	<i>tēgo,</i>	<i>tēgūla.</i>

3. In a few Derivatives the long vowel of the primitive is shortened:

<i>ācer,</i>	<i>ācerbus,</i>	<i>nōtum,</i>	<i>nōta,</i>
<i>dīco,</i>	<i>dīcax,</i>	<i>ōdi,</i>	<i>ōdium,</i>
<i>dūco,</i>	<i>dūx, dūcis,</i>	<i>sōpio,</i>	<i>sōpor,</i>
<i>fīdo,</i>	<i>fīdes,</i>	<i>vādo,</i>	<i>vādūm,</i>
<i>lāceo,</i>	<i>lācerna,</i>	<i>vōx, vōcis,</i>	<i>vōco.</i>
<i>mōles,</i>	<i>mōlestus,</i>		

This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction: *mōvītīla, mōbīlīla, mōbīlīta*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography: as the verbs *lēgis, lēges, rēgle, rēges, sēdes*, from the nouns *lēgis, lēges, rēgis, rēges, sēdes*, or the verbs *dūcis, dūces, fīdes*, from the nouns *dūcis, dūces, fīdes*.

III. In Compounds.

654. RULE XVI.—Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements:

antē-fēro, dē-fēro, dē-dūco, in-aequālia, prō-dūco.

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity: *dē-līgo (lēgo), oo-cīdo (cădo), oc-cīdo (caedo).*

¹ From *sīsto*, but *sītum* from *sto*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—**Di**, **se**, and **ve** are long, **re** short: **ne** sometimes long and sometimes short:

didūco, sēdūco, vēcors, rēdūco, nēdūm, nēfas:

- 1) *Di* is short in *drīmo, disertus*.
- 2) *Ne* is long in *nēdūm, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquītia,* and *nēva*. In other words it is short.
- 3) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rērīgio, rēnīguiae, rēpērit, rēpū-
līt, rētūlit*, etc.

3. CHANGE OF QUANTITY.—In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus

Dico gives *-dīcus; jero, jero; notus, -nitūs; nubo, nuba:* mālē-dīcus,
de-jero, cog-nitūs, prō-nuba.

4. PRO.—*Pro* is short in the following words:

*Prōcella, prōcul, prōfānus, prōfāri, prōfecto, prōfestus, prōfīcīscor, prō-
fītor, prōfūgio, prōfūgus, prōfundus, prōnēpos, prōnēptis, prōtervus*, and
most Greek words, as *prōphēta*, generally in *prōfundo, prōpāgo, prōpīno*,
rarely in *prōcūro, prōpello*.

5. STEM.—When the first element is the stem of a word (338. III.), it is often followed by a short connecting vowel:

*cāl-ē-fācio, lāb-ē-fācio, bell-ī-gēro, aed-ī-fīco, art-ī-fex, ampl-ī-fīco, lōc-
ī-ples.*

Before *fācio* in a few compounds *e* is sometimes lengthened: *nīquīfācio, pādīfā-
cio, putrīfācio, tēpīfācio*. The first *e* in *vidēlēcet* is long.

6. I LONG.—*I* is long,—(1) in the first part of compounds of *dies*: *mērī-
dīes, prīdie, postrīdie, quōtīdie, trīdīum*, and (2) in the contracted forms,
bīgāe, trīgāe, quadrigāe, tīlēcet, scīlēcet, tībīcen for *tībīcen*.

But *ē* is short in *đīdīvūm* and *quādītrīdīvūm*.

7. O LONG.—*O* is long in *contrō-, intrō-, retrō-, and quandō-* in composition;
as: *contrōversia, intrōdūco, retrōverto, quandōques*, but *quandōquidem*.

8. SPECIAL WORDS.—*Hōdīs, quāsi, quōque*, and *sigūdēm*, have the first
syllable short.

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

SECTION I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT

655. Latin Versification is based upon Quantity and Accent. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.

L METRICAL FEET.

656. Feet are either simple or compound. For convenience of reference we add the following list:

I. Simple Feet.

DISSYLLABIC FEET.

Spondee,	<i>two long syllables,</i>	— —	Lægēs.
Trochee, ¹	<i>a long and a short,</i>	— •	Lægs.
Iambus,	<i>a short and a long,</i>	• —	Pârēns.
Pyrrhic,	<i>two short,</i>	• •	Pâtör.

TRISYLLABIC FEET.

Dactyl,	<i>a long and two short,</i>	— • •	cärmínä.
Anapaest,	<i>two short and a long,</i>	• • —	bönläss.
Tribrach,	<i>three short,</i>	• • •	dömläns.
Molossus,	<i>three long,</i>	— — —	libertäss.
Amphibrach,	<i>a short, a long, and a short,</i>	• — •	ämleüs.
Amphimacer, ²	<i>a long, a short, and a long,</i>	— • —	militäss.
Bacchius,	<i>a short and two long,</i>	• — —	döltöräss.
Antibacchius,	<i>two long and a short,</i>	— — •	pästöräss.

II. Compound Feet.

These are only compounds of the dissyllabic feet, and all have four syllables.

¹ Sometimes called Chorœ.

² Also called Oretic.

Dispondee,	<i>double spondee,</i>	— — — —	praēcēptōrēs.
Ditrohee,	<i>double trohee,</i>	— ∙ — ∙	civitatis.
Diiambus,	<i>double iambus,</i>	∨ — ∙ —	āmoēnitās.
Proceleusmatic,	<i>double pyrrhic,</i>	∨ ∙ ∙ ∙	mēmōriā.
Greater Ionic,	<i>spondee and pyrrhic,</i>	— — ∙ ∙	sēntēntiā.
Lesser Ionic,	<i>pyrrhic and spondee,</i>	∨ ∙ — —	ādōlēscēns.
Choriambus,	<i>troches (choree), and iambus,</i> — ∙ ∙ —		Impatiēns.
Antispast,	<i>iambus and trohee,</i>	∨ — — ∙	vērēctiūs.
First Epitrite,	<i>iambus and spondee,</i>	∨ — — —	āmāvērānt.
Second Epitrite,	<i>troches and spondee,</i>	— ∙ — —	cōnditōrēs.
Third Epitrite,	<i>spondees and iambus,</i>	— — ∙ —	auctōrītās.
Fourth Epitrite,	<i>spondees and troches,</i>	— — — ∙	ōrnāmēntā.
First Paeon,	<i>troches and pyrrhic,</i>	— ∙ ∙ ∙	bistōriā.
Second Paeon,	<i>iambus and pyrrhic,</i>	∨ — ∙ ∙	āmābillīs.
Third Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and troches,</i>	∨ ∙ — ∙	pūerillīs.
Fourth Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and iambus,</i>	∨ ∙ ∙ —	cēlēritās.

1. COMMON FEET.—The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are,

1) The *Dactyl* and *Spondee*, used in the Heroic Hexameter.

2) Less frequent the *Iambus*, *Trochee*, *Tribraчh*, *Anapaest*, and *Choriambus*.

2. GROUPS.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Triody*, of three; a *Tetrapody*, of four, etc. A *Triemimēris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; *Penthemimēris*, of two and a half; *Hephthhemimēris*, of three and a half, etc.

657. METRICAL EQUIVALENTS.—A long syllable may often be resolved into two short ones, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short ones may be contracted into a long one. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original forms. Thus,

The Dactyl becomes a Spondee by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the Spondee becomes a Dactyl by resolving the second syllable, or an Anapaest by resolving the first. Accordingly the Dactyl, the Spondee, and the Anapaest are metrical equivalents. In like manner the Iambus, the Trochee, and the Tribraчh are metrical equivalents.

658. METRICAL SUBSTITUTES.—In certain kinds of verse, feet are sometimes substituted for those which are not their metrical equivalents. Thus,

The Spondee is often substituted for the Iambus or the Trochee, though not equivalent to either. See 679, 682.

659. ICTUS OR RHYTHMIC ACCENT.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or Ictus.

1. SIMPLE FEET.—Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used for other feet. Thus,

The Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. EQUIVALENTS AND SUBSTITUTES.—These take the ictus of the feet for which they are used. Thus,

The Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl, i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest, i. e., on the last syllable.

1) Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally equivalents or substitutes, and are accented accordingly.

2) When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus rests chiefly on the first of these two. Thus the Dactyl used for the Anapaest takes the ictus on the first short syllable.

3. COMPOUND FEET.—These take the ictus of the feet of which they are composed. Thus,

The *Choriambus* (trochee and iambus) takes the ictus of the trochee on the first syllable and that of the iambus on the last.

But *Ionic* feet are generally read with the ictus on the first long syllable.

660. ARSIS AND THESIS.—The accented part of each foot is called the *Arsis* (*raising*); and the unaccented part, *Thesis* (*lowering*).

II. VERSES.

661. A verse is a line of poetry, and is either simple or compound.

I. A Simple verse has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse. Thus,

Every Dactylic Verse has the ictus on the first syllable, because the Dactyl, its characteristic foot, has it on that syllable.

II. A Compound verse has a characteristic foot for each member. See 692.

662. CAESURAL PAUSE.—Most verses are divided into two nearly equal parts by a pause or rest called the *caesura*¹ or *caesural pause*. See 673, 674.

663. METRICAL NAMES OF VERSES.—The metrical name of a verse designates,

I. The Characteristic foot. Thus,

¹ *Caesura* (from *caedo*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the verse into parts.

Dactylic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses have respectively the Dactyl, the Trochee, and the Iambus as the characteristic foot.

II. The Number of Feet or Measures.¹ Thus,

1. Dactylic Hexameter is Dactylic verse of six measures.
2. A verse consisting of one measure is *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

III. The Completeness or Incompleteness of the measures. Thus,

1. A verse is termed *Acatalectic*, when its last measure is complete; *Catalectic*, when it is incomplete.

1) A Catalectic verse is said to be *catalectic in syllabum*, *in disyllabum*, or *in trisyllabum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

2) A *Brachycatalectic* verse wants the closing foot of the last Dipody.

3) An *Acephalous* verse wants the first syllable of the first foot.

4) A *Hypercatalectic* verse, also called *Hypermeter*, has an excess of syllables.

2. The full metrical name combines the three particulars enumerated under I. II. and III., as *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, etc.

1) But for the sake of brevity the term *Acatalectic* is often omitted when it can be done without ambiguity.

2) Verses are sometimes known by names which merely designate the number of feet or measures. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

664. SPECIAL NAMES OF VERSES.—Many verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets. Thus,

Alcaic from Alcaeus, *Archilochian* from Archilochus, *Sapphic* from Sappho, *Glyconic*, from Glycon, etc.

Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Proverbial*, to proverbs, etc.

665. FINAL SYLLABLE.—The final syllable of a verse may generally be either long or short.

666. STANZA.—A stanza is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole. See 699, 700.

A stanza of two lines is called a *Distich*; of three, a *Tristich*; of four, a *Tetraslith*.

¹ A measure is a single foot, except in Anapaestic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses, where it is a Dipody or Pair of feet.

667. METRE.—Metre signifies *measure*, and is used to designate,

1. A Foot or Dipody, as the measure, or metrical element of a verse.
2. A Verse or Stanza, as the measure of a poem.

668. SCANNING.—Scanning consists in separating a poem, or verse, into the feet of which it is composed.

III. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

669. The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody. These are,

I. SYNALOEPHA.—This is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel:

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, *for* Monstrum horrendum, informe ingens. *Virg.*

1. No account is taken of *h*, as it is only a breathing (2. 2). Hence *horrendum* is treated as a word beginning with a vowel.

2. Interjections, *o*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, etc., are not elided, but in other words the elision generally takes place in the best poets. But see *Virg. Aen.* III. 74.

3. Final *s* in the interrogative *ns* is sometimes elided before a consonant: Pyrrhīn' connūbia servas? *for* Pyrrhīne connūbia servas? *Virg.*

4. The elision of *s* occurs in the early poets:

Ex omnibus rēbus, *for* *Ex omnībus rēbus*. *Lucr.*

5. *Synaloepha* may occur at the end of a line when the next line begins with a vowel. It is then called *Synapheia*.

II. SYNAERESIS.—This is the contraction of two syllables into one:

aurēā, *dēinde*, *dēinceps*, *īidem*, *īisdem*.

1. Synaeresis is of frequent application. It may unite

1) Two successive vowels, as in the examples above.

2) A vowel and a diphthong: *ēādēm*.

3) Two vowels separated by *h*, as only a breathing: *prohībeat*, pronounced *proībeat*.

2. In the different parts of *dēsum*, *ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dēesse*, *dēest*, *dērat*, *dērit*, etc.: so *et* in the verb *anteo*: *antiēre*, *antiērem*, *antiētē*, *antiētētē*.

3. *I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*: Thus, *ābētē* and *ārlētē*, become *ābyētē* and *āryētē*; *gēnēkā* and *tēnēkē* become *gēnevā* and *tēnwēs*.

III. DIAERESIS.—This is the resolution of one syllable into two:

aurāī for aurae, Orphēūs for Orphēūs, soluendus, for solvendus, silua for silva.

As a matter of fact the Latin poets seldom, if ever, actually divide any syllable into two, and the examples generally explained by *diaeresis* are only ancient forms, occasionally used by them for effect or convenience.

IV. SYSTOLE.—This is the shortening of a long syllable:

tūlērunt for tūlērunt, stētērunt for stētērunt (235), vīdē'n for vīdēsne.

This is a rare poetical license, occurring most frequently in the final vowels and diphthongs, which would otherwise be elided. See 669. I. 2.

V. DIASTOLE.—This is the lengthening of a short syllable:

Priāmīdes for Priāmīdes.

1. This is a poetical license, used chiefly in proper names and in final syllables in the *arsis* of the foot (660). In the latter case the syllable is said to be lengthened by the *ictus*.

SECTION II.

VARIETIES OF VERSE.

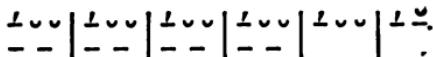
I. DACTYLIC VERSE.

670. All Dactylic Verses are measured by single feet (663. II.), and consist of Dactyls and their metrical equivalents, Spondees. The ictus is on the first syllable of every foot.

I. Dactylic Hexameter.

671. The Dactylic Hexameter consists of six feet. The first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee (665).

The scale is,¹



Quādrāpē- | dāntē pū- | trem sōnl- | tū quātīt | üngüł | cāmpum. *Virg.*

Armā vī- | rāmquē cā- | nō Trō- | jāe quL| prīmūs šb | ūria. *Virg.*

Infān- | dām rē- | ginā jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrem. *Virg.*

Illi² In- | tēr sē- | sē māg- | nā vī | brāchilā | tōllūnt. *Virg.*

¹ In this scale the sign ' marks the *ictus* (659).

² The final i of illi is elided by *Synaloepha* (669).

672. VARIETIES.—The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

1. **ILLUSTRATION.**—Thus a verse may contain,

1) Five dactyls and one spondee, as in the first example above.

2) Four dactyls and two spondees. These again admit four different arrangements.

3) Three dactyls and three spondees, as in the second and third examples above. But these again admit six different arrangements.

4) Two dactyls and four spondees. These admit four different arrangements.

5) One dactyl and five spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. **EFFECT OF DACTYLS.**—Dactyls produce a rapid movement and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

3. **SPONDAIC LINE.**—The Hexameter sometimes takes a spondee in the fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cärä dö- | tūm söbö- | les mäg- | num Jövls | Incrë- | mëntum. *Virg.*

673. CAESURAL PAUSE.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:

Armä- | tñ tén- | dünt; || It | clämör ët | Egmlnë | flæctð. *Virg.*

Infan- | dum, rë- | glnä, || jü- | bës rënö- | värë dö- | lörem. *Virg.*

In the first line the caesural pause, marked ||, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *regina*, in the thesis (*nd jü*) of the third foot.

1. **RARE CAESURAL PAUSE.**—The caesural pause is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second foot. Sometimes indeed this last becomes the principal pause:

Crädldö- | rim; || vär | Illüd ë- | rët, || vär | mägnüs ë- | gëbat. *Virg.*

2. **BUCOLIC CAESURA.**—A pause between the fourth and fifth feet is generally called the *bucolic caesura*, because often used in pastoral poetry:

Ingän- | tem coe- | lë sönl- | tûm dëdët; || Indë së- | cütus. *Virg.*

3. **FAULTY CAESURA.**—A caesural pause at the end of the third foot is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Fälvërë- | lëntüs ë- | quis fürlt; || ömnës | armä rë- | quirunt. *Virg.*

674. CAESURA AND CAESURAL PAUSE.—The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these (sometimes two) is marked by the caesural pause:

Armā vī- | rumque cā- | nō, || Trō- | jaś quī | pŕimūs āb | ūris. *Virg.*

1. Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *cāno*, has the caesural pause.

2. In determining which caesura is to be marked by the pause the reader must be guided by the sense, introducing the pause where there is a pause of sense, or where at least it will not interfere with the sense.

3. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

Rōmaś | moēnīš | tērrūl | ImpIgēr | Hānnībāl | ȣrmis. *Enn.*

675. LAST WORD OF THE HEXAMETER.—The last word of the Hexameter should be either a dissyllable or a trisyllable. See examples above.

1. Two monosyllables are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Praeclpī- | tant cū- | rae, || tūr- | bātāquē | fūnērē | mēns est. *Virg.*

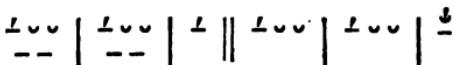
Est is indeed often used even when not preceded by another monosyllable.

2. A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Pārtūl- | tūt mōn- | tēs, || nas- | cētūr | rīdīcū- | lūs mus. *Hor.*

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

676. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by the caesural pause. Each part consists of two Dactyls and the arsis of a third. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second :



Admōnī- | tū coe- | pi || fōrtīör | ēssē tū- | d. *Ovid.*

1. PENTAMETER.—The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being dactyls or spondees; the third, a spondee; the fourth and fifth, anapaests.

2. ELEGIAC DISTICH.—The Dactylic Pentameter is seldom, if ever, used, except in the Elegiac Distich, which consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmīsē- | pūltā vī- | rūm || cūr- | vīs fōrī- | tūntār ā- | rētrīs
Ossā, rū- | Inō- | sās || ūccūlīt | bērbā dō- | mūs. *Ov.*

III. Other Dactylic Verses.

677. The other varieties of dactylic verse are less important, but the following deserve mention :

I. DACTYLIC TETRAMETER.—This consists of the last four feet of the Hexameter:

Ibīmūs | O sōči- | I, cōmī- | tēsque. *Hor.*

In compound verses, as the Greater Archilochian, the tetrameter in composition with other metra, has a dactyl in the fourth place. See 691. L.

II. DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Lesser Archilochian, and is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter:

Arbōři- | būsquē cō- | mae. *Hor.*

III. DACTYLIC DIMETER.—This is the Adonic, and consists of a Dactyl and Spondee:

Mōntīs ī- | māgō. *Hor.*

II. ANAPAESTIC VERSE.

678. Anapaestic verses consist of Anapaestic dipodies.

An Anapaestic dipody consists of two Anapaests, but admits Spondees or Dactyls as equivalents.

I. ANAPAESTIC DIMETER consists of two dipodies:

Věnīent : ānnis || saecūlā : sērlā.¹ *Sen.*

This is sometimes catalectic (668. III. 1), and has only a long syllable in place of the last foot. It is then called *Paroemiac*.

II. ANAPAESTIC MONOMETER consists of one dipody:

Dătā rēs : pătriæ. *Auson.*

1. In Anapaestic verse Dactyls are used sparingly, and are generally followed by Spondees. Each dipody generally ends with a word.

2. The last syllable is not common, as in most kinds of verse (665), but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity.

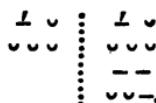
3. Anapaestic verse does not occur in the best Latin Poets.

III. TROCHAIC VERSE.

679. Trochaic verses consist of Trochaic dipodies.

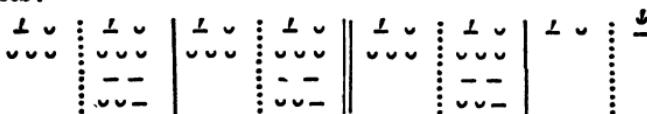
A Trochaic dipody consists of two Trochees, or of a Trochee and a Spondee; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Trochee, and the Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second:

¹ In verses measured by dipodies, a dotted line is placed between the feet, a single line between the dipodies, and a double line in the place of the caesural pause.



I. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.

680. This consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. The caesural pause is at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:



Nullā : vōx hū- | mānā : cōnstāt || ēbsquē : sēptēm | līttē- : ris,
Rītē : vōcā- | lēs vō- : cāvīt || quās mā- : glstrā | Graēcl- : a. Ter. Mau.

1. In *Proper Names*, a dactyl may be introduced in any foot except the fourth and seventh.

2. The *Proceleusmatic* for the Spondee sometimes occurs.

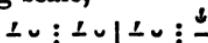
3. In *Comedy* the Spondee and its equivalents occur in the odd feet, as well as in the even, except in the last dipody.

4. The *Trochaic Tetrameter* also occurs in the earlier poets in its complete form, i. e., with eight full feet:

Ipēd : sūmmīs | sāxīs : fīxūs || āspē- : ris ē- | vīseē- : rātūs. Eun.

II. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

681. This consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents and has the following scale,



Aulā : dīvī- | tēm mā- : net. Hor.

1. This is sometimes called *Iambic Dimeter Acephalous*, i. e., an Iambic Dimeter with the first syllable wanting.

2. A *Trochaic Tripody*,—three Trochees—technically called a *Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic*, or an *Ithyphallicus*, occurs in the Greater Archilochian. See 691. I.

3. For *Sapphic Verse*, see 691. IV.

4. For *Phalaecian*, see 691. V.

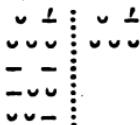
IV. IAMBIC VERSE.

682. Iambic verses consist of Iambic dipodies.

An Iambic dipody consists of two Iambi, or of a Spondee and an Iambus; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Iambus, and sometimes the Dactyl or the

Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

In its full form it has the following scale:



I. Iambic Trimeter.

683. This verse, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies.

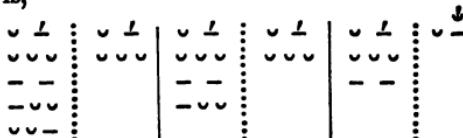
I. The first dipody has the full form.

II. The second admits no Anapaest.

III. The third admits no Anapaest or Dactyl, and in its second foot, no equivalent whatever.

IV. The Caesural Pause is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth.

The scale is,



Quid ūb- | sērā- | tis || au- | rībūs | fundīs | prēces? *Hor.*

Nēptū- | nūs ūl- | tō || tūn- | dīt hī- | bērnūs | sālo. *Hor.*

Hās in- | tēr ēpū- | lās || ūt | jūvāt | pāstās | ūves. *Hor.*

1. PROPER NAMES.—In proper names an Anapaest is admissible in any foot, except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. HORACE.—In Horace the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl and Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. COMEDY.—In Comedy great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

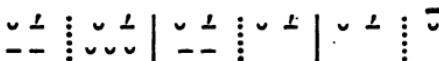
4. CHOLIAMBUS.—This is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Spondee in the sixth foot and an Iambus in the fifth:

Mlsēr : Cătul- | lē dē- | sñlls | Inēp- | tire. *Catul.*

Choliambus means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is sometimes called *Scenon* for the same reason, and sometimes *Hipponeactan*, from Hipponax, its reputed inventor.

684. IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Iambic Trimeter with the last foot incomplete. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tri-

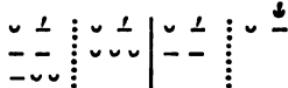
brach in the second foot and the Spondee in the first and third:



Vōcā- | tūs ēt- | quē nōn | vōcā- | tūs au- | dit. Hor.

II. Iambic Dimeter.

685. This verse consists of two Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tribrach in the second place, the Spondee in the first and third, and the Dactyl in the first:

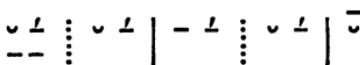


Quērūn- | tūr In | silvls | āves. Hor.

Imbrēs | nīvēs- | quē cōm- | pārat. Hor.

Ast ēgō | vīclīs- | sīm rī- | sēro. Hor.

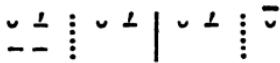
1. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER occurs in Horace with the following scale:



Pūer | quīs ēx | aulī | cāplī- | lis. Hor.

This is sometimes called the Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse and forms the third line in the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. L.

2. IAMBIC DIMETER CATALECTIC does not occur in the pure Latin poets. Its scale is,



Mānū | pūer | lōquī- | ci. Pet. Arb.

3. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALOUS.—This name is sometimes given to the Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (681), which is then treated as Iambic Dimeter without the first syllable. Thus

Au- | lā dī- | vītēm | mānet. Hor.

III. Iambic Tetrameter.

686. The Iambic Tetrameter is little used in Latin except in Comedy. It consists of four Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. The caesural pause is usually after the fourth foot:

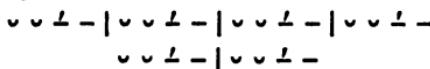
Quāntum in- | tēllēx- | i mōdō ; sēnis || sēntēn- | tīam | dē nūp- ;
tīia. Ter.

The *Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic* belongs mostly to comedy, but occurs also in Catullus:

Quōt cōm- : mōdās | rēs āt- : tūlī? || quōt au- : tem ādō- | mī cū- : rās. *Ter.*

V. IONIC VERSE.

687. The Ionic a Minōre consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Tetrameter or Dimeter:



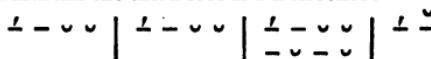
Sīmūl ūnctōs | Tībōrīns | hūmōrōs lā- | vīt īn ūndīs. *Hor.*

Nēquē sēgnī | pēdē vīctus. *Hor.*

1. Horace has this metre only in one short ode (III. 12). In some editions this ode consists entirely of Tetrameters; but in others it is arranged in stanzas of three lines; the first two, Tetrameters, and the third, a Dimeter.

2. In this verse the last syllable is not common, but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity, as in the Anapaestic verse. See 678. 2.

3. The Ionic a Majore, *Sotadean Verse*, scarcely occurs in Latin, except in Comedy. In its pure state it consists of three Greater Ionic feet and a Spondee, but in Martial the third foot is a Ditrachee:



Hās cūm gēmī- | nā cōmpēdē | dēdīcāt cā- | tēnās. *Mart.*

VI. CHORIAMBIC VERSE.

688. Choriambic verses begin with a Spondee followed by one, two, or three Choriambi, and end with an Iambus.

In Horace the Choriambic verse uniformly begins with the Spondee, but in some of the other poets the Trochee, the Anapaest, or the Iambus occasionally takes the place of the Spondee.

689. A Choriambic verse with one Choriambus is called the *Glyconic*; or, if catalectic, the *Pherecratēan*; with two, the *Asclepiadēan*; with three, the Greater *Asclepiadēan*.

I. The GLYCONIC has the following scale:



Dōnēc | grātūs ērām | tībi. *Hor.*

II. The PHERECRATEAN is catalectic, but otherwise identical with the Glyconic. Its scale is,



Vix dū- | rārō cārī- | nae. *Hor.*

III. The ASCLEPIADEAN has the following scale :

$\underline{\text{L}} - | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} | \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}}$

Maecē- | nās ētāvīs || ēditē rēg- | Ibus. *Hor.*

IV. The GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN has the following scale :

$\underline{\text{L}} - | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} | \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}}$

Seu plū- | rēs hīmēs, || seu trībūlt || Jūplītēr al- | tīmam. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called *Choriambic Pentameter* and sometimes *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

Epichoriambic Verse.

690. When a verse begins with a Second Epitrite followed by one or two Choriambi, and ends with a Bacchius, it is called Epichoriambic. Of this there are two important varieties :

I. THE SAPPHIC VERSE.—This consists of a Second Epitrite, a Choriambus and a Bacchius :

$\underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} - | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} | \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} -$

Nāmquē mē sīl- | vā || lūpūs In ; Sābīna. *Hor.*

1. But the Sapphic verse may also be measured as a Trochaic Dipody followed by an Aristophanic verse, i. e., as composed of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees. See 691. IV.

2. The Caesural Pause usually occurs after the fifth syllable, as in the example, but sometimes after the sixth.

3. Catullus admits two Trochees in place of the Epitrite.

II. THE GREATER SAPPHIC VERSE.—This differs from the Sapphic proper only in introducing a second Choriambus before the Bacchius :

$\underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} - | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} | \text{ } \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} -$

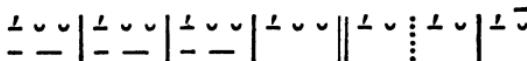
Intēr aequā- | lēs ēquātāt, || Gāllīcā nēc | lūpātis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes improperly called *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

VII. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

691. Logaoedic verses consist of Dactyls, or their equivalents, followed by Trochees.

I. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.—This consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (677. I.) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees; the fourth, a Dactyl; and the last three, Trochees :



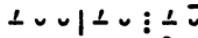
Vitaē | summā brē- | vīs spēm | nōs vētāt, || Inchō- : ērē | lōngam. Hor.
The caesural pause is between the two members.

II. ALCAIC VERSE.—This consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees:



Purpūrē- | ë vārl- | ūs cō- : lōre. Hor.

III. ARISTOPHANIC VERSE.—This consists of a Dactyl followed by two Trochees:



Cūr nēquē | mīlī- : tāria. Hor.

This verse is variously named, *Aristophanic*, *Choriambic Dimeter*, and *Choriambic Dimeter Catalectic*.

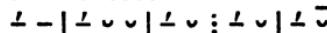
IV. SAPPHIC VERSE.—This prefixes to the Aristophanic a Trochaic Dipody consisting of a Trochee and a Spondee (690. I.). The scale is,



Nāmquē : mē sll- | vā lūpūs | In Sā- : bīna. Hor.

Sapphic verse may be classed at pleasure either with the *Logaoedic* verses, as here, or with the *Epichoriambic* verses, as in article 690. I.

V. PHALEKCIAN VERSE.—This consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees:

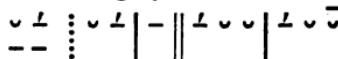


Nōn ēst | vīvērē, || sēd vā- : lērē | vīta. Mart.

This verse is sometimes called, from the number of its syllables, *Hendecasyllabis*, of eleven syllables. It does not occur in Horace. In Catullus it sometimes has a Trochee, or an Iambus, in the first place.

VIII. MISCELLANEOUS VERSES.

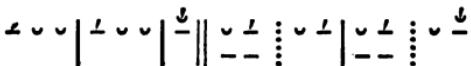
692. GREATER ALCAIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Penthemimeris* and a pure *Dactylic Dimeter*, i. e., an Iambic Dipody, a long syllable and two Dactyls:



Vīdēs : ūt El- | tē || stēt nīvē | cāndidum
Sōrēc- | tē nēc | jām || sūstīnē- | ēnt ǒnūa. Hor.

1. The Caesural Pause is usually between the two members.
2. In Horace the first foot is generally a Spondee.
3. This verse forms the first and second lines of the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

693. DACTYLICO-LAMBIC VERSE.—This consists of a pure *Dactylic Penthemimeris* (656. 2) and an *Iambic Dimeter* (685):

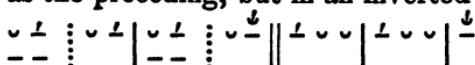


Jussūs āb- | Irē dō- | mūm, || fōrē- : bār In- | cōrtō : pēde. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Elegiambus*.

2. This verse and the following compounds—the *Iambico-Dactylic* and the *Priapeian*—have the peculiarity that the two members of each may be treated as separate lines, as the last syllable of the first member is common, as at the end of a line.

694. LAMBICO-DACTYLIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Dimeter* and a *Dactylic Penthemimeris*, i. e., of the same parts as the preceding, but in an inverted order:

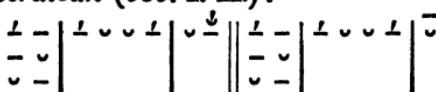


Nīvēs- : quē dē- | dūcūnt : Jōvēm: || nūnc mārē, | nūnc sīlū- | ae. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Iambelagus*.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

695. PRIAPEIAN VERSE.—This consists of a *Glyconic* and a *Pherecratean* (689. I. II.):



Quēreūs | Krīdā rūs- | tīcā || cōnfōr- | mātā sēcū- | ri. *Catul.*

1. In this verse, as it appears in Catullus, the *Glyconic* and the *Pherecratean* appear with such variations as are allowed in that poet (688). Hence the Trochee *quēreūs* for the Spondee, in the example.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

SECTION III.

THE VERSIFICATION OF VIRGIL, HORACE, OVID, AND JUVENAL.

696. VIRGIL AND JUVENAL.—Virgil in his Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid, and Juvenal in his Satires use only the Dactylic Hexameter. See 671.

697. OVID.—Ovid uses the Hexameter in his Metamorphoses, but the Elegiac Distich in his Epistles and other works. See 676. 2.

698. HORACE.—Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires, but in his Lyrics, i. e., in his Odes and Epodes, he uses a great variety of Metre.

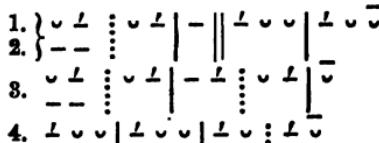
699. LYRICS OF HORACE.—Most of the Odes and Epodes consist of Stanzas of two, three, or four verses; but a few of them consist entirely of a single kind of verse.

LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

700. For convenience of reference the following outline of the Lyric metres of Horace is here inserted.

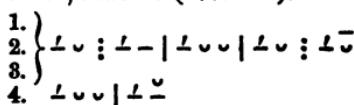
A. *Stanzas of Four Verses.*

I. ALCAIC STANZA.—First and second verses, Greater Alcaics (692); third, Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter (685. I.); fourth, Alcaic (691. II.).



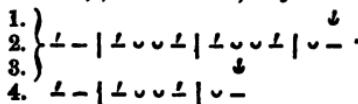
In thirty-seven Odes: I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 18, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.

II. SAPPHIC AND ADONIC.—The first three verses, Sapphics (691. IV.); the fourth, Adonic (677. III.).



In Twenty-six Odes: I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV. 2, 6, 11, and Sec. Hymn.

III. ASCLEPIADEAN AND GLYCONIC.—The first three verses, Asclepiadēans (689. III.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).



In nine Odes: I. 6, 15, 24, 33; II. 12; III. 10, 16; IV. 5, 12.

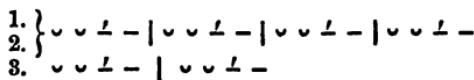
IV. ASCLEPIADEAN, PHEREGRATĒAN, AND GLYCONIC.—The first two verses, Asclepiadēans (689. III.); the third, Pherecratēan (689. II.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).



In seven Odes: I. 5, 14, 21, 23; III. 7, 13; IV. 18.

B. Stanzas of Three Verses.

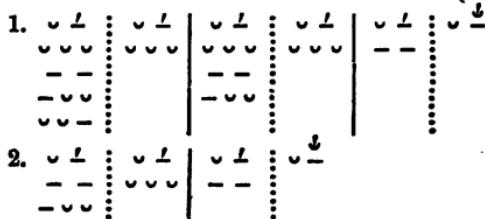
V. IONIC A MINORE (687).—The first two verses, Tetrameters: the third, Dimeter.



In Ode III. 12.

C. Stanzas of Two Verses.

VI. LAMBIC TRIMETER AND LAMBIC DIMETER (683, 685).



In the first ten Epodes.

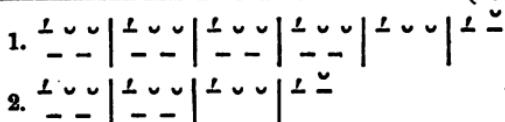
VII. GLYCONIC AND ASCLEPIADEAN (689. I., III.).



2. See IV, 1.

In twelve Odes : I. 3, 13, 19, 36 ; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28 ; IV. 1, 3.

VIII. HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC TETRAMETER (671; 677. I.).



In two Odes : I. 7, 28, and Epode 12.

IX. HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (671; 677. II.).

1. See VIII. 1.
2. $\frac{1}{2} \cup \cup | \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup | \frac{1}{2}$

In Ode IV. 7.

X. HEXAMETER AND IAMBIC TRIMETER (671, 688).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 1.

In Epode 16.

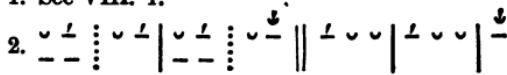
XI. HEXAMETER AND IAMBIC DIMETER (671, 685).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 2.

In Epodes 14 and 15.

XII. HEXAMETER AND IAMBICO-DACTYLIC (671, 694).

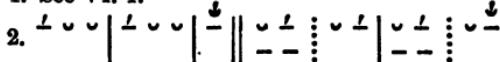
1. See VIII. 1.



In Epode 18.

XIII. IAMBIC TRIMETER AND DACTYLIC-O-IAMBIC (683, 693).

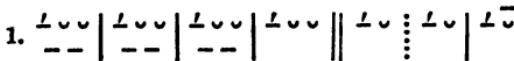
1. See VI. 1.



In Epode 11.

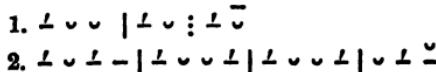
XIV. TROCHAIC DIMETER CATALECTIC AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (681, 684).

In Ode II. 18.

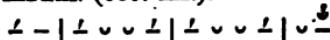
XV. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (691. I.; 684).

2. See XIV. 2.

In Ode I. 4.

XVI. ARISTOPHANIC AND GREATER SAPPHIC (691. III.; 690. II.).

In Ode I. 8.

D. Verses used Singly.**XVII. ASCLEPIADEAN (689. III.).**

In three Odes: I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

XVIII. GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN (689. IV.).

In three Odes: I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

XIX. IAMBIC TRIMETER (683). See VI. 1.

In Epode 17.

701. INDEX TO THE LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, 700.

BOOK I.		Odes.	Metres.	Odes.	Metres.	Odes.	Metres.
1,	.....	XVII.	4,	II.	26,	I.	
2,	.....	II.	5,	I.	27,	II.	
3,	.....	VII.	6,	II.	28,	VII.	
4,	.....	XV.	7,	I.	29,	I.	
5,	.....	IV.	8,	II.	30,	XVII.	
6,	.....	III.	9,	I.			
7,	.....	VIII.	10,	II.			
8,	.....	XVI.	11,	I.			
9,	.....	I.	12,	III.	1,	VII.	
10,	.....	II.	13,	I.	2,	II.	
11,	.....	XVIII.	14,	I.	3,	VII.	
12,	.....	II.	15,	I.	4,	I.	
13,	.....	VII.	16,	II.	5,	III.	
14,	.....	IV.	17,	I.	6,	II.	
15,	.....	III.	18,	XIV.	7,	IX.	
16,	.....	I.	19,	I.	8,	XVII.	
17,	.....	I.	20,	I.	9,	I.	
18,	.....	XVIII.			10,	XVIII.	
					11,	II.	
					12,	III.	
19,	.....	VII.	1,	I.	13,	IV.	
20,	.....	II.	2,	I.	14,	I.	
21,	.....	IV.	3,	I.	15,	I.	
22,	.....	II.	4,	I.			
23,	.....	IV.	5,	I.			
24,	.....	III.	6,	I.			
25,	.....	II.	7,	IV.	Epodes.	Metres.	
26,	.....	I.	8,	II.	1,	VI.	
27,	.....	I.	9,	VII.	2,	VI.	
28,	.....	VIII.	10,	III.	3,	VI.	
29,	.....	I.	11,	II.	4,	VI.	
30,	.....	II.	12,	V.	5,	VI.	
31,	.....	I.	13,	IV.	6,	VI.	
32,	.....	II.	14,	II.	7,	VI.	
33,	.....	III.	15,	VII.	8,	VI.	
34,	.....	I.	16,	III.	9,	VI.	
35,	.....	I.	17,	I.	10,	VI.	
36,	.....	VII.	18,	II.	11,	XIII.	
37,	.....	I.	19,	VII.	12,	VIII.	
38,	.....	II.	20,	II.	13,	XII.	
			21,	I.	14,	XI.	
			22,	II.	15,	XI.	
1,	.....	I.	23,	I.	16,	X.	
2,	.....	II.	24,	VII.	17,	XIX.	
3,	.....	I.	25,	VII.	SECULAR HYMN,	II.	

A P P E N D I X.

I. FIGURES OF SPEECH.

702. A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form*, *construction*, or *signification* of words.

Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology*; from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax*, and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric*.

703. The Figures of Etymology are the following :

1. **APHAERESIS** takes a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word : 'et for est.
 2. **SYNCOPE** takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word: virum for virōrum, dīce for dīcessā.
 3. **APOCOPĒ** takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word : tūn' for tūne.
 4. **PROSTHESIS** prefixes a letter or syllable to a word: tētūlī for tūlī.
 5. **EPENTHESIS** inserts a letter or syllable in a word: Alcūmēna for Alcmēna, dīltūm for dīltūm.
 6. **PAREGOGĒ** adds a letter or syllable to a word: dicier for dici.
 7. **METATHESIS** transposes letters or syllables: pistris for pristis.
 8. **ANTITHESIS** substitutes one letter for another: vulnus for vulnus, olli for illi.
- See also Figures of Prosody, 669.

704. The Figures of Syntax are the following :

I. ELLIPSIS is the omission of one or more words of a sentence :

Habītābat ad Jōvis (*sc. templum*), *He dwelt near the temple of Jupiter.*
Liv. Abiit, ēvāsit (*et*), *He has gone, has escaped.* Cic.

1. **ASYNDETON** is an ellipsis of a conjunction. See 587. I. 6; 587. III. 4.
2. **ZEUGMA** is an ellipsis which employs a single verb with two subjects or objects, though strictly applicable to only one:

Pācem àn bellum gōrens, *whether at peace* (Agens) *or waging war.* Sall.

3. **APOSIOPEPSIS**, also called *Reticentia*, used for rhetorical effect, is an ellipsis which leaves the sentence unfinished:

Quos ego —— sed mōtoꝝ praestat compōnēre fluctus. *Whom I —— but it is better to calm the troubled waves.* Virg.

4. **PROVERBS** are often elliptical.

5. **ELLIPSIS OF FATIO, DICO, ONO.** See 460. 8; 602, II. 8.

II. PLEONASM is the use of superfluous words :

Erant ItInēra duo, qulbus Itinerib⁹ exire possent, *There were two ways by which ways they might depart.* Caes. Eurusque Nōtusque ruunt, *Both Eurus and Notus rush forth.* Virg.

1. **POLYSYNTETON** is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.
2. **HENDIADYS** is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

Armis virisque, for viris armatis, with armed men. Tac.

3. **ANAPHORA** is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses : *Me cuncta Itália, me üniversa civitas consùleム dökläravit, Me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul.* Cic.

4. **EPITRHOA** is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses : *Laelius návus érat, doctus érat, Laelius was diligent, was learned.* Cic.

5. Monosyllabic prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et—et* :

Et in bellicis et in civilibus officiis, both in military and in civil offices. Cic.
Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

6. A demonstrative, pronoun or adverb, *id, hoc, illud, sic, ita*, is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid*, in *quid censes* with a clause :

Illud te óro ut diligens sis, I ask you (that thing) to be (that you be) diligent. Cic.

7. Pronouns redundant with *quidem*. See 446. 1.

8. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet*:

Ut licet permittitur = licet, It is lawful (is permitted that it is, &c.). Cic.

9. A word is often repeated for emphasis.

10. Circumlocutions with *res, génus, módus, and rátio* are common.

III. ENALLAGE is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another :

Pöpulus lète rex (for *regnans*), *a people of extensive sway* (ruling extensively). Virg. Sérus (*sero*) in coelum rēdeas, *May you return late to heaven.* Hor. Vina cǎdis (*vinis cǎdos*) önérāre, *to fill the flasks with wine.* Virg.

1. **ANTIMERIA** is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.

2. **HYPALLAGE** is the use of one case for another, as in the last example.

3. **SYNTHESIS** is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. See 488. 6 and 461.

4. **ANACOLÜTHON** is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence :

Si, ut dicunt, omnes Graios esse (Graii sunt), if, as they say, all are Greeks. Cic.

IV. HYPERBATON is a transposition of words or clauses :

Praeter arma nihil érat súper (*súpererat*), *Nothing remained, except their arms.* Nep. Välet atque vivit (*vivit atque välet*), *He is alive and well.* Ter.

1. **ANASTROPE** is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. **HYSTERO PROTERON** is a transposition of clauses, as in the second example.

3. **Tmesis** is the separation of a compound word. See 52a. 2. 2).

705. Figures of Rhetoric, also called Tropes, comprise several varieties. The following are the most important.

I. **METAPHOR**.—This is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet or action of another :

*Rei pùblicae vulnus (for *damnum*), the wound of the republic.* Cic.
Naufrágium fortünae, the wreck of fortune. Cic.

II. **METONYMY** is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it :

Aequo Marte (for *proelio*) pugnatum est, *They fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Fūrit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *The fire rages.* Virg.

By this figure the cause is often put for the effect and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, etc.: *Mars* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vinum*, *nōbilis* for *nōbiles*, *Graecia* for *Graeci*, *laurea* for *victoria*, etc.

III. SYNECDOCHE is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

In vestra tecta (*vestras dōmos*) discēdite, *Depart to your homes.* Cic. Stātio māle fida cārnis (*nāvibus*), *a station unsafe for ships.* Virg.

IV. IRONY is the use of a word for its opposite:

Lēgātos bōnus (for *mālus*) impērātor vester non admisit, *Your good commander did not admit the ambassadors.* Liv.

1. *Enīm, etēnīm, scilicet, videlicet, nīmīrum, crēdo,* and the like, are often ironical. See 508. 8.

V. HYPERBOLE is an exaggeration:

Ventis et fulmīnis ūcior ūlis, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning.* Virg.

VI. LITOTES denies something instead of affirming the opposite:

Non ūpus est = pernīciōsum est, *It is not necessary.* Cic.

II. LATIN AUTHOES.

708. The history of Roman literature embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods:

I. The ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—From 250 to 81 B. C. The principal authors of this period are:

Ennius,	Plautus,	Terence,	Lucretius.
---------	----------	----------	------------

II. The CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Golden and the Silver age:

1. The *Golden Age*.—From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. The principal authors are:

Cicero,	Nepos,	Horace,	Tibullus,
Caesar,	Livy,	Ovid,	Propertius.
Sallust,	Virgil,	Catullus,	

2. The *Silver Age*.—From 14 to 180 A. D. The principal authors are:

Phaedrus,	The Plinies,	Quintilian,	Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suetonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial.

III. The Post-Classical Period.—This embraces the Brazen and the Iron Age:

1. The *Brazen Age*.—From 180 to 476 A.D. The principal authors are:

Justin,	Eutropius,	Lactantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age*.—From 476 to 550 A.D. The principal authors are:

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priscian.
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------

III. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

707. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

708. PECULIARITIES.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month;

2. The Nones, the *fifth*,—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October;

3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*,—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Hence after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *pridie Cälendas*, *Nōnas*, etc.; the second before each by *die tertio* (not *secundo*; third, not second) *ante Cälendas*, etc., the third, by *die quarto*, etc., and so on through the month.

1. NUMERALS.—This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the *Calenda*, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the *Calenda*, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *pridie ante Cälendas* becomes the second before the *Calenda*, *die tertio ante Cälendas*, the third, etc.

2. NAME OF MONTH.—In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Cälendas*, *Nōnas*, etc., as, *die quarto ante Nōnas Januarias*, often shortened to, *quarto ante Nōnas Jan.* or *IV. ante Nōnas Jan.* or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nōnas Jan.*, the second of January.

3. ANTE DIEM.—Instead of *die*—*ante, ante diem* is common, as, *ante diem quartum Nōnas Jan.* for *die quarto ante Nōnas Jan.*

4. AS INDECLINABLE NOUNS.—The expressions *ante diem*—*Cul.*, etc., *pridie Cal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Idus Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv.* *Ad pridie Nōnas Maias*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

709. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, Oct.	Jan. Aug. December.	April, June, Sept. Nov.	February.
1	CALENDIS. ¹	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.
2	VI. Nōnas. ¹	IV. Nōnas.	IV. Nōnas.	IV. Nōnas.
3	V.	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie Nōnas.	Pridie Nōnas.	Pridie Nōnas.
5	III. "	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6	Pridie Nōnas.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	NONIS.	VII.	VII.	VII.
8	VIII. Idus.	VL.	VL.	VL.
9	VII.	V.	V.	V.
10	VL.	IV.	IV.	IV.
11	V.	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III. "	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX. Calend. ²	XVIII. Calend. ²	XVI. Calend. ²
15	IDIBUS.	XVIII.	XVII.	XV.
16	XVII. Calend. ²	XVII.	XVI.	XIV.
17	XV.	XV.	XV.	XIII.
18	XV.	XV.	XIV.	XII.
19	XIV.	XIV.	XIII.	XI.
20	XIII.	XIII.	XII.	X.
21	XII.	XII.	XI.	IX.
22	XI.	XI.	X.	VIII.
23	X.	X.	IX.	VII.
24	IX.	IX.	VIII.	VI.
25	VIII.	VIII.	VII.	V. (VI.) ³
26	VII.	VII.	VI.	IV. (V.)
27	VI.	VI.	V.	III. (IV.)
28	V.	V.	IV.	Prid. Cal. (III. Cal.)
29	IV.	IV.	III.	(Prid. Cal.)
30	III. "	III.	Pridie Calend.	
31	Pridie Calend.	Pridie Calend.		

710. ENGLISH AND LATIN DATES.—The table (709) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but in translating Latin, it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

¹ To the Calenda, Nōnas, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nōnas, Idus, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (708. III. 2).

² The Calendas of the following month are of course meant, as the 16th of March for instance is, *XVII. Calendas Aprilis.*

³ The enclosed forms apply to leap-year.

VIII. ante Idus Jan. = 13 — (8 — 1) = 13 — 7 = 6th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Cal. Feb. = 31 — (18 — 2) = 31 — 16 = 15th of January.

In Leap-year the 24th and 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Cal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered precisely as if the month contained as usual only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V.*, *IV.*, *III. Cal. Mart.*, and *pridie Cal. Mart.*

711. DIVISIONS OF DAY AND NIGHT.—The Roman day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night from sun-set to sun-rise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. **NIGHT WATCHES.**—The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. **LENGTH OF ROMAN HOUR.**—The hour, being uniformly $\frac{1}{12}$ of the day or of the night, of course varied in length, with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

IV. ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

712. COINS.—The principal Roman coins were the *as*, of copper, the *sestertius*, *quinarius*, *dēnārius*, of silver, and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period was as follows:

As,	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1 to 2 cents.
Sestertius,	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	4	"
Quinarius,	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	8	"
Dēnārius,	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	16	"
Aureus = 25 dēnārii,	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	\$4.00.	

1. **AS—THE UNIT OF MONEY.**—The *as* was originally the unit of the Roman currency, and contained a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time in weight and value till at last it contained only $\frac{1}{24}$ of a pound.

But whatever its weight, $\frac{1}{12}$ of the *as* is always called an *uncia*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *sextans*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *quadrans*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *triens*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *quinqua*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *sēmis*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *septunx*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *dec*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *duodecim*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *dextans*, $\frac{1}{12}$ a *douina*.

2. **SESTERTIUS, QUINARIUS, AND DENARIUS.**—The *sestertius* contained originally 2½ asses, the *quinarius* 5, and the *dēnārius* 10; but as the *as* depreciated in value, the number of *asses* in these coins was increased.

3. **AS—THE GENERAL UNIT OF COMPUTATION.**—The *as* is also used as the unit in other things as well as in money. Thus

1) **In Weight.**—The *as* is then a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) **In Measure.**—the *as* is then a foot or a *jugérum* (718), and the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ of a foot or a *jugerum*.

3) *In Interest*.—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *semis* is $\frac{1}{6}$ per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance*.—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia* $\frac{1}{12}$ of it: *hōres ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hōres ex dodrante*, heir of $\frac{1}{12}$.

713. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque *sestertii*, 5 *sesterces*, viginti *sestertii*, 20 *sesterces*, ducenti *sestertii*, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand *sesterces* are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 *sesterces*, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sesterium* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia*:

Duo *millia sestertium*, or *duo sestertia*, 2,000 *sesterces*; quinque *millia sestertium*, or *quinque sestertia*, 5,000 *sesterces*.

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *bina sestertia*, for *duo sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of *sesterces*, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 *sesterces* is used with the proper numeral adverb, *dēcies*, *vicies*, etc. Thus

Dēcies sestertium, 1,000,000 ($10 \times 100,000$) *sesterces*; *Vicies sestertium*, 2,000,000 ($20 \times 100,000$) *sesterces*.

1. *SESTERTIUM*.—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 *sesterces* was *Dēcies centōna millia sestertium*. *Centōna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension.

2. *SESTERTIUM OMITTED*.—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: *aa*, *dēcies*, 1,000,000 *sesterces*.

3. *SIGN HS*.—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium*:

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = *sestertii*). Dena HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = *sestertia*). Decies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = *sestertium*).

714. WEIGHT.—The basis of Roman weights is the *Libra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about $11\frac{1}{2}$ ounces avoirdupois.

1. *OUNCES*.—The *Libra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. *FRACTIONS OF OUNCES*.—Parts of ounces also have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = *semuncia*, $\frac{1}{3}$ = *duella*, $\frac{1}{4}$ = *sicilicus*, $\frac{1}{6}$ = *sextilla*, $\frac{1}{12}$ = *drachma*, $\frac{1}{24}$ = *scrūpulum*, $\frac{1}{48}$ = *obolus*.

715. DRY MEASURE.—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. **SEXTARIUS.**—This is $\frac{1}{6}$ of a modius.

2. **PARTS OF THE SEXTARIUS.**—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = hēmina, $\frac{1}{3}$ = ācētābūlum, $\frac{1}{5}$ = cyāthus.

716. LIQUID MEASURE.—The *Amphōra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. **CULUS.**—Twenty *amphōrae* make one *Culus*.

2. **PARTS OF AMPHORA.**—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = urna, $\frac{1}{3}$ = congius, $\frac{1}{4}$ = sextarius, $\frac{1}{8}$ = hēmina, $\frac{1}{12}$ = quartarius, $\frac{1}{16}$ = ācētābūlum, $\frac{1}{20}$ = cyāthus.

717. LONG MEASURE.—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. **COMBINATIONS OF FEET.**—Palmīpea = $1\frac{1}{2}$ Roman feet; cūbitus = $1\frac{1}{2}$; passus = 5; stādium = 625.

2. **PARTS OF FOOT.**—Palmus = $\frac{1}{4}$ foot; uncia = $\frac{1}{12}$; digitus = $\frac{1}{24}$.

718. SQUARE MEASURE.—The basis of this measure is the *Jugērum*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *Jugērum* have the same name as those of the *As*: uncia = $\frac{1}{4}$, sextans = $\frac{1}{12}$, etc. See 712. 1.

V. ABBREVIATIONS.

719. Names.

A. = Aulus.	L. = Lūcius.	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.
Ap. = Appius.	M. = Marcus.	S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
C. (G.) = Caius (Gaius).	M'. = Mānius.	Ser. = Servius.
Cn. (Gn.) = Cnaeus (Gnaeus).	Mam. = Māmercus.	Sp. = Spūrius.
D. = Dēcimus.	N. = Nūmērius.	T. = Titus.
	P. = Publius.	Ti. (Tib.) = Tibērius.

720. Other Abbreviations.

A. D. = ante diem.	F. C. = fāciendum cū- rāvit.	Proc. = prōconsul.
Aed. = aedilis.	Id. = Idus.	Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bōnum, fēlix, faustumque sit.
A. U. C. = anno urbis conditae.	Imp. = impērātor.	Quir. = Quiritea.
Cal. (Kal.) = Cālendae.	Leg. = lēgātus.	Resp. = res publica.
Cos. = consul.	Non. = Nōnæ.	S. = sēnātus.
Coss. = consüles.	O. M. = optimus max- imus.	S. C. = sēnātus con- sultum.
D. = divus.	P. C. = patres conscrip- ti.	S. D. P. = sēlūtem di- cit plūrīmam.
D. D. = dōno dēdit.	Pont. Max. = pontifex maximus.	S. P. Q. R. = sēnātus pōpūlusque Rōmā- nus.
Des. = désignātus.	P. R. = pōpūlus Rō- mānus.	Tr. Pl. = trībūnus plē- bis.
D. M. = diis mānībus.	Pr. = praeator.	
D. S. = de suo.	Praef. = praefectus.	
D. S. P. P. = de sua pēcūnia pōsuit.		
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rō- mānus.		
F. = filius.		

INDEX OF VERBS.

721. THIS INDEX contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention.

But, in regard to compounds of prepositions, two important facts must be borne in mind :

1. That the elements—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form. See 338, 2, and 341, 3.
2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine. See 214.

A.

Abdo, ēre, dīdi, dītum, 273.
 Ab-Igo. See āgo, 273, II.
 Ab-jicio. See jācio, 273, II.
 Ab-luo. See luo, 280.
 Ab-nuo. See annuo, 280.
 Abōleo, ēre, ēvi, itum, 264, 1.
 Abōlesco, ēre, īlēvi, īltum, 277.
 Ab-ripi. See rāpio, 275.
 Abs-con-do. See abdo, 273.
 Ac-cendo, ēre, i, censum, 273, III.
 Ac-cido. See cādo, 273, I. 2.
 Ac-cino. See cāno, 273.
 Ac-cipio. See cāpio, 273, II.
 Ac-cōlo. See cōlo, 274.
 Ac-cumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbtum, 275.
 Acesco, ēre, īcui, —, 282.
 Ac-quiro. See quaero, 278, 2.
 Acuo, ēre, ui, titum, 279.
 Ad-do. See abdo, 273.
 Ad-Imo. See īmo, 273, II.
 Ad-ipiscor, i, īdeptus sum, 283.
 Ad-ōlesco. See abōlesco, 277.
 Ad-ōrior. See ōrior, 288.
 Ad-spīcio. See aspīcio, 272, I. 2.
 Ad-sto. See sto, 261.
 Af-fēro. See fēro, 292.
 Agnosco. See nosco, 278, 3.
 Ag-grādior. See grādior, 283.
 Ago, ēre, īgi, actum, 273, II.
 Aio, def., 297.
 Albeo, ēre, —, 267.
 Algeo, ēre, alsi, —, 269, I.
 Al-līcio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 221, 2;
 272, I. 2; 275.

Al-luo. See luo, 280.
 Alo, īre, īlui, īltum, altum, 274.
 Amb-Igo. See āgo, 273, II.
 Ambio, 295, 3.
 Amīcio, ire, ui, tum, 285.
 Amo, 205.
 Amplexor, i, amplexus sum, 283.
 Ango, ēre, anxi, —, 280.
 Annuo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Apāge, def., 297.
 Apērio, ire, ui, tum, 285.
 Apiscor, i, aptus sum, 283.
 Ap-pāreo. See pāreo, 265; 301.
 Ap-pēto. See pēto, 278, 2.
 Ap-plīco. See plīco, 260.
 Ap-pōno. See pōno, 275.
 Arcesso, ēre, īvi, ītum, 278, 2.
 Ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, 269, I.
 Aresco, ēre, īrui, —, 282.
 Arguo, ēre, ui, ītum, 279.
 Ar-ripi. See rāpio, 275.
 A-scendo. See scando, 273, III.
 A-spergo. See spargo, 272, II.
 A-spīcio, ēre, spexi, spectum, 272,
 I. 2.
 As-sentior, iri, sensus sum, 288.
 As-sideo. See sēdeo, 270, II.
 At-texo. See tēxo, 275.
 At-tīneo. See tīneo, 268.
 At-tingo. See tango, 273.
 At-tollo. See tollo, 273.
 Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, 271.
 Audio, 211.
 Au-fēro. See fēro, 292.
 Augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, 269,
 II.
 Ave, def., 297.

B.

Balbūtio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Bātuo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Bibo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Blandior, iri, itus sum, 230.

C.

Cădo, ēre, cēcidi, casum, 273, I. 2.
 Caecūtio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Caedo, ēre, cēcidi, caesum, 273, I. 2.
 Călesco, ēre, călui, —, 282.
 Calveo, ēre, —, 267.
 Candeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Căneo, ēre, —, 267.
 Căno, ēre, cēcīni, cantum, 273.
 Căpesso, ēre, Ivi, itum, 278, 2.
 Căpio, ēre, cēpi, captum, 222; 273, II.

Carpo, ēre, si, tum, 272.
 Căveo, ēre, căvi, cautum, 270, II.
 Cădo, ēre, cessi, cessum, 272, II.
 Cădo, def., 297.
 Cello, obs. See *excello*, 274.
 Ceno, 260, 2.
 Censeo, ēre, ui, censem, 268.
 Cerno, ēre, crēvi, crētum, 277.
 Cieo, ēre, civi, cītum, 269, 1.
 Cingo, ēre, cinxi, cinctum, 272.
 Circum-sisto. See *sisto*, 273.
 Clango, ēre, —, 281.
 Claudio, ēre, clausi, clausum, 272, II.
 Claudio, ēre (*to be lame*), —, 281.
 Co-ălesco, ēre, ălui, ăllitum, 282.
 Co-arguo. See *arguo*, 279.
 Coepi, def., 297.

Cognosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.
 Cōgo, ēre, coēgi, coactum. See *ăgo*, 273, II.
 Col-lido. See *laedo*, 272, II.
 Col-ligo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Col-luceo. See *lūceo*, 269.
 Cōlo, ēre, ui, cultum, 274.
 Com-ădo. See *ădo*, 291.
 Commīniscor, i, commentus sum, 283.
 Com-mōveo. See *mōveo*, 270.
 Com-parco (perco). See *parco*, 273, I. 2.
 Compērio, ire, pēri, pertum, 287.
 Compesco, ēre, pescui, —, 275.
 Com-pingo. See *pango*, 278.

Com-plexor, i, plexus sum, 283.
 Com-pleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 264.
 Com-primo. See *prēmo*, 272, II.
 Com-pungo, ēre, punxi, punctum.
 See *pungo*, 273.
 Con-cido. See *cădo*, 273, I. 2.
 Con-cido. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Con-cino. See *căno*, 273.
 Con-cludo. See *claudio*, 272, II.
 Con-cūpisco, ēre, cūpīvi, cūpitum,
 282.
 Con-cūtio. See *quātio*, 272, II.
 Con-do. See *abđo*, 273.
 Con-fercio. See *farcio*, 286.
 Con-ficio. See *făcio*, 273, II.
 Confit, def., 297.
 Con-fiteor. See *făteor*, 271.
 Con-fringo. See *frango*, 273, II.
 Congruo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Con-iveo, ēre, nivi, nixi, —, 269, I.
 Con-sēro. See *sēro*, 276.
 Con-sisto. See *sisto*, 273.
 Con-spīcio, ēre, spexi, spectum, 221,
 2.
 Con-stītuo. See *stătuo*, 279.
 Con-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Consuesco, 297, I. 2.
 Consūlo, ēre, ui, tum, 274.
 Con-temno. See *temno*, 281.
 Con-texo. See *texo*, 275.
 Con-tingo. See *tango*, 273; 301.
 Con-vălesco, ēre, vălui, vălitum, 282.
 Cōquo, ēre, coxi, coctum, 272.
 Cor-răpio. See *răpio*, 275.
 Cor-ruo. See *ruo*, 279.
 Crēbresco, ēre, crēbrui, —, 282, II.
 Crēdo, ēre, credidi, creditum, 273.
 Crēpo, āre, ui, itum, 260.
 Cresco, ēre, crēvi, crētum, 277.
 Căbo, āre, ui, itum, 260.
 Cūdo, ēre, cūdi, cūsum, 273, III.
 Cumbo. See *accumbo*, 275.
 Cūpio, ēre, Ivi, itum, 221; 278.
 Curro, ēre, cūcurri, cursum, 273, I. 2.

D.

Dē-cerpo, ēre, si, tum, 272, I. 1.
 Dēcet, *impers.*, 299.
 Dē-do. See *abđo*, 273.
 Dē-fendo, ēre, i, fensum, 273, III.
 Dē-fătiscor. See *fătiscor*, 283.

Dē-fit, *def.*, 297.
 Dēgo, ēre, dēgi. See *ägo*, 273, II.
 Dēleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 264.
 Dē-līgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Dē-mīco. See *mīco*, 260.
 Dēmo, ēre, dempsi, demptum, 272.
 Dē-pango. See *pango*, 273.
 Dē-prīmo. See *prēmo*, 272, II.
 Depso, ēre, ui, Itum, tum, 275.
 De-scendo. See *scando*, 273, III.
 Dē-sīlio. See *sālio*, 285.
 Dē-sīpio. See *sāpio*, 278.
 Dē-tendo. See *tendo*, 273.
 Dē-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 268.
 Dē-vortor. See *vertō*, 273, III.
 Dico, ēre, dixi, dictum, 272; 237.
 Dif-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Dignosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.
 Di-līgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Di-mīco. See *mīco*, 260.
 Di-rīgo, ēre, rexī, rectum, 272, I. 1.
 Disco, ēre, didīci, —, 273.
 Dis-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 260.
 Dis-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 275.
 Dis-pertior. See *partior*, 288.
 Dis-plīceo. See *plāceo*, 265.
 Dis-sīdeo. See *sēdeo*, 270, II.
 Di-stinguo. See *stinguo*, 281.
 Di-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Dītesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Divido, ēre, vīsi, visum, 272, II.
 Do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, 261.
 Dōceo, ēre, ui, tum, 268.
 Dōmo, āre, ui, Itum, 260.
 Dūco, ēre, duxi, ctum, 272; 237.
 Dulcesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Düresco, ēre, dūrui, —, 282, II.

E.

Edo, ēre, ēdi, ēsum, 273, II.; 291.
 E-do, ēre, ēdīdi, editum, 273.
 Ef-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Egeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 E-līcio, ēre, ui, Itum, 275.
 E-līgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 E-mīco. See *mīco*, 260.
 Emīneo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Emo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, 273, II.
 E-nēco, āre, ui, tum, 260.
 Eo, ire, Ivi, Itum, 295.
 Esūrio, ire, —, Itum, 284, 2.

E-vādo, ēre, vāsi, vāsum, 272, II.
 Evānesco, ēre, ēvānui, —, 282.
 Ex-ardesco, ēre, arsi, arsum, 282.
 Excello, ēre, ui (rare), —, 274.
 Ex-clūdo. See *clāudo*, 272, II.
 Ex-curro. See *curro*, 273, I. 2.
 Ex-ōlesco. See *ābōlesco*, 277.
 Expēdit, *impers.*
 Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, 283.
 Ex-pērior, iri, pertus sum, 288.
 Ex-pleo. See *compleo*, 264.
 Ex-plīco. See *plīco*, 260.
 Ex-plōdo. See *plaudo*, 272, II.
 Ex-stinguo, ēre, stinxi, stinctum, 272.
 Ex-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Ex-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Ex-tollo. See *tollo*, 278.

F.

Fācesso, ēre, Ivi, i, Itum, 278, 2.
 Fācio, ēre, fēci, factum, 221; 273, II.; 237.
 Fallo, ēre, fēfelli, falsum, 273, I. 2.
 Farcio, ire, farsi, fartum, farctum, 286.
 Fāri, *def.*, 297.
 Fāteor, īri, fassus sum, 271.
 Fātisco, ēre, —, 281.
 Fātiscor, i, —, 283.
 Fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, 270, II.
 Fendo, obs. See *dēfendo*, 273, III.
 Fērio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, 292.
 Fērōcio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Ferveo, ēre, servī, serbui, —, 270, III.
 Fido, ēre, fissus sum, 283.
 Figo, ēre, fixi, fixum, 272, II.
 Findo, ēre, fidī, fissum, 273, III.
 Fingo, ēre, finxi, fictum, 272, I.
 Flō, flīri, factus sum, 294.
 Flāveo, ēre, —, 267.
 Flecto, ēre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 264.
 Flōreo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Flōresco, ēre, flōrui, —, 282.
 Fluo, ēre, fluxi, fluxum, 279, 1.
 Fōdio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, 221; 273, II.
 Fōrem, *def.*, 297, III. 2.
 Fōveo, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 270, II.
 Frango, ēre, frēgi, fractum, 278, II.
 Frēmo, ēre, ui, Itum, 274.

Frendo, ēre, —, fressum, frēsum, 272, II.
 Frīco, āre, ui, ātum, tum, 260.
 Frīgeo, ēre, frixi (rare), —, 269, I.
 Frondeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Fruor, i, fructus, frūtus sum, 283.
 Fūgio, ēre, flūgi, fugitum, 221; 273, II.
 Fulcio, ire, fulsi, fultum, 286.
 Fulgeo, ēre, fulsi, —, 269, I.
 Fulminat, *impers.*, 300.
 Fundo, ēre, fūdi, fūsum, 273, II.
 Fungor, i, functus sum, 283.
 Fūro, ēre, ui, —, 274.

G.

Gannio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 271.
 Gēmo, ēre, ui, Itum, 274.
 Gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum, 272.
 Gigno, ēre, gēnui, gēnlum, 274.
 Glisco, ēre, —, 281.
 Grādior, i, gressus sum, 221; 283.
 Grandesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Grandinat, *impers.*, 300.
 Grāvesco, ēre, —, 282, II.

H.

Haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, 269, I.
 Haurio, ire, hausī, haustum, haustūrus, hausūrus, 286.
 Hēbeo, ēre, —, 267.
 Hisco, ēre, —, 281.
 Horreo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Hortor, 226.
 Hūmeo, ēre, —, 267.

I.

Ico, ēre, Ici, ictum, 273, III.
 Il-līcio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 221; 272, I. 2.
 Il-lido. See laedo, 272, II.
 Imbuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Immīneo, ēre, —, 267.
 Im-parco. See parco, 273, I. 2.
 Im-pertior. See partior, 288.
 Im-pingo. See pango, 273.

In-cendo. See accendo, 273, III.
 Incesso, ēre, Ivi, i, —, 278, 2.
 In-cido. See caedo, 273, I. 2.
 In-crēpo. See crēpo, 260.
 In-cresco. See cresco, 277.
 In-cumbo. See accumbo, 275.
 In-cūtio. See quātio, 272, II.
 Ind-igeo, ēre, ui, —. See ēgeo, 266.
 Ind-ipiscor. See āpiscor, 283.
 In-do. See abdo, 273.
 Indulgeo, ēre, dūsi, dultum, 269, II.
 Ineptio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Infīt, def., 297.
 Ingruo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 In-nōtesco, ēre, nōtui, 282, II. 1.
 In-ōlesco. See ābōleco, 277.
 Inquam, def., 297.
 In-sideo. See sēdeo, 270, II.
 In-spīcio, ēre, spexi, spectum, 221.
 In-sto. See sto, 261.
 Intel-līgo. See lēgo, 273, II.
 Intērest, *impers.*, 301.
 Inter-nosco. See nosco, 278, 3.
 In-vētērasco, ēre, rāvi, rātum, 282.
 Irascor, i, —, 283.
 Ir-ruo. See ruo, 279.

J.

Jācio, ēre, jāci, jactum, 221; 273, II.
 Jūbeo, ēre, jussi, jussum, 269, I.
 Jūro, 260, 2.
 Jūvēesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Jūvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, 262.

L.

Labor, i, lapsus sum, 283.
 Lācesso, ēre, Ivi, Itum, 278, 2.
 Lācio, obs. See allīcio, 272, I. 2.
 Lacteo, ēre, —, 267.
 Laedo, ēre, laesi, laesum, 272, II.
 Lambo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Langueo, ēre, i, —, 270, III.
 Lāpidat, *impers.*, 300.
 Largior, Iri, Itus sum, 288.
 Lāteo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Lāvo, āre, lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, 262.
 Lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, 273, II.

Llibet, *impers.*, 299.
 Liceor, ēri, Itus sum, 271.
 Licet, *impers.*, 299.
 Lino, ēre, livi, lēvi, lītum, 278.
 Linquo, ēre, liqui, —, 273, II.
 Lliqueo, ēre, liqui (licui), 270, III.
 Lliqueat, *impers.*, 299.
 Liquor, i, —, 283.
 Lōquor, i, lōcūtus sum, 283.
 Lüceo, ēre, luxi, —, 269, I.
 Lücescit, *impers.*, 300.
 Lüdo, ēre, lusi, lūsum, 272, II.
 Lügeo, ēre, luxi, —, 269, I.
 Luo, ēre, lui, —, 280.

M.

Mācresco, ēre, macrui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Mādeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Mādesco, ēre, mādui, —, 282.
 Maereo, ēre, —, 267.
 Malo, malle, mālui, —, 298.
 Mando, ēre, i, mansum, 273, III.
 Māneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 269, I.
 Matūresco, ēre, matūrui, —, 282,
 II. 1.
 Mādeor, ēri, —, 271.
 Mēmīni, *def.*, 297.
 Mentior, Iri, Itus sum, 288.
 Mēreor, ēri, Itus sum, 271.
 Mergo, ēre, mersi, mersum, 272, II.
 Mētior, Iri, mensus sum, 288.
 Mēto, ēre, messui, messum, 275, II.
 Mētuo, ēre, ui, —, 280.
 Mīco, are, ui, —, 280.
 Minscor, *obs.* See *commīniscor*,
 283.
 Mīnuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Miseco, ēre, miscui, mistum, mix-
 tum, 268.
 Misēreor, ēri, Itus or tus sum, 271.
 Misēret, *impers.*, 299.
 Mitesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Mitto, ēre, misi, missum, 272, II.
 Mölior, Iri, Itus sum, 288.
 Mollesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Mölo, ēre, ui, Itum, 274.
 Mōneo, ēre, ui, Itum, 207.
 Mordeo, ēre, mōmordi, morsum, 270.
 Mōrior, i (Iri), mortuus sum, 221;
 283.
 Mōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 270, II.

Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269, I.
 Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269, I.

N.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum, 283.
 Nascor, i, nātus sum, 283.
 Necto, ēre, nexi, nexui, nexum, 272,
 II.; 275, II.
 Neg-ligo, ēre, lexi, lectum. See *lēgo*,
 273, II.
 Neo, ēre, nēvi, nētum, 264.
 Nē-queo, Ire, Ivi, Itum, 296.
 Nigresco, ēre, nigrui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Ningo, ēre, ninxi, —, 280.
 Niteo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Nitror, i, nīsus, nīxus sum, 283.
 Nōlo, nolle, nōlui, —, 293.
 Nosco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, 278, 3.
 Nūbo, ēre, nupsi, nuptum, 272.
 Nuo, *obs.* See *annuo*, 280.
 Nuptūrio, Ire, Ivi, —, 284, 2.

O.

Ob-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Ob-dormisco, ēre, dormīvi, dormi-
 tum, 282.
 Obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, 283.
 Ob-mūtesco, ēre, mūtui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Ob-sīdeo. See *sēdeo*, 270.
 Ob-sōlesco. See *abbōlesco*, 277.
 Ob-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Ob-surdeesco, ēre, surdui, —, 282.
 Ob-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 268.
 Oc-cido. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.
 Oc-cido. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Oc-cīno. See *cāno*, 273.
 Oc-cīpio. See *cāpio*, 273, II.
 Occūlo, ēre, ui, tum, 274.
 Odi, *def.*, 297.
 Of-fendo. See *dēfendo*, 273, III.
 Oleo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Olesco, *obsolete*. See *abbōlesco*, 277.
 Opērio, Ire, ui, tum, 285.
 Oportet, *impers.*, 299.
 Op-pērior, Iri, pertus, peritus sum,
 288.
 Ordior, Iri, orsus sum, 288.
 Os-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Ovat, *def.*, 297.

P.

Păciscor, i, pactus sum, 283.
 Paenitēt, *impers.*, 299.
 Palleo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Pando, ēre, i, pansum, passum, 273, III.
 Pango, ēre, pēpīgi, pactum, 273.
 Pango, ēre, panxi, pēgi, panctum, pactum, 273.
 Párco, ēre, pēpercí (parsi), parsum, 273, I. 2.
 Páreo, ēre, ui, itum, 265.
 Pário, ēre, pēpēri, partum, 221; 273.
 Partior, iri, itus sum, 288.
 Partúrio, ire, Ivi, —, 284, 2.
 Pasco, ēre, pāvi, pastum, 276.
 Páteo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Pátior, i, passus sum, 229; 221; 283.
 Páveo, ēre, pāvi, —, 270, II.
 Pecto, ēre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Pel·licio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 221; 272, I. 2.
 Pello, ēre, pēpili, pulsum, 273, I. 2.
 Pendeo, ēre, pēpendi, pensum, 270.
 Pendo, ēre, pēpendi, pensum, 273, I. 2.
 Per-cello. See *excello*, 274.
 Per-censeo. See *censeo*, 268.
 Per-do, ēre, dīdi, dītum. See *abdo*, 273.
 Pergo (*for per-rīgo*), ēre, perrexī, perrectum. See *rīgo*, 272.
 Per-pétior. See *pátior*, 283.
 Per-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Per-tineo. See *tēneo*, 268.
 Pessum-do. See *do*, 261.
 Pěto, ēre, Ivi, Itum, 278, 2.
 Piget, *impers.*, 299.
 Pingo, ēre, pinxi, pictum, 272, I.
 Pinsō (piso), ēre, i, ui, pinsustum, pistum, pinsum, 273, III.
 Plaudo, ēre, si, sum, 272, II.
 Plecto, ēre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Plector, *not used as Dep.* See *am-plexor*, 283.
 Pleo, *obsolete*. See *complexo*, 264.
 Pllico, ēre, ávi, ui, átum, Itum, 260.
 Pluo, ēre, i or vi, —, 280.
 Polleo, ēre, —, 267.
 Polliceor, éri, Itus sum, 271.
 Pôno, ēre, pôsui, pôsítum, 275.
 Posco, ēre, pôposci, —, 278, I. 2.

Pos-sídeo. See *sídeo*, 270, II.
 Possum, posse, pótui, —, 290.
 Pôtior, iri, Itus sum, 288.
 Poto, áre, ávi, átum, um, 260, 1 and 2.
 Prae-cino. See *cäno*, 273.
 Prae-curro. See *curro*, 273, I. 2.
 Prae-sídeo. See *sídeo*, 270, II.
 Prae-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Prae-vtor. See *verto*, 273, III.
 Prandeo, ēre, i, pransum, 270, III.
 Prehendo, ēre, i, hensum, 273, III.
 Prémo, ēre, pressi, pressum, 272, II.
 Prôd-igo. See *ágo*, 273, II.
 Prô-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Prôf'iciscor, i, prófectus sum, 283.
 Prô-fíteor. See *fâteor*, 271.
 Prômo, ēre, prompsi, promptum, 272, I.
 Prô-sum, prôdesse, prôfui, —, 290, III.
 Prô-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Psallo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Pûdet, *impers.*, 299.
 Puérasco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Pungo, ēre, püpügi, punctum, 273.

Q.

Quaero, ēre, quaesivi, quaesitum, 278, 2.
 Quaeso, def., 297.
 Quâtio, ēre, quassi, quassum, 221; 272, II.
 Queo, ire, Ivi, Itum, 296.
 Quéror, i, questus sum, 283.
 Quiesco, ēre, quiēvi, quiētum, 277.

R.

Rado, ēre, râsi, râsum, 272, II.
 Râpio, ēre, râpui, raptum, 221; 275.
 Raucio, ire, rausi, rausum, 286, II.
 Rê-censeo. See *censeo*, 268.
 Rê-cido. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rê-cido. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rê-crûdesco, ēre, crûdui, 282, II. 1.
 Rê-arguo. See *arguo*, 279.
 Red-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Rê-fello. See *fallo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rê-féro. See *fëro*, 292.
 Rêfert, *impers.*, 301.
 Rêgo, ēre, rexī, rectum, 209; 272.

Rē-linquo. See *linguo*, 273, II.
 Rēmīniscor, i, —, 283.
 Rēnīdeo, ēre, —, 267.
 Reor, rēri, rātus sum, 271.
 Rē-pango. See *pango*, 273.
 Rē-parco. See *parco*, 273, I. 2.
 Rē-pērio, ire, pēri, pertum, 287.
 Rē-sideo. See *sēdeo*, 270, II.
 Rē-sīpio. See *sāpio*, 278.
 Rē-sōno. See *sōno*, 260.
 Re-spergo. See *spargo*, 272, II.
 Rē-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rē-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 268.
 Rē-vertor. See *verto*, 273, III.
 Rē-vīvisco, ēre, vixi, victum, 282.
 Rideo, ēre, risi, risum, 269, I.
 Ringor, i, —, 283.
 Rōdo, ēre, rōsi, rōsum, 272, II.
 Rōrat, *impers.*, 300.
 Rūbeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Rūdo, ēre, ivi, itum, 278, 2.
 Rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, 273, II.
 Ruo, ēre, rui, rūtum, rūtūrus, 279.

S.

Sāgio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Sālio, ire, ui (ii), tum, 285.
 Salve, *def.*, 297.
 Sancio, ire, sanxi, sanctum, sanctum, 286.
 Sāpio, ēre, ivi, ui, —, 221; 278.
 Sarcio, ire, sarsi, sartum, 286.
 Sāt-āgo. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Scābo, ēre, scābi, —, 273, II.
 Scando, ēre, di, sum, 273, III.
 Scindo, ēre, scidi, scissum, 273, III.
 Scisco, ēre, scivi, scitum, 282.
 Sēco, āre, ui, tum, 260.
 Sēdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, 270, II.
 Sē-līgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Sentio, ire, sensi, sensum, 286.
 Sēpēlio, ire, ivi, sepultum, 284.
 Sēpio, ire, psi, ptum, 286.
 Sēquor, i, sēcūtus sum, 228.
 Sēro, ēre, sēvi, sātum, 276.
 Sēro, ēre, serui, sertum, 274.
 Sido, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Sileo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Sino, ēre, sīvi, sītum, 278.
 Sisto, ēre, stīti, stātum, 273.
 Sītio, ire, ivi, —, 284.

Sōleo, ēre, solitus sum, 271.
 Solvo, ēre, solvi, sōlūtum, 273, III.
 Sōno, īre, ui, ītum, 260.
 Sorbeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Sortior, Iri, Itus sum, 288.
 Spargo, ēre, sparsi, sparsum, 272, II.
 Spēcio, *obs.* See *aspēcio*, 272.
 Sperno, ēre, sprēvi, sprētum, 277.
 Splendeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Spondeo, ēre, spōpondi, sponsum, 270.
 Squaleo, ēre, —, 267.
 Stātuo, ēre, ui, ītum, 279.
 Sterno, ēre, strāvi, strātum, 276.
 Sternuo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Sterto, ēre, ui, —, 275.
 Stinguo, ēre, —, 281.
 Sto, āre, stēti, stātum, 261.
 Strēpo, ēre, ui, Itum, 275.
 Strideo, ēre, strīdi, —, 270, III.
 Strido, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Struo, ēre, struxi, structum, 279, 1.
 Stūdeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Stūpeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Suādeo, ēre, si, sum, 269, I.
 Sub-do, ēre, dīdi, dītum. See *abdo*, 273, I. 1.
 Sūb-īgo. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Sub-sīlio. See *sālio*, 285.
 Suc-cēdo. See *cēdo*, 272, II.
 Suc-cēndo. See *accēndo*, 273, III.
 Suc-cēseo. See *cēseō*, 268.
 Suc-cīdo. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.
 Suc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Suc-cresco. See *cresco*, 277.
 Suesco, ēre, suēvi, suētum, 277.
 Suf-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Suf-fīcio. See *fācio*, 273, II.
 Suf-fōdio. See *fōdio*, 273, II.
 Sug-gēro. See *gēro*, 272.
 Sum, esse, fui, —, 204.
 Sūmo, ēre, psi, ptum, 272.
 Sūperbio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Sup-pōno. See *pōno*, 275, I.
 Surgo (*for sur-rīgo*), ēre, surrexi, surrectum. See *rēgo*, 272, I.

T.

Taedet, *impers.*, 299.
 Tango, ēre, tētīgi, tactum, 273.
 Temno, ēre, —, 281.

Tendo, ēre, tētendi, tentum, tensum, 273, I. 2.
 Tēneo, ēre, ui, tum, 268.
 Tēpesco, ēre, tēpui, —, 282.
 Tergeo, ēre, tersi, tersum, 269, I.
 Tergo, ēre, tersi, tersum, 272, II.
 Tēro, ēre, trivi, tritum, 278.
 Texo, ēre, ui, tum, 275.
 Timeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Tollo, ēre, sustūli, sublatum, 273.
 Tondeo, ēre, tōtondi, tonsum, 270.
 Tōno, āre, ui, (itum), 260.
 Torpeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Torqueo, ēre, torsi, tortum, 269, II.
 Torreo, ēre, torrui, tostum, 268.
 Trā-do. See abdo, 273.
 Traho, ēre, traxi, tractum, 272.
 Trēmo, ēre, ui, —, 274.
 Trībuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Trūdo, ēre, trūsi, trūsum, 272, II.
 Tueor, ēri, tuftus sum, 271.
 Tundo, ēre, tūtūdi, tunsum, tūsum, 273, I. 2.
 Tuor, for tueor, 283.
 Turgeo, ēre, tarsi (*rare*), —, 269.
 Tussio, ire, —, 284, 2.

U.

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, 283.
 Urgeo, ēre, ursi, —, 269, I.
 Uro, ēre, ussi, ustum, 272.
 Utor, i, ūsus sum, 283.

V.

Vādo, ēre, —, 281.
 Vāgio, ire, ivi, —, 284.
 Vēho, ēre, vexi, vectum, 272.
 Vello, ēre, velli (vulsi), vulsum, 273, III.
 Vendo, ēre, dīdi, dītum, 273.
 Vēn-eo. See eo, 295.
 Vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, 287.
 Vēnum-do. See do, 261.
 Vēreor, ēri, verītus sum, 227; 271.
 Vergo, ēre, —, 281.
 Verro, ēre, verri, versum, 273, III.
 Verto, ēre, ti, sum, 273, III.
 Vertor. See dēvertor, 273, III.
 Vescor, i, —, 283.
 Vesprascit, impers., 300.
 Vētērasco, ēre, rāvi, —, 276.
 Vēto, āre, ui, itum, 260.
 Vīdeo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, 270, II.
 Vīeo, ēre, —, ētum, 264, 2.
 Vīlesco, ēre, vīlui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Vīncio, ire, vīnxī, vinctum, 286.
 Vīnco, ēre, vīci, victum, 273, II.
 Vīreо, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Vīresco, ēre, vīrui, —, 282.
 Vīso, ēre, i, um, 273, III.
 Vīvo, ēre, vīxi, victim, 272.
 Vōlo, velle, vōlui, —, 293.
 Volvo, ēre, volvi, vōlūtum, 273, III.
 Vōmo, ēre, ui, Itum, 274.
 Vōveo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, 270, II.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

Note.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to pages. *Constr.* = construction, *w.* = with, *f.* = and the following, *compds.* = compounds, *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive, *gend.* = gender, *acc.* or *accus.* = accusative, *acos.* = accusatives, *adjs.* = adjectives, *preps.* = prepositions, etc.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this index, with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly the numerous exceptions in Dec. III. in the formation of the genitive and in gender, are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 55–115.

- A** SOUND of, 6 ff., 14. Nouns in *a*, —of 1st dec., 42; of 3d dec., 48; genitive of, 58; gender, 111; derivatives in *a*, 320, 6. *A*, in nom., accus., voc. plur., 88; in acc. sing., 93; changed in compds., 341, 8. *A*, quantity of, —final, 615; in increments of dec., 633; of conj., 640.
A, ab, abs, in compds., 338, 1; in compds., w. dat., 386, 2. *A, ab, abs*, w. abl., 434, of agent, 388, 1, in personification, 414, 6.
Abbreviations, 719.
Abhinc, 427.
Ablative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 3d dec., 87, 90, 97; in 4th dec., 116, 4; in adjs., 156.
Ablative, syntax of, 412–437. Of cause, manner, means, 414; agent, accompaniment, 414, 5 and 7. Of price, 416. W. comparatives, 417. Of differ., 418. In special constrs., 419; 385, 5; 386, 2; 434, 2; 414, 2. Of place, 420 ff. Of source, 425. Of time, 426. Of charac., 428. Of specification, 429. Abl. absol., 431; w. *quisque*, 431, 6. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds, etc., 566. Of supine, 570.
Absolute, ablative, 430 ff.; infinitive or clause, 431, 4.
- Absque*, w. abl., 434.
Abstineo, w. acc. and abl., 425, 2; w. gen., 409, 4.
Abstract nouns, 31; from adjs., 319; from verbs, 321, 2.
Abunde, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
-abus, for *is*, in 1st dec., 42, 3.
Ac, for *quam*, 417, 4. *Ac si*, w. subj., 503, 506.
A catalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
Accedit, constr., 556, II. 1.
Accentuation, 25 ff.
Accidit, constr., 556, II.
Accingo, constr., 374, 7.
Accompaniment, abl. of, 414, 7.
Accomplishing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
Accusative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; 46, 3; in 3d dec., 85, 88, 98; in adjectives, 157.
Accusative, syntax of, 370–381.—Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate, 371, 1, 3); w. other cases, 371, 2; w. compds., 371, 4; w. verbal adjs. and nouns, 371, 7. Two accs., 373 ff.; other constrs. for, 374, 3; infin. or clause, 374, 4; poetic acc., 374, 7. Subj. of infin., 375. Agreement, 376. Adverbial acc., 377 ff. Acc. of time and space, 378. Of limit, 379,

- poetic dat. for, 379, 5. Of specification, 380. In exclam., 381. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds and gerundives, 565. Of supine, 569.
- Accusing and acquitting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Acephalous verse, 663, III.
- aceus, adjs. in, 324.
- Active voice, 195. Act. and pass. constr., 465.
- Ad*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *Ad*, w. acc., 433.
- ades, in patronymics, 316; quantity, 646, 1.
- Adhuc locorum*, 396, 2, 4) (4).
- Adipiscor*, w. gen., 409, 3.
- Adjective,—Decl. of, 147 ff. Formation of cases, 154 ff., irreg., 159. Comparison, 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Derivation, 322 ff. Comp., 340. W. dat., 391. W. gen. 396, III. 2; 399. W. abl., 414, 419. Agreement, 438 ff. W. the force of nouns, clauses, adverbs, 441 ff. Use of comparison, 444.
- Admisco*, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Admoneo*, constr., 410, 3.
- Admonishing, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Adolescens*, compared, 168, 3.
- Adonic verse, 677, III.
- Adulor*, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
- Advantage, dat. of, 385.
- Adverbial acc., 877.
- Adverbs,—Numeral, 181. Classes of, 304. Compar., 305. Derivation, 338 ff. Composition, 342. For adjs., 352, 4. W. dat., 392. W. gen., 396, III. 4). As preps., 437. Use, 582; w. nouns, 583. Negatives, *non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584, two negatives, 585.
- Adversative conj., 310; 587, III.
- Adversative sentence, 360.
- Adversus*, w. accus., 433.
- Advising, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
- Ae*, sound of, 9, 15; changed to *i*, 341, 3.
- Aedes*, sing. and plur., 182.
- Aeger*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Aemulus*, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
- Aeneas*, decl. of, 43.
- Aequi boni facere*, 402, 3.
- Aer, aether*, acc. of, 93, 1, quantity of, 621, 8.
- aeus, adjs. in, 326.
- Affitum*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- Afficio*, w. abl. 414, 1, 1).
- Afinis*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Age, expression of, 417, 3.
- Agent,—Abl. of, w. *a* or *ab*, 388, 1; Dat. of, 388.
- Agreement,—Of Pred. Noun, 362; in gend. and numb., 362, 1. Of Appositive, 363, in gend. and numb., 363, 1. Of Adject., 438; w. clause, 438, 3; constr. accord. to sense, 438, 6; w. pred. noun or appositive, 438, 7; w. two nouns, 439; 439, 2; w. part. gen. 396, 2, 3). Of Pronouns, 445; w. two antecedents, 445, 3; w. pred. noun or appositive, 445, 4; constr. accord. to sense, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of Verb, 460; constr. accord. to sense, 461; agreement w. Appos. or Pred. noun, 462; w. comp. subject, 463.
- ai, for *ae*, 42, 3; quant. of, 612, 1.
- al, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 64, 87, 89.
- Alcaic verse, 664; 691, II.; greater, 692; stanza, 700, I.
- Alienus*, w. dat., 391, 1; w. abl., 391, 2, 3); w. gen., 399, 3.
- Aliquantus*, *aliquis*, *aliquot*, 191; use of *aliquis*, 455.
- alis, adjs. in, 325.
- Alius*,—Decl. 149. Indef. 191, 2; w. abl., 417, 5; w. *alique*, *ac*, or *et*, 459, 2. *Alius*—*alius*, 459; *alius*—*alium*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
- Alphabet, 2 ff.
- Alter*,—Decl. 149. Indef. 191, 2; *alteruter*, 191, 2; *alter*—*alter*, 459; *alter*—*alterum*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
- Altercor*, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Alvus*, gender of, 47.
- Ambi*, *amb.*, 338, 2.
- Ambo*, decl. of, 176, 2.
- Amphora, 716.
- Amplius* without *quam*, 417, 8.

- An, annon*, 346, II. 2; 526, 2, 2).
Anacoluthon, 704, III. 4.
Anapaestic verse, 678.
Anaphora, 704, II. 3.
Anastrophe, 704, IV. 1.
Animi, constr., 399, 3, 4).
Ante, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Ante*, in expressions of time, 427; w. acc., 433.
Antecedent, use of term, 445, 1; omitted, 445, 6; attracted, 445, 9. Clause as antecedent, 445, 7.
Antequam, w. indic. or subj., 523.
Antimeria, 704, III. 1.
Antithesis, 703, 8.
-anus, adjs. in, 325 ff.
Anxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
Aphaeresis, 703, 1.
Apocope, 703, 3.
Aposiopesis, 704, I. 3.
Appendix, 702-720.
Appositive.—Agreement of, 363; in genit. and numb., 363, 1. Subject omitted, 363, 2. Force of, 363, 3.
Aptus, w. dat., 391, 1; *aptus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
Apud, w. accus., 42.
-ar, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 66, 87, 89.
Arceo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Archilochian verse, 664; 677, II.; greater, 691, I.
Arenae, gen. of place, 424, 3.
-aris, adjs. in, 325.
Aristophanic, 691, III.
-arium, nouns in, 317.
-arius, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 325.
Arrangement.—Of Words, 592-602, —General rules, 593 ff. Effect of emphasis and euphony, 594. Contrasted groups, 595. Kindred words, 596. Words with common relation, 597. Special rules, 598 ff. Modifiers of nouns, 598; of adjs., 599; of verbs, 600; of adverbs, 601; of special words, —Demon. Prep. Conjunct. Rel. *Non*, 602. Of Clauses, 603-606, —Clause as Subj. or Pred., 603; as Subord. element, 604; in Latin Period, 605; in compd. sentence, 606.
Arsis and thesis, 660.
As and its divisions, 712.
-as, nouns in, 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 50; genit. of, 68; gend. of, 105.
-as, for *ae* in gen., 42, 3; in Greek acc. plur., 98; in patronymics, 316; in adjs., 326; quantity of, 623.
Asclepiadēan verse, 689, III.; greater, IV.
-asco, inceptives in, 332, II.
Asking, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
Aspergo, constr., 384, 1.
Aspirated letters, 4, 3.
-asso, assim, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 239, 4.
Asyndeton, 704, I. 1.
-atim, adverbs in, 384, 2.
Atque, for *quam*, 417, 4.
Attraction, of pronoun, 445, 4; of antecedent, 445, 9; of pred. noun or adj. after an infin., 547. Subj. by attraction, 527.
Attributive adj., 438, 2.
-atus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.
Au, 9, 15; changed, 341, 3.
Audio, w. Pred. Noun, 362, 2, (1).
Audiens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
Aureus, the coin, 712.
Autem, place of, 602, III.
Authority, long or short by, 609, 2.
Authors, Latin, 706.
Avidus, w. gen., 399, 2; w. dat., 399, 5; w. acc. and prep., 399, 5.
-ax, genit. of nouns in, 77; verbals in, 328; w. gen., 399, 2.

B, CHANGED to *p*, 248.
B, Being angry, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Being distant, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
Believing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Belli, constr., 424, 2.
Bene, compared, 305, 2; w. verbs of buying, 416, 3.
Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Bibi, quantity of, 651, 2.
-bilis, verbals in, 328.
Bonus, decl., 148; compar., 165; *boni consulo*, 402, 3.
Bos, gen. of, 72, 6; gen. plur., 89, III.; dat., abl., 90, 2.
Brachycatalectic, 663, III.
Brazen age, 706, III.

- brum**, nouns in, 320.
-bs, genit. of nouns in, 75.
 Bucolic caesura, 678, 2.
-bulum, nouns in, 320.
-bundus, verbals in, 328.
- C**, SOUND of, 11 ff. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 63; gend., 111.
 C, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
 Caesura, caesural pause, 662; in hexam., 673 ff.; in anapaestic verse, 678; in trochaic, 680; in iambic, 683, IV.; 686.
 Calendar, Roman, 707.
 Calends, 708, I. 1.
 Calling, verba of, w. two accs., 373.
-canus, adjs. in, 326, 2.
Caput, genit. of, 67; w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.
Carbasus, gend. of, 47.
 Cardinals, 172, 174; decl. of, 175 ff.
 Cases, etymology of.—Endings of, 38, 2; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45; in 3d dec., 52; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; comparative view of, 121; general endings, 123. Formation of, in 3d dec.—nom. sing., 55; gen., 56 ff.; dat., 84; acc., 85; voc., 86; abl., 87; nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88; gen., 89; dat. and abl., 90. Greek cases,—gen. sing., 92; acc., 93; voc., 94; nom. and voc. plur., 95; gen., 96; dat. and abl., 97; acc., 98. Cases of adjs. of 3d dec., 154–158.
 Cases, syntax of, 364–385,—characterized, 364; kindred, 365; nom., 364 ff.; voc., 369; accus., 370–381; dat., 382–392; gen., 393–411; abl., 412–431; w. prepositions, 432–437.
 Catalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
Causa, gratia, 414, 2, 3).
 Causal conjunctions, 310, 311; 587, V.; 588, VII.
 Causal sentences, 360.
 Cause, abl. of, 414.
 Cause, Subj. of, 517–523.—Rule, 517, 521; w. *quum*, 518; *qui*, 519; *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando*, 520; *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, 522; *antequam*, *priusquam*, 523.
 Cause, denoted by part., 578, II.
- Causing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
Cave, w. subj. for imperat., 535, 1.
Caveo, constr., 385, 3.
-ce, appended, 186, 1.
Celo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
-cen, compounds in, 339, 2.
-ceps, genit. of nouns and adjs. in, 75, 1; 155, 3.
Certo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Certus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Ch, 4, 3; sound of, 11, 1.
 Characteristic, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428; gen. and abl. distinguished, 428, 4.
Choliambus, 683, 4.
 Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
 Choriambic verse, 689 ff.
Cingo, constr. of, 374, 7.
-cio, derivatives in, 315, 5.
Circa, *circiter*, w. acc., 433.
Circum, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Circundo*, *circumfundeo*, constr., 384, 1. *Circum*, w. acc., 433.
Cis, *citra*, w. acc., 433.
Citorior, compared, 166.
Citum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Clam, w. acc. or abl., 487, 3.
 Clauses, as nouns, gender of, 35. Prin. and sub. clauses, 345, 1 and 2. Clause as object, 371, 5; as abl. absol., 431, 4; as antecedent, 445, 7. Indirect questions, clauses w. infin., subj., and w. *quod*, compared, 554. Arrangement of, 603 ff.
Coelum, plur. *coeli*, 143, 1.
 Cognate accus., 371, 1.
 Coins, Roman, 712.
-cola, compounds in, 339, 2.
 Collective nouns, 31.
Colus, gender of, 47.
Com, *con* for *cum*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386.
 Combined objects, 354, 8.
Comitor, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
 Command, subj. of, 487 ff. Constr. of verbs of, 385; 558, VI.
 Common nouns, 31; com. quantity, 23.
Commoneo, *commonefacio*, constr., 410, 3.
Communis, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.

- Commuto*, constr. of, 416, 2.
 Comparative conj., 311; 588, II.
 Comparative degree, 160; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparatives w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2); w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1; w. force of too, 444, 1; before and after *quam*, 444, 2; w. *quam* and the subj., 501, IV.
 Comparative view,—of decl., 121–123; of conjugation, 243 ff.
 Comparison,—of adjs., 160; modes of, 161; terminational, 162 ff.; irreg., 163 ff.; defect., 166 ff.; adverbial, 170. Use of, 444; in adverbs, 444, 4.
Compleo, constr., 410, 7.
 Complex sentences, 345, 357; abridged, 358 ff. Comp. elements, 350; subject, 352; predicate, 354.
Compos, genit. of, 155; w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.
 Composition of words, 318, 338 ff.
 Compound nouns,—decl. of, 125 ff.; composition of, 339; comp. adjectives, 340; verbs, 341; prin. parts of, 259 ff.: comp. adverbs, 342.
 Comp. sentences, 345, 360; abridged, 361. Comp. subject, predicate, modifier, 361, 1–3. Compounds of preps. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6.
 Computation of money, 718.
Con, see *com*.
 Concealing, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
Concedo, constr., 551, II. 2.
 Concession, subj. of, 514 ff.; participle, 578, IV.
 Concessive conjunctions, 311; 588, IV.
 Condemning, constr. of verbs of, 410, 5.
 Condition,—conjunctions of, 311, 588. Subj. of, 502; force of tenses, 504; w. *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, 505; *ac si*, *ut si*, etc., 506; *si*, *nisi*, etc., 507 ff.; *si* omitted, 503, 1; condition supplied, 503, 2; first form, 508; second, 509; third, 510; mixed forms, 511, 512. Condition in relative clauses, 513; in *oratio obliqua*, 538, 2 and 3; denoted by participle, 578, III.
 Conditional sentences, 502 ff.
Confido, w. dat., 385, 1; w. abl., 419.
 Conjugation, 201 ff.; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff., 261 ff.; second, 207 ff., 266 ff.; third, 209 ff., 273 ff.; fourth, 211 ff., 283 ff.; of verbs in *io* of the 3d conj., 213. Periphrastic, 227 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234 ff. Comparative view of conj., 243 ff.; one general system, 244. Vowel conj., 278. Conj. of irreg. verbs, 287 ff.; of defect., 297; of impersonal, 298 ff.
 Conjunctions, 308; coördinate, use of, 587; subordinate, use of, 588. Place of, in sentence, 602, III.
Conscius, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5; w. gen. and dat., 399, 6.
Conscius mihi sum, constr., 551, 3.
 Consecutive conjunctions, 311, 588.
 Consonants, 3, I.; double, 4, 2; sounds of, 10 ff., 16.
Consors, w. gen., 399, (3).
Constituo, constr., 558, II.
Consuetudo, *consuetudinis est*, constr., 556, I. 1.
Consulo, constr., 385, 3.
Consultus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Contentus, w. abl., 419, IV.
Contingit, constr., 556, II.
Contra, w. accus., 433.
 Contracted syllables, quantity of, 610.
 Contractions, in conj., 234 ff.
Contrarius, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Convicting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
 Coördinate conjunctions, 309.
 Copulative conjunctions, 310, 587. Copul. sentences, 360.
Coram, w. abl., 484.
 Countries, gender of names of, 35.
-crum, nouns in, 320.
Cuicunque modi, 187, 7.
Cujas, 185, 3; 188, 4.
Cujus, 185, 3; 187, 3; 188, 4; *cujusmodi*, *cujuscemodi*, *cujuscumquemodi*, 187, 7; *cujusdummodi*, 191, 4.
-culum, nouns in, 320.
-culus, *cula*, *culum*, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.
Cum, appended, 184, 6; 187, 2;

- cum, com*, in compds., 388, 1.
Cum, w. abl., 434.
-cundus, verbals in, 328.
Cuncti, omnes, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
Cupidus, w. gen., 399, 2.
Cupiens, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 8.
Cupio, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- D**, DROPPED before *s*, 55, 3; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Dactylic verse, 670 ff. *Dactylico-iambic*, 693.
Dama, gend. of, 44.
Dates, Lat. and Eng., 710.
Dative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 3d dec., 84, 90, 97; in 4th dec., 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119, 4.
Dative, syntax of, 382–392,—with verbs, 384 ff. Of advant. and disadvant., 385. W. compds., 386. Of possessor, 387. Of agent, 388. Ethical dat., 389. Two dat., 390. W. adjs., 391. W. nouns and adv., 392. Of gerunds, etc., 564. W. verbs of Separ. 425, 2, 3).
Datum, quantity of, 651, 3.
De, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *De* w. abl., 434.
Decerno, constr., 558, II.
Decipio, w. gen., 409, 4; 410, 7.
Declarative sentence, 346.
Declaring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Declension, 39; first, 42; second, 45; third, 48; fourth, 116; second and fourth, 117; fifth, 119. Comparative view of decl., 121; one general system of decl., 122. Decl. of compds., 125.
Dedi, quantity of, 651, 2.
Dedeco, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Defective nouns, 119, 5; 129; def. adjs., 159; def. comparison, 166; def. verbs, 297.
Deliberative questions, w. the subj., 486, II.
Demanding, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
Demonstratives, 186; use of, 450.
Denarius, 712.
Deponent verbs, 221; 465, 2.
- Derivation, 313; of nouns, 314 ff.; of adjs., 322 ff.; of verbs, 320 ff.; of adverbs, 333 ff.
Derivatives, quantity of, 653; quantity of deriv. endings, 645 ff.
Desideratives, 332, III.
Desino, w. gen., 409, 4.
Desire, subj. of, 487 ff.; in asseverations, 488, 4; in relat. clauses, 488, 5.
Desiring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Desisto, w. gen., 409, 4.
Despero, w. acc., 371, 3.
Deterior, compared, 166.
Deterreo, constr., 499, 1–2.
Deus, 45, 6.
Diaeresis, 669, III.
Diana, quantity of, 612, 3.
Diastole, 669, IV.
Dic for *dice*, 237.
-dicus, compds. in compared, 164.
Difference, abl. of, 418.
Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4.
Difero, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dignor, constr., 419, 2.
Dignus, constr., 419; *dignus, qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
Dimeter, 668, 2.
Diminutive, nouns, 315; dim. adjs., 327; dim. verbs, 382, IV.
Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quantity of, 610.
Dipody, 656, 2.
Direct object, 354, 1; 371.
Dis, di, 388, 2.
Disadvantage, dat. of, 385.
Discrepo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Disjunctive conjs., 310; 587; sentences, 360.
Dispar, constr., 391, 2, 4).
Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Dissentio, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dissimilis, constr., 391, 2, 4).
Dissyllabic perfects and supines, quantity of, 651.
Distance, abl. of, 378, 2.
Distich, 666.
Disto, w. dat., 385, 4.
Distributives, 172; 174; decl. of, 179.
Diu, compared, 305, 4.
Dius, quantity of, 612, 3.
Diversus, compared, 167.
Dives, compared, 165, 2.

- Doceo*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Doleo, w. accus., 371, 3; w. clause, 558, V.; w. abl., 414, 2, 1.
Domus, decl. of, 117; gend., 118; constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
Donec, w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.
Dono, constr., 384, 1.
 Double constr. of a few verbs, 384, 1.
 Double consonants, 8.
Duc for *duce*, 377.
Dum, *dummodo*, w. subj., 503 ff.; w. ind. or subj., 521 ff.
Duo, decl. of, 176.
- E**, SOUND of, 6, 14. Nouns in *e*,—1st dec., 43 ff.; 3d dec., 48, 50; genit. of, 59; 89, 1; abl. of, 87, 1; gend., 111. *E* in abl., 87; in Greek acc. plur., 98; for *ei* in gen. and dat., 119, 4; *E* in adverbs, 335; changed to *i*, 341, 3.
E, quantity of—in *ei*, 119, 1; final, 616; in increments of decl., 635; of conjugation, 641.
E or *ex*, see *ex*.
Ecce with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 387, 3; 381, 3.
Ecquis, 188, 3. *Ecquid*, 346, II. 2.
Edoceo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Egenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.
Egeo, constr., 409, 1.
Ego, decl. of, 184.
Eheu, quantity of, 612, 2.
Ei, 9. *Ei*, quantity of, 612, 2.
 -*ēis*, in patronymics, 316.
 -*ēius*, quantity of, 612, 2.
Ejusmodi, 186, 4.
 -*ela*, nouns in, 320, 7.
 Elegiac distich, 676, 2.
Elegiambus, 693, 1.
 Elements of sentences, 347 ff.
Ellipsis, 704, of *facio*, *oro*, 367, 3; 602, II. 3.
 -*ellus*, *ella*, *ellum*, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.
 -*em*, in accus., 85, 119.
 Emotion, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.
 Emphasis and euphony in the arrangement of words, 594.
 -*en*, nouns in, 51; *en* in Greek acc., 98; with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.
- Enallage, 704, III.
 Enclitics, accent of, 26, (a); quantity of, 613, 1.
 Endeavoring, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
 Endings, 41; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45, 1; in 3d dec., 52, 2; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; in the five decls., 121, 123; in comparison, 162; in conjugation, 242.
 English pronunciation of Latin, 6 ff.
Enum, place of, 602, III.
 -*ensis*, adjs. in, 325 ff.
 -*entior*, *entissimus*, in comparison, 164.
 Envyng, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Eo, w. gen., 396, 2, 4.
 Epenthesis, 703, 5.
 Epicene nouns, 36.
 Epichoriambic verse, 690.
Epiphora, 704, II. 4.
Epitome, decl. of, 43.
Epulum, plur., *epulae*, 143.
 -*er*, gend. of nouns in, 47, 103. Adjs. in, 151; comparison of, 163, 1. Adverbs in, 335.
 -*ere*, for *erunt*, 235.
Erga, w. acc., 433.
Ergo, w. gen., 411.
 -*ernus*, adjs. in, 325, 2.
 -*es*, nouns in, 50, 119; genitive of, 69; gender of, 104, 109, 119. *es*, in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.
 -*ea*, final sound of, 8, 1; quantity of, 624.
 -*esco*, inceptive in, 332, II.
 -*esso*, *essaim*, in fut., perf., and perf. subj., 239, 4. *esso*, verbs in, 382.
 -*ester*, adjs. in, 325, 2.
 -*estus*, adjs. in, 323, 3.
 Ethical dative, 389.
Etiam, *etsi*, w. subj., 515, 516, III.
 -*etum*, nouns in, 317.
 Etymology 29–342.
Eu, sound of, 9.
 Euphonic changes, 55, 8; before *si*, *sum*, *tum*, 248; 257, 1; in prepositions, 338, 1.
 Euphony, see *Emphasis*.
 -*eus*, adjs. in, 324, 326.
Evenit, constr., 556, II.
 -*ex*, genit. of nouns in, 78.

- Ex, e*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *Ex*, w. abl., 434.
 Exchanging, constr. of verbs of, 416, 2.
 Exclamatory sentences, 346, IV.; accus. in, 381; voc., nom., dat. in, 381, 3; infinitive in, 553, III.
Exoro, constr., 374, 2.
Expers, exors, w. gen., 399, (3).
Exterus, compared, 163, 3.
Extra, w. acc., 433.
Extremum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Exuo, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.
- F**AC, for *face*, 237.
Facio, w. pred. gen., 403.
Falsum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Falsus, compared, 167.
Fames, abl. *famæ*, 187, 2.
Familia, genitive of, 42, 3.
 Fearing, constr. of verbs of, 492, 4.
 Feeling, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.
 Feet, metrical, 656 ff.
 Feminine, 38.
Fer, for *fere*, 237.
Fertilis, w. gen., abl., or acc., 399, (2) and 5.
 -*flex*, compds. in, 339, 2.
 -*ficus*, adjs. in, compared, 164.
Fido, w. dat., 385; w. abl., 419.
 Figures—of prosody, 669; of etymology, 703; of syntax, 704; of Rhetoric, 705.
 Filling, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.
 Final conj., 311; 588, V.
 Final syllables, quantity of, 613 ff.; final syllable of the verse, 665.
 Finite, or definite moods, 196; finite verb, 196.
Flo, quantity of, 612, 3.
Fit, constr., 556, II.
Flagito, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
Foci, gen. of place, 424, 3.
 Following, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
 Formation,—of cases, 55–98; of parts of verbs, 240–260; of words, 313–342.
 Fractions, 174, 1.
 Freeing, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.
Frenum, pl., *freni, frena*, 143.
 Frequentatives, 332.
- Fretus*, w. abl., 419, IV.
Frugi, in decl., 159; compared, 165.
Fruor, constr., 419.
Fungor, constr., 419.
 Future, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 470; w. force of imperat., 470, 1; for Eng. pres., 470, 2; w. *melius*, 470, 3. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 1. In imperat., 534, 537; fut. for pres., and pres. for fut., 534, 1 and 2. In infin., 543 ff.; circumlocution for, 544. In part., 573.
 Future Perfect, 197; 241, II.; in indic., 478; to denote certainty, 473, 1; for Eng. pres., 478, 2. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 2.
Futurum esse, fuisse, fore, ut, 544, 1–3.
Futurum sit ut, 481, III. 1 and 2.
- G** SOUND of, 11 ff.; changed, 248.
Gaudeo, constr., 371, 3; 551, III.; 558, V.; 414, 2.
Geno, w. accus., 371, 3.
 Gems, gender of names of, 47.
 Gender, 33 ff.; in 1st dec., 44; in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 99–115; in 4th dec., 118; in 5th dec., 119; general table of, 124.
 Genitive, formation of,—endings, 40; in 1st dec., 42; *as* for *ae*, *um* for *arum*, 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; *i* for *ii*, *um* for *orum*, 45, 5; *o* or *on*, 46, 3; in 3d dec., 56–83, 89, 96; in 4th dec., 116; *uis* for *us*, 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119; *e* or *i* for *ei*, 119, 4. In adjectives, 155.
 Genitive, syntax of, 393–411,—with nouns, 395; varieties, 396; peculiarities, 397; other constrs. for gen., 398. W. adjs., 399. W. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; other constrs. for, 404. Of place, 404; 421, II. In special constrs., 405 ff. Acc. and gen., 410. W. adverbs, 411. Gen. of gerunds and gerundives, 563.
Genitus, w. abl., 425, 3.
 Gentile nouns, 326, 3.
 Gerund,—Nature of, 559. Cases of, 560. Ger. and Infin., 560, 2. W.

direct object, 561. Gerundive, 562; of *utor*, *fruor*, etc., 562, 4. Pass. sense of Ger., 562, 5. Genitive of ger. and gerundive, 563; ger. when preferred, 563, 2; gerundive with *mei*, *nostri*, etc., 563, 4; of purpose, 563, 5; infin. for ger., 563, 6. Dat. of, 564; of purpose, with official names, 564, 2 and 3. Accus. of, 565; w. object, 565, 2; of purpose, 565, 3. Abl. of, 566.
Gloriosum est, 556, I. 2.
 Glyconic verse, 664, 689.
Gnarus, w. gen., 399, (2).
 Golden age, 706.
 Greek nouns,—in 1st dec., 48; in 2d dec., 48; in 3d dec., 91–98.

H, A BREATHING, 2.
H, *Hadria*, gender of, 44.
 Happening, constr. of verbs of, 556, II.
Haud, *ne*, *non*, 584.
 Hendecasyllabic verse, 691, V.
Hendiadys, 704, II. 2.
Hephthemimeris, 656, 2.
 Heroic verse, 664.
Heteroclites, 135 ff.
 Heterogeneous nouns, 141 ff.
 Hexameter verse, 663, 2. Dactylic, 671.
Hic, *iste*, *ille*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.
Hic (adv.), w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Hipponactean, 663, 4.
 Historical tenses, 198, 2; hist. present, 467, III.; hist. perfect, 471, II.
Hodie, quantity of, 654, 8.
 Horace, versification of, 698 ff. Lyric metres of, 700. Index, 701.
Horreo, w. accus., 871, 3.
Huc, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Hujusmodi, 186, 4.
Humus, gender of, 47; constr. of *humi*, 424, 2.
Hypallage, 704, III. 2.
Hyperbaton, 704, IV.
Hyperbole, 705, V.
Hypercatalectic verse, 663, III.
Hypermeter, 663, III.
 Hypothetical sentences, see *Conditional* ditto.
Hysteron proteron, 704, IV. 2.

I, SUPPLIES the place of *j*, 2, 3; sound of, 6 ff.; 14 ff.; with the sound of *y*, 9; *i* for *ii*, *ie*, 45, 5. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 60; gender of, 111; *i*, final in dat., 84; in abl., 87; for *is*, 92; for *ei*, 119, 4; in perfect, 247, 2. *I*, quantity of,—final, 618; in increments of decl., 636; of conjugation, 643. *ia*, nouns in, 319; in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.
Iactus, adj. in, 326.
Iades, in patronymics, 316.
Iambelegus, 694, 1.
 Iambic verse.—Dipody, 682. Tri-meter, 683; choliambus, 683, 4; catalectic, 684. Dimeter, 685; hypermeter, 685, 1; catalectic, 685, 2; acephalous, 685, 3. Tetrameter, 686.
 Iambico-dactylic verse, 694.
Ianus, adj. in, 326.
Ias, in patronymics, 316.
Ibam, for *iebam*, 239, 1.
Ibo, *ibor*, for *iam*, *iar*, 239, 2.
ibus, in dat. and abl. plur., 90.
ictius, adj. in, 324, 328.
Ictus, 659.
icus, adj. in, 325 ff.
Idem, decl., 186; w. dat., 391, 3; use of, 451. *Idem—qui, ac or atque*, 451, 5.
 Ideas, of the calendar, 708, I. 3.
idea, in patronymics, 316.
ido, nouns in, 320, 7.
Idoneus qui, w. subj., 501, III.
idum, verbs in, 328.
densia, adj. in, 326.
ier, for *i* in infin., 239, 6.
Igitur, place in the clause, 602, III.
Ignarus, w. gen., 399, (2).
igo, nouns in, 320, 7.
ile, nouns in, 317.
ilis, adj. in, 325, 328; compared, 163, 2.
 Illative conj., 310; 587, IV.; sentences, 360.
ille, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.
Illic for *ille*, 186, 2.
Illiusmodi, 186, 4.
illo, verbs in, 332, IV.
illla, illla, illum, in nouns, 315, 3; in adj., 327.

- im**, in acc., 85, 93; for *am*, or *em* in pres. subj., 239, 3.
- Immemor*, genit. of, 155, 4; gen. plur., 158, 3; w. gen., 399, 2.
- imonia*, nouns in, 319.
- Impedio*, constr., 499, 1-2.
- Imperative, 196. Tenses, 534. Use, 535 ff.; pres., 536; fut., 537; in prohibitions, 538.
- Imperative sentences, 346, III.
- Imperfect tense, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 468 ff.; in lively description, of customary or repeated action, 469; of attempted action, in letters, 469, 1 and 2. In Subj., 477; of present time, 481, V.; after Perf. Def., 482, 1; for Pluperf., 486, 4; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2.
- Imperius*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Impero*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; subjects of, 556, I.-III.
- Impertio*, constr., 384, 1.
- Impleo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Impos*, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).
- Impotens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Imprudens*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- in, in Greek accs., 93.
- In*, in compda., 388, 1; w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *In*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Inceptives, inchoatives, 332, II.
- Incertus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inclination, subj. of, 486, 3.
- Inclusus*, compared, 167.
- Increments, 629 ff.; quantity of, 632 ff., 639 ff.
- Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 85; examples, 128. Indecl. adjs., 159.
- Indefinite moods, 196.
- Indefinite pronouns, 189; use of, 455 ff.
- Index of verbs, 721.
- Indicative, 196; use of, 474 ff.; special uses, 475.
- Indigeo*, constr., 409, 1.
- Indignus*, w. abl., 419, IV. *indignus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
- Indirect discourse, distinguished from direct, 528. Subj. in, 529. Moods in prin. clause, 530; in sub. clause, 531. Tenses, 532; Pronouns, adverbs, etc., 533.
- Indirect object, 354, 2. Rule, 384: indirect w. direct, 384, II.
- Indirect questions, 524 ff.—Subj. in, 525. Indic. in, 525, 6; in orat. obliqua, 530, II. 2; sing. and double, 526.
- Induco*, constr., 374, 7.
- Indulging, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Induo*, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.
- ine, in patronymics, 316, 4.
- Inferus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Infinitive, 196, II. Tenses of, 540 ff. Subject of, 545; of Hist. infinit., 545, 1. Predicate after, 546; attracted, 547. Construction of, 548 ff.; as Nom., 549; as Accus., 550 ff.; w. another acc., 552, 2; in relative clauses, 531, 1; after conjunctions, 531, 2; after adjs., 552, 3; after preps., 552, 4; in special constrs., 553; as pred., 553, I.; as appos., 553, II.; in exclam., 553, III.; as abl. abs., 553, IV.; of Purpose, 553, V.; for Gerund, 553, VI.
- Infra*, w. acc., 438.
- Ingenii*, w. adjs., 399, 3.
- Injuring, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Initior*, constr., 419.
- Inops*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
- Inactus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inseparable preps., 307; 654, 2.
- Inpergo*, constr., 384, 1.
- Instrument, abl. of, 414, 4.
- Insuetus*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. other constrs., 399, 5.
- Integer*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Inter*, in compda., 388, 1; w. dat., 386. *Inter*, w. acc., 438.
- Intercludo*, constr., 384, 1.
- Interest*, w. gen., 406, III.
- Interior*, compared, 166.
- Interjections, 312; w. voc., 369, 1; w. nom., acc., or dat., 381, 3; use of, 589 ff.
- Interrogative conjunctions, 311, 588.
- Interrogative pronouns, 188; use of, 454.
- Interrogative sentences,—Form, 346, II. Interrog. words, 346, II. 1. Double quest., 346, II. 2. Deliber. quest., 486, II. Answers, 346, II.

8. Indirect quest., 525; w. indic., 525, 6; single and double, 526.
In indirect discourse, 529 ff.; rhetorical ques., 530, 2.
- Interrogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. acc. and abl., 374, 2-3.
- Intra*, w. accus., 433.
- Intransitive verbs, 193; 371, 3; impersonal pass., 465, 1.
- inus*, adjs. in, 324 ff.
- Invidus*, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
- Invitus*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
- io*, verbs of 3d conj. in, 213 ff.; nouns in, 318, 321.
- Ionic verse, 687.
- ior*, in comparatives, 162.
- Ipsæ*, decl. of, 186; use of, 452.
- Ipsus*, for *ipse*, 186, 3.
- Iron age, 706.
- Irony, 705, IV. in condition, 503, 3.
- Irregular nouns, 127 ff.; irreg. adjs., 159; irreg. comparison, 168 ff.
- Irregular principal parts of verbs, 249-258; irreg. verbs, 287 ff.
- Is*, decl. of, 186; use of, 451; reflexive, 448. *Is—qui*, 451, 4.
- is*, in dat. and abl. of the 1st and 2d decls., 42, 45; in genit. of 3d dec., 52; in acc., dat., and abl. plur., 88, III.; 90. Nouns in *is*, 50; genitive of, 71; gender of, 106.
- is*, in patronymics, 316; quantity of *is* final, 626.
- isco*, inceptives in, 332, II.
- Islands, gend. of names of, 35; constr. of names of, 424.
- issimus*, in superlatives, 162.
- iso*, verbs in, 332.
- Iste*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.
- Istic*, *isthic*, for *iste*, 186, 2.
- Istiusmodi*, 186, 4.
- itas*, nouns in, 319.
- iter*, adverbs in, 335.
- Ithyphalicus*, 681, 2.
- itia*, nouns in, 319.
- itimus*, adjs. in, 325, 2.
- itiun*, nouns in, 318.
- ito*, frequentatives in, 332.
- itudo*, nouns in, 319.
- Ium*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- itus*, nouns in, 318; adverbs in, 335, 3.
- tum*, in genit. plur., 89; nouns in, 318 ff.
- ius*, adjs. in, 326; quantity of, 612, 3.
- ivus*, adjs. in, 328, 5.
- ix*, genitive of nouns in, 79.
- J**, PLACE supplied by *i*, 2; length-ens preceding vowel, 611.
- Jecur*, genitive of, 66, 5.
- Jesus*, decl. of, 128, 1, 3).
- Jocus*, pl., *joci*, *joca*, 141.
- Jubeo*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- Jugerum*, deol. of, 186; use of, 718.
- Jugum*, quantity of compds. of, 611, 3.
- Jungo*, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Jupiter*, genitive of, 66, 3.
- Jurjurandum*, decl. of, 126.
- Juvenal*, versification of, 696.
- Juvenalis*, abl. of, 87, 2.
- Juvenis*, abl. of, 87, 2; compared, 168, 3.
- Juvo*, w. accus., 385, 1.
- Juxta*, w. accus., 433.
- K**, RARE, 2.
- K**, Knowing, constr. of verbs of, 551, I. 1.
- L**, NOUNS in, 48, 51; genit. of, 64; gender, 112; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
- Labials, 3.
- Lacrimo*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Laedo*, w. accus., 385, 1.
- Lar*, quantity of genit., 633, 4.
- Lassus*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Latin authors, 706.
- Latin grammar, 1.
- Latin period, 605.
- lentus*, adjs. in, 323.
- Letters, classes of, 3; combinations of, 4; sounds of, 5-16.
- Libero*, w. abl. or gen., 425, 3.
- Libra*, 714.
- Licet*, w. subj., 515.
- Linguals, liquids, 3.
- Litotes, 705, VI.
- Litum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Logoeodic verse, 691.
- Longius*, without *quam*, 417, 3.
- is*, genit. of nouns in, 76.
- M**, EUPHONIC changes of, 248, 338, 1; quantity of final syllables in, 621; elided, 669, I.

- ma, dat. and abl. plur. of nouns in, 90, 1.
Magis, maxime, in adverbial comparison, 170.
Magnus, compared, 165.
Major, in expressions of age, 417, 3.
 Making, verbs of, w. two accs., 378; w. subj., 558, IV.
Malo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
Malus, compared, 165.
Manifestus, w. gen., 399, 8.
 Manner, means, abl. of, 414; participle for, 578, II.
 Masculine, 38.
 Material nouns, 31.
Me, for *michi*, 184, 5.
 Measure of difference, abl. of, 418; measure in prosody, 663, II.; Roman measure, 715 ff.
Med, *mehe*, for *me*, 184, 5.
Medeor, w. dat., 386, 2.
Medius, designating part, 441, 6.
Melius, w. indic. for subj., 475, 2-4.
Melos, plur. of, 95, 1.
Meme, 184, 6.
Memini, w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, 1.
Memor, w. gen., 399, 2.
 -men, *mentum*, nouns in, 320.
Mensa, decl. of, 42.
Mepte, 184, 5.
 -met, forms in, 184, 8; 185, 1.
Metaphor, 705, I.
Metathesis, 703, 7.
Metonymy, 705, II.
Metre, 667.
 Metrical equivalents and substitutes, 657, 658.
 -metros, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
Metuo, constr., 385, 8; 492, 4.
Meus, decl., 185.
Mi for *michi*, 184, 5.
Militia, constr., 424, 2.
Mille, decl. and use of, 178.
 Million, cardinal for, 174; symbol for, 180.
 Million sestertes, Latin for, 718, 4.
 -mino, in imperatives, 289, 5.
Minor, minus, without *quam*, 417, 8.
Miror, w. accus., 371, 8; w. gen., 409, 4.
Mirum est, constr. of, 556, I. 2.
- Mis* for *mei*, 184, 5.
Misceo, w. dat., or abl., 385, 5.
Miseror, miseresco, w. gen., 406.
Miseret, constr., 410. *Miserescit, miseretur*, 410, 6.
 Mobile nouns, 38.
Moderor, constr., 385, 8.
 Modifier, 348 ff.
Modius, 715.
Modo, w. subj., 503, 505.
Moereo, w. accus., 371, 8.
Moneo, constr., 410, 3.
 Money, Roman, 712 ff.
 Monometer, 663, 2.
 Monosyllables, quantity of, 613.
Montha, Roman, 707; division of, 708; gender of names of, 35.
 Moods, 196,—Indic., 474 ff. Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infin., 539–553. Gerund, 559 ff.
Supine, 567 ff. Part., 571 ff.
Mos, moris est, constr., 556, I. 1.
 -ms, gen. of nouns in, 75.
 Multiplicatives, 173.
Multus, comparison of, 165.
 Mutes, 3.
Muto, constr., 416, 2.
- N**, NOUNS in, 48; genit. of, 65; gend. of, 113; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
 Name, dat. of, 387, 1; gen. of, 387, 2.
 Names of towns, constr., 423.
Natus, w. abl., 425, 3.
Ne, num, nonne, interrog. particles, 311, 8; in single questions, 346, II. 1; in double, 346, II. 2; in indirect questions, 526.
Ne, w. subj. of desire, 488, 3; of purpose, 489 ff.; of concession, 515.
Ne, non, haud, 584. *Neve*, 490, 1.
Necne, 346, II. 2, 3); 526, 2, 1).
Nendum, w. subj., 493, 4.
 Negatives, 584; force of two negatives, 585.
Nemo, indef., 191, 2; use of, 457, 1.
Negquam, indecl., 159; compared, 165, 2.
No—quidem, 585; 602, III. 2.
Nescio an, w. subj., 526, II. 2, 2).
Nescio quis, quomodo, etc., w. indic., 525, 4.
Nescius, w. gen., 399, (2).

- neus**, adjs. in, 324.
Neuter, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2.
 Neuter adjectives, as adverbs, 335, 4; as cognate accus., 371, 1, 3)
 (2); as a second accus., 374, 5; w. partitive genit., 396, III. 2, 3)
 (3); as predicate, 438, 4.
 Neuter nouns, nom., acc., and voc. of, 38, 3; neuter by signification, 35; by ending, in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 111 ff.; in 4th dec., 118.
Ni, w. subj., 508, 507 ff.
Nimis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Nisi, w. subj., 508, 507 ff.
Nitor, constr., 419.
Nolo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2; *noli*, -*to*, in prohibitions, 535, 1, 3).
Nomen est, constr., 387, 1.
 Nominative, formation of, in 3d dec., 55, 88, 95; neut. plur. in adjs., 157.
 Nominative, syntax of, 366 ff.; as subject, 367; agreement of, 368; for voc., 369, 2.
Non, *ne*, *haud*, 584; place of *non*, 602, IV., omitted, 584, 2.
Non, w. *quo*, *quod*, *quin*, *quia*, w. subj., 520, 3.
 Nones in the Roman month, 708, I. 2.
Nonne, *non* = *nonne*, 346, II. 1.
Nos, for *ego*, 446, 2.
Noster, for *meus*, 446, 2.
Nostras, 185, 2.
Nostrum, 396, 1; 446, 3.
 Nouns, etymology of,—gender of, 33 ff.; pers. and numb., 37; cases, 38; declensions, 39–126; indecl., 128; defect., 129; heteroclites, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141.
 Noun, syntax of, 362–437,—Agreement, 362 ff.; Nom., 364 ff.; Voc., 369; Accus., 370–381; Dat., 382–392; Gen., 393–411; Abl., 412–431; w. preps., 432–437.
Novus, compared, 167.
Noxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
-ns, genit. of nouns in, 76.
Nubo, w. dat., 385, 2.
Nullus, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457; for *non*, 457, 3.
Num, *numquid*, 346, II. 1 and 2.
 Number, 87; in verbs, 199.
 Numerals, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff.; symbols, 180; adverbs, 181.
-nus, adjectives in, 324.
Nusquam, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
O, SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 61; gend., 100; derivatives in, 320, 6.
O, quantity of,—final, 620; in increments, 634, 642; in compda., 654, 7.
Ob, in compda., 388, 1; in compda. w. dat., 386. *Ob*, w. acc., 438.
Obediens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
 Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
 Object, direct, indirect, combined, 354; direct, 371; omit., 371, 1, (3); clause as an object, 371, 5; 557 ff. See *Subject and object clauses*.
 Objective genitive, 396, II.
 Oblique cases, 38; use of, 370–437.
Obliviscor, w. gen., 406, II.; other constrs., 407.
Obsisto, *obsto*, constr., 499, 1–2.
Ocior, compared, 166.
-odos, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
Oe, sound of, 9, 14.
Officio, constr., 499, 1–2.
Ohe, quantity, 612, 4.
Oleo and *redoleo*, w. acc., 371, 3.
Ollus, for *ille*, 186, 3.
-olus, *ola*, *olum*, in diminutives,—in nouns, 315, 2; in adj., 327.
Omnes, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
-on, in Greek gen. plur., 96.
-one, in patronymics, 316.
Operam do, w. subj., 492, 1.
Optimum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Opus, constr., 419.
-or, gender of nouns in, 101; derivation of, 320 ff.
 Oratio obliqua, see *Indirect discourse*.
 Ordinal numbers, 172, 174; decl. of, 179.
Oro, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj. or infin., 558, VI. 3.
 Orthography, 2–28.
Ortus, w. abl., 425, 3.
-os, nouns in, 50; genit. of, 72; gend., 102.
-os, for *is* in the genitive, 92.
-os final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity, 625.

- osus**, adj. in, 323.
Ovid, versification of, 697.
-ox, genit. of nouns in, 80.
- PALAM**, w. abl., 437, 2.
 Palatals, 3, II.
Pan, gen. and acc. of, 65, 2; 93, 1.
Panthus, voc. of, 48, 3, 5).
Par and **dispar**, constr., 391, 2, 4).
Paragoge, 703, 6.
Pardon, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Paroemiac verse, 664.
Pars, in fractions, 174, 1.
Particeps, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).
Participles, 196, II. 4. Tenses, relative time, 571. Agreement and use, 438 and 575 ff. For rel. clause, 577. For sub. clause,—time, cause, manner, means, condition, concession, purpose, 578. For prin. clause, 579. For verbal noun, 580. W. negative, 581.
Particles, etymology of,—Adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 306 ff.; conjuncts., 308 ff.; interjects., 312.
Particles, syntax of, 582–590,—Adverbs, 582 ff.; preps., 586, 482–437; conjuncts., 587 ff.; interjects., 589 ff.
Partim, w. gen., 396, III. 4). *Partim—partim*, for *pars—pars*, 461, 5.
Partitive genitive, 396; III.
Parts of speech, 30.
Parum, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Parvus, compared, 165.
Passive voice, 195; passive constr., 371, 6.
Paterfamilias, decl. of, 126.
Patiōr, constr., 551, II. 1–2.
Patrials, 326, 3.
Patronymics, 316.
Pause, caesural, 662.
Peculiarities in conjug., 284 ff.
Pelagus, plur. and gend. of, 48, 5; 47, II.
Penes, w. accus., 488.
Pentameter, 663, 2.
Penthemimeris, 656, 2.
Penults, quantity of, 845 ff.
Per, in compds., 338, 1; 371, 4; *per*, w. acc., 488. *Per me stat*, 499, 1.
Perceiving, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Percontor, w. two accs., 374, 2.
Perfect system, 241.
Perfect and supine, formation of, 258.
Perfect, 197; 241, II.; pres. and hist., or definite and indef., 198; wanting, 268, 275, 281, 288.
Perfect, syntax of,—in indic., 471; def. and indef., or pres. and hist., 471; of what has ceased to be, 471, 1; w. *paene*, *prope*, 471, 2; for Eng. pres., 471, 3. In subj., 478; in sequence, 480; after hist. tense, 482, 2; 533, 1; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 509; in orat. obl., 532 ff.; in infin., 542; for pres., 542, 2. In part., 574; for verbal noun, 580.
Period, Latin, arrangement of, 605.
Periphrastic conjugation, 227 ff.
Peritus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Permisceo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Permitto, constr., 551, II. 2.
Person, of nouns, 37; of verbs, 200.
Personal pronouns, 184; use of, 446; reflex. use of, 448.
Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Pertiaedet, *pertae sum est*, 410, 6.
Peto, constr., 374, 3, 4).
Ph, 4.
Phalaecian verse, 691, V.
Pherecratean verse, 689, II.
Piget, constr., 410.
Place, abl. or gen. of, 421 ff.; locative, 423, 2.
Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Plenty, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419, III.
Plenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
Plenasm, 704, II.
Pluperfect, 197; 241, II.—in indic., 472; in letters, 472, 1; for Eng. imp., 472, 2. In subj., 478; sequence, 480; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2; in orat. obl., 532; 533, 2–4.
Plural, 37; wanting, 130; with change of meaning, 132.
Plus, without *quam*, 417, 3.
Poenitēl, constr., 410.
Polysyndeton, 704, II. 1.
Pone, w. accus., 488.

- Pesco*, w. two accs. or acc. and abl., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
Position, long by, 611; short, 612.
Positive, 160; wanting, 166.
Possessives, 185; w. gen., 397, 3; for gen., 398, 3; w. *refert* and *intereat*, 408, 1, 2; use of, 447; reflexive, 448.
Possessor, dat. of, 387.
Post, sound of, 8, 1.
Post, in compds., 338, I; in compda. w. dat., 386. *Post*, in expressions of time, 427; *post*, w. acc., 433.
Posterus, compared, 163, 3.
Postremus, force of, 442.
Postridie, w. gen., 411; w. accus., 437, 1.
Postulo, constr., 374, 3, 4).
Potens, w. gen., 399, (3).
Potential subjunctive, 485 ff.; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in deliberative questions, 486, II.; in sub. clauses, 486, III.; of repeated action, 486, 5.
Potior, w. gen., 409, 3; w. abl., 419; 419, 4.
Prae, in compds. w. dat., 386; *prae*, w. abl., 434.
Praeditus, w. abl., 419, 3.
Praeter, in compds., w. accus., 371, 4; *praeter*, w. accus., 433.
Predicate, 347; simple, 353; complex, 354; compound, 361. Pred. nouns, 355, 362. Pred. adjs., 356; 438, 2. Pred. gen., 401; varieties of, 402; verbs with, 403; other constra. for, 404. Pred. abl., 428, 1.
Prepositions, 306; insep., 307; in compds., 338, 1. In expressions of time and space, 378, 1 and 2. W. names of places, 379, 1, 2 and 4. *Pro* with abl., 384, 2, 2). Compds. w. dat., 386. *A* or *ab* w. abl. of agent, 388, 1; 414, 5. Case w. prep. for the dat., 391, 2; for the gen., 398, 4; 399, 5; 407, 2; 410, 4. *Cum* w. abl. of accompaniment, 414, 7. *Quam pro*, 417, 6. W. abl. of place, 421; of source and separation, 425; of time, 426. Preps. w. cases, Rule, 432, 434 ff.; preps. as adverbs, 436.
Present, 197; 241, I.—in indic., 466 ff.; of general truths, customs, hist. pres., 467. In subj., 477. In imperat., 536. In infin., 541. Part., 572.
Present perfect, 471, I.
Present system of forms, 241.
Priapeian verse, 695.
Price, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 416.
Pridie, w. gen., 411; w. acc., 437, 1.
Primitives and derivatives, 313.
Principal parts of verbs, 240, 246—260. *Prin.* clauses, 345, 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 530. *Prin.* elements, 349; tenses, 198, 2.
Prior, primus, 166; force of, 442, 1.
Priusquam, w. indic. or subj., 521, 523.
Pro, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2; *pro*, w. abl. in defence of, 384, 2, 2); *pro*, w. abl., 434.
Pro, quantity of, in compds., 654, 4.
Procul, w. abl., 437, 2.
Prohibeo, constr., 499, 1; 551, II. I.
Pronouns, 182 ff.; pers., 184; posses., 185; demon., 186; relat., 187; interrog., 188; indef., 189.
Pronouns, syntax of, 445—459.—
Agreement, 445. Pers. and Posses., 446 ff. Reflex. use of, 448 ff.
Demon., 450 ff. Rel., 453. Interrog., 454. Indef., 455.
Pronunciation of Latin, 5—28.
Prope, w. accus., 433.
Proper nouns, 31.
Propior, proximus, 166; w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
Propius, w. accus., 437, 1.
Proprius, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.
Propter, w. accus., 433.
Prosody, 607—701.—Quantity, 608—654. Verification, 655—701.
Prospicio, constr., 385, 3.
Prosthesis, 703, 4.
Provido, constr., 385, 3.
Providus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Proxime, w. accus., 437, 1.
Proximum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Proximus, w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
Prudens, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
-ps, genit. of nouns in, 75.
Pudet, constr., 410.
Punishment, w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.

Purgo, constr., 410, 7.

Purpose, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490; pure purpose, 491; mixed, 492; peculiarities, 493; in rel. clauses, 500 ff. Inf. of purpose, 558, V.; gerund, 563, 5; 564, 2; supine, 569; participle, 578, V.

Pyrites, decl. of, 48.

Q U, changed, 248.

Quaero, constr., 374, 3, 4).

Qualis, *qualicunque*, *qualsqualis*, 187, 7; *qualis*, interrog., 188, 4; *qualslibet*, indef., 191, 4.

Quality, characteristic, genit. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428.

Quam, w. comparatives, 417, 1; w. superlatives, 170, 2. *Quam pro*, w. abl., 417, 6. *Quam ut*, w. subj., 496, 2. *Quam si*, w. subj., 503, 506. *Quam quod*, w. subj., 520, 3.

Quamquam, w. indic. or subj., 516, I.

Quamvis, *quantumvis*, w. subj., 515 ff.

Quando, w. indic. or subj., 520.

Quantity, 20 ff.; signs of, 24. General rules for, 610 ff. Special, 618–654; final syllables, 618 ff.; increments, 629 ff.; deriv. endings, 645 ff.; stem syllables, 649 ff.

Quantus, *quantuscunque*, *quantusquantus*, 187, 7; indefinite, 188, 4.

Quasi, w. subj., 503, 506.

Qui, rel., interrog., indef., 187 ff.; for *quo*, *qua*, 187, 1; 188, 2. Use of as rel., interrog., indef., 453 ff.

Qui, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489, 500 ff. *Qui dicitur, vocatur*, 453, 7. *Quicunque*, 187, 4.

Quia, w. indic. or subj., 520.

Quidam, indef., 191, 455.

Quidem, place in clause, 602, III.

Quilibet, 191; use of, 458.

Quen, w. subj., 489, 498.

Quinam, 188, 8.

Quinarius, 712.

Quippe, w. relative, 519, 8.

Quis, interrog., 188; indef., 189 ff.; use of, 454 ff.

Quis, for *quibus*, 187, 1.

Quisnam, 188, 8.

Quispiam, 191; use of, 455.

Quisquam, 191; use of, 457.

Quisque, 191; use of, 458; w. plur. verb, 461, 8.

Quisquis, 187, 4.

Quitum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Quirina, 191; use of, 458.

Quo, w. gen. 396, III. 4); w. subj. of purpose, 489, 497.

Quoad, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.

Quod, expletive, 458, 6; w. subj., 520; clause w. *quod* unconnected, 554, IV.; *quod* restrictive, 501, 3.

Quorū, *quor*, for *cujus*, *cui*, 187, 1.

Quoniam, w. subj., 499.

Quoniam, w. indic. or subj., 520.

Quoque, place in the clause, 602, III.

Quot, *quotcunque*, *quotquot*, *quotus*, *quotuscunque*, 187, 7; 188, 4.

Quum, w. subj., 515, 517 ff.; w. indic., 518, 8.

R DROPPED, 55, 3; changed, 248; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 66; gender, 101, 103, 111, 114.

R, quantity of final syllables in, 621.

Rastrum, plur. *rastri*, *rasta*, 143.

Ratum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Re, *red*, 338, 2.

-re, for *ris*, 236.

Reason, subj. of, 517 ff. See *Cause*.

Recordor, w. gen., 406, II.; w. accus., 407, 1; w. abl. with *de*, 407, 2.

Recuso, constr., 499, 1–2.

Reduplicated perfects, 254; quantity of, 652.

Refert, constr., 406, III.; 408.

Refertus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (2) and 5.

Reflexive use of pronouns, 448 ff.

Regarding, verbs of, w. two accus., 373.

Regno, w. gen., 409, 3.

Relative, 187; as adj., 445, 8; use of, 458.

Relative clause, w. potential subj., 486, 1; w. subj. of desire, 488, 5; of purpose, result, 500; of result after indefinite or general antecedents, after *unus*, *situs*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, and compar. w. *quam*, 501, I.–IV.; w. subj. of condition, 513; of concess-

- sion, 515 ; of cause, reason, 517, 519 ; w. infin., 581, 1.
Reliquum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
 Remaining, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
 Reminding, constr. of verbs of, 410.
Reminiscor, w. gen., 406, II.
 Repeated action, subj. of, 486, 5.
Reposco, with two accs., 374, 2.
 Resisting, verbs of, w. the dat., 385.
Respublica, decl. of, 126.
Restat ut, 495, 2.
 Result, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490 ff.; of pure result, 494; mixed, 495; peculiarities, 496. With relatives, 500. See *Relative clause*.
Reticentia, 704, I. 3.
 Rhetorical questions, 530, 2.
 Rhythmic accent, 669.
Rideo, w. accus., 371, 3.
 Rivers, gender of names of, 35.
Rogo, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
 -*ra*, genit. of nouns in, 76.
Rudis, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
 Rules of Syntax, 591.
Rus, constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
Rutum, quantity of, 651, 3.
- S**, SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48 ff.; genit. of, 68–76; gend., 110.
Sacer, compared, 167; w. dat. or gen., 391; 399, 3, 3.
Saepe, compared, 305, 4.
Sapio, w. accus., 371, 3.
 Sapphic verse, 664; 690, I.; 691, IV.; greater sapphic, 690, II.
Satago, *satagito*, w. gen., 409, 5.
Satis, w. gen., 896, III. 4.
Satisfacio, w. dat., 385, 2.
Satum, quantity of, 651, 3.
 Scanning, 668.
Scazon, 683, 4.
Scidi, quantity of, 651, 2.
Secundum, w. accus., 438.
 Semi-deponents, 272, 3; 282; use of, 465, 3.
Sener, compared, 168, 3.
 Sentences, syntax of, 343–361; classification of, 345 ff.; simple, 347 ff.; complex, 357 ff.; compound, 360. See also *Declarative*, *Ez-*
- clamatory*, *Imperative*, *Interrogative*.
 Separation, abl. of, 425.
 Sequence of tenses, 480 ff. Rule, 480. Application, 481; after hist. pres., 481, IV.; after imp. subj., 481, V.; after infin. or part., 481, VI. Exceptions, 482; after perf. def., 482, 1; hist. tense, 482, 2; in orat. obliqua, 482, 3.
Sequitur, w. subj. or infin., 495, 2; 549, 1.
 Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Servus, decl. of, 45.
Sese, 184, 4.
Sestertius, *sestertia*, *sestertium*, 712 ff.
 Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
 -*si*, *sin*, in Greek datives, 90, 97.
 Silver age, 706.
 -*sim*, in perfect subj., 239, 4.
Similis and its compds., constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Simple,—sentence, 347 ff.; elements, 350; subject, 351; predicate, 353; words, 313, 1.
Simul, w. abl., 437, 2.
Sin, w. subjunctive, 503, 507 ff.
Sine, w. abl., 484.
 Singular, 37; wanting, 181.
Sino, constr., 551, II. 1.
Sitio, w. accus., 371, 3.
Situm, quantity of, 651, 3.
 -*so*, in fut. perfect, 239, 4.
Solus, decl. of, 149; *situs qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
 Source, abl. of, 425.
 Space, abl. of, 378.
 Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
 Specification, acc. of, 380; genit. of, 396, V.; abl. of, 429.
 Spirants, 8.
 Stanza, 666; stanzas of Horace, 699 ff.
Statum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Statuo, constr., 558, II.
 Stem, 41; in the five decls., 123.
 Stem-syllables, quantity in primitives, 649 ff.; in derivats., 653; in compda., 654.
Steti, *steti*, quantity of, 651, 2.
 Striving, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
Studiosus, w. gen., 399.
Sub, in compds., 388, 1; compda. w. dat., 386. *Sub* w. acc. or abl., 435.

- Subject**,—Simple subject, 351; complex, 352; compound, 361. Subj. nom., 367; omitted, 367, 2. Subj. acc., 375, 545; omitted, 545, 2. Infin. as subj., 549. Clause as subj., 555 ff.
- Subject and object clauses**, 554 ff. Indirect questions, infin. clauses, subjunctive clauses, and clauses with *quod*, compared, 554. Subject clauses, 555 ff.; interrog., 555; not interrog., 556. Object clauses, 557 ff.; interrog., 557; not interrog., 558.
- Subjective genitive**, 396, I.
- Subjunctive**, 196; syntax of, 483–533.—Potential Subj., 485 ff. Subj. of desire, 487 ff. Of purpose or result, 489–501; w. conjuncts, 489 ff.; w. relatives, 500 ff. Of condition, 502 ff. Of concession, 515 ff. Of cause and time, 517 ff. In indirect questions, 524 ff. By attraction, 527. In indirect discourse—*oratio obliqua*, 528.
- Subordinate**,—clauses, 345, 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 531. Sub. conjuncts, 311, 588; elements, 349.
- Substantives**, see *Nouns*.
- Subter**, in compds. w. acc., 371, 4. *Subter*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Sui**, decl. of, 184; use of, 448 ff.
- Sum**, w. dat., 387; w. pred. gen., 403.
- Super**, in compds. w. accus., 371, 4; in compds. with dat., 386. *Super*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Superlative**, 160; irreg., 163; wanting, 168 ff.; formed by *maxime*, 170; w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2).
- Superus**, compared, 163, 3.
- Supine**, 196, II.; wanting, 267 ff., 274, 281, 283. Use of, 567 ff.
- Supine system**, 241.
- Supplico**, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Supra**, w. accus., 433.
- Suspensus**, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Suis**, decl. of, 185; use of, 448 ff.
- Syllables**, 17 ff.
- Synaeresis**, 669, II.
- Synaloepha**, *Synapheia*, 669, I. 5.
- Synecdoche**, 706, III.
- Synesis**, 704, III. 3.
- Synopsis of conjugation**, 216–226.
- Syntax**, 343–606,—of sentences, 343–361; of nouns, 362–437; of adjectives, 438–444; of pronouns, 445–459; of verbs, 460–581; of particles, 582–590. Rules of syntax, 591. Arrangement of words and clauses, 592–606.
- Systole**, 669, IV.
- T** **SOUND** of, 11 ff.; nouns in, T, 48; genit. of, 67; gender, 111. *T* dropped, 55, 3; 248.
- T**, quantity of final syllables in, 621
- Taedet**, constr., 410.
- Talis**, 186, 4.
- Talpa**, gender of, 44.
- Tamest**, w. subj., 515; 516, III.
- Tanquam**, *tanquam si*, w. subj., 508; 506.
- Tantus**, 186, 4: *tantum abeat*, 496, 3.
- Teaching**, verbs of, w. two aces., 374.
- Ted** for *te*, 184, 5.
- Temporo**, constr., 385, 3.
- Templum**, decl. of, 45.
- Temporal conjunctions**, 311; 588, I.
- Tenses**, 197; prin. and hist., 198; wanting, 198, 3. Use of, in indic., 468 ff.; in subj., 476 ff.; sequence of, 480 ff.; in imperat., 534; in infin., 540; in part., 571.
- Tenus**, w. gen., 411; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, 2.
- Terrae**, genit. of place, 424, 3.
- Testis sum**, constr., 551, 3.
- Tete**, 184, 4.
- Tetrameter verse**, 663, 2.
- Tetrapody**, 656, 2.
- Tetrastich**, 666.
- Th**, 4.
- Thesis**, 660.
- thongos**, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
- Threatening**, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- tim**, adverbs in, 334, 2.
- Time**, accus. of, 378; abl. of, 378, 2; 426; w. the prep. *in*, 426, 2; w. *abhinc*, 427. Time denoted by acc. or abl. w. *ante* or *post*, 427; by participle, 578, I.
- Time**, with cause or purpose, subj. of, 521 ff.
- Tineo**, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
- Ti**, for *tui*, 184, 5.
- to**, for *tor*, in imperative, 289, 5.

- Tot, totus*, 186, 4. *Totus*, decl. of, 149.
 Towns, gender of names of, 85; constr.—accus., 379; with *urbs* or *oppidum*, 379, 2; genit. or abl., 421, II.
Trans, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Trans*, w. acc., 433.
 Transitive verbs, 193; 371, 3.
 Trees, gender of names of, 85.
 Trimeter, 663, 2.
 Tripody, 656, 2.
 Tristich, 666.
 Trochaic verse, 679 ff.
 -trum, nouns in, 320.
Tu, decl. of, 184.
Tuli, quantity of, 651, 2.
 -tus, nouns in, 318.
Tuus, decl. of, 185.
- U** SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; w. sound of *u*, 9. Nouns in *u*, 116; gender of, 118.
U, quantity of,—final, 619; in increments, 637, 641.
 -u, for *ui* in dat., 116, 4.
Ubi, w. genit., 396, 2, 4).
 -ubus, in dat. and abl., 90; 116, 4.
Ui, as diphthong, 9.
 -uis, for *us*, in genit., 116, 4.
 -ula, nouns in, 320, 5.
 -uleus, in derivatives, 315, 5.
Ullus, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457.
Ullerior, ultimus, 166; force of, 442, 1.
Ultra, w. accus., 433.
 -ulus, *ula*, *ulum*, in nouns, 315; 320, 5; in adjs., 327 ff.
 -um, for *arum*, 42, 3; for *orūm*, 45, 5, 4); in gen. plur. of 3d dec., 89.
 -undus, *undi*, for *endus*, *endi*, 238.
Unus, decl. of, 149, 176; *unus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
Unusquisque, 191, 1.
 -ur, gend. of nouns in, 114.
 -ura, nouns in, 321.
 -urio, desideratives in, 332, III.
 -us, for *e* in voc. sing., 45, 5; nouns in, 50 ff., 116; genitive of, 73, 116; gender, 115, 118. Derivatives in, 320, 6; 321; *us*, final, quantity of, 627.
- Usque*, w. accus., 437, 1.
 -ustus, adjs. in, 323.
Urus, constr., 419.
 -ut, nouns in, 51; genit. of, 67; gend., 111.
Ut, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489 ff.; omitted, 493, 2; w. *qui*, 519, 8.
Ut si, w. subj., 503, 506.
Ut quisque—ita, 458, 2.
Uter, uterunque, 149; 187, 6; 188, 4; 191, 2.
Uterlibet, uterque, utervis, 191, 3.
Uterque, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Utinam, w. subj. of desire, 488, 1.
Utor, constr., 419; 419, 4.
Utpote, w. *qui*, 519, 8.
Utrum, 346, II. 2.
 -utus, adjs. in, 323.
 -us, verbal adjs. in, 328, 5.
 -ux, genitive of nouns in, 81.

- V** PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.
Vacuus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3) and 5.
 Value, genit. of, 396, IV.
Vannus, gender of, 47.
Velut, velut si, w. subj., 503, 506.
 Verbal inflections, table of, 242.
 Verbs, etymology of—Classes, voices, moods, tenses, etc., 192–203. Paradigms, 204–215. Synopsis, 216–226. Periphrastic conj., 227–232. Contractions and peculiarities, 234–239. Formation of parts, 240 ff. Table of inflections, 242. Comparative view of conj., 243 ff. Principal parts of verba, 246–260. Classification of verbs, 261–286. Irreg. verbs, 287–296. Defect., 297. Imperf., 298–301. Deriv., 330 ff. Compound, 341. Irregularities of special verbs, 721. See also *Transitive*, *Intrans.*, *Finite*, *Deponent*, *Semi-depon.*, *Impersonal*, *Frequent*, *Incept*, *Desiderat*, *Diminutive*.
 Verbs, syntax of, 460, 581.—Agreement, 460 ff. Omitted, 367, 3; 460, 3. Voices, 464 ff. Tenses of Indic., 466 ff. Use of Indic., 474. Tenses of Subj., 476 ff. Use of Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infin., 539–553. Subject and

- object clauses, 554 ff. Gerund, 559–566. Supine, 567 ff. Particples, 571–581.
- Verb-stem*, 203, 242.
- Vereor*, constr., 492, 4.
- Verisimile est, verum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Vero*, place in clause, 602, III.
- Verses, 661; names of, 663 ff.
- Versification, 655.—Feet, 656 ff. Verses, 661 ff. Figures of prosody, 669. Varieties of verse, 670 ff.
- Versus*, w. accus., 438.
- Vescor*, constr., 419; 419, 4.
- Vestras*, 185, 2.
- Vestri, vestrum*, 396, III. 1.; 446, 3.
- Veto*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- Vetus*, compared, 167.
- Vicus*, w. dat. or gen., 391, 1; 399, 3.
- Vir*, decl. of, 45, 4.
- Virgil*, versification of, 696.
- Vocative, formation of, 86, 88; in Greek nouns, 95; in adja., 154, 157. Syntax of, 369.
- Voices, 195. See also under *Verbs*, *syntax of*.
- Volens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
- Volo*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- volutus*, compds. in, compared, 164.
- Vowels, 8, I.; sounds of, 6 ff., 14 ff.; before *r*, 6, 2.
- W** PLACE supplied by *u*, 2. Want, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419.
- Warning, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI
- Weights, Roman, 714.
- Winds, gender of names of, 35.
- Wishing, constr. of verbs of, 551.
- Words, arrangement of, 592.
- X** SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48, 50; genitive of, 77–83; gender of, 108.
- Y** ONLY in Greek words, 2. Nouns in, 48; genitive of, 62; gender, 111.
- Y, quantity of,—final, 617; in increments, 638.
- ya*, genitive of nouns in, 74; gender of, 107; quantity of *ys* final, 628.
- yx*, genitive of nouns in, 82.
- Z**, ONLY in Greek words, 2. Zeugma, 704, I. 2.

T A B L E

Showing the corresponding articles in the two editions.

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
1-12.....	.1-12	64.....	.75
13.....	—	65.....	.76
14-16.....	.19	66.....	.77
17.....	.18, 18	67.....	.78
18, 19.....	.14, 18	68.....	.79
.....	.15-17	69.....	.80
20-28.....	.20-28	70.....	.81
24.....	.28, 1	71.....	.82
25.....	—	72.....	.83
26.....	.24, 25	73.....	.84
27.....	.25, 4	74.....	.85
28.....	.25, 5	75.....	.86-88
.....	.26-36	76.....	.89-91
29.....	.37	77.....	.92
30.....	.38	78.....	.93
31.....	.89	79.....	.94
32.....	.40	80.....	.95
33.....	.41	81.....	.96
34.....	.41, 1	82.....	.97
35.....	.42	83.....	.98
36.....	.43	84.....	.67, 1
37.....	.44	85, 87.....	.62
38.....	.45	86.....	.68, 8
39.....	.46	88.....	.67
40.....	.47	89.....	.65
41.....	.46, 1	90.....	.67, 58, 2, 66, 68, 5
42.....	.48	91-98.....	.68
42, 8.....	.49	99-104.....	.99-104
43.....	.50	.....	.105
44.....	.48, 5	105.....	.106
45.....	.51	106, 107.....	.107
45, 5.....	.52	108-116.....	.108-116
46.....	.54	116, 4.....	.117
47.....	.58	117.....	.119
48.....	.55	118.....	.118
49.....	.56	119.....	.120
50.....	.57-59	120.....	.121
50.....	.68, 64	121-123.....	.122, 123
51.....	.60, 61	124-148.....	.124-148
.....	.62, 66	148.....	.149, 150
52-54.....	.57, 68, 67	149.....	.151
55-57.....	—	150.....	.152
58.....	.69	151.....	.153
59.....	.70	152.....	.154
60.....	.71	153.....	.155
61.....	.72	154-158.....	.156-158
62.....	.73	159-174.....	.159-174
63.....	.74	175.....	.175, 176

TABLE OF OLD AND NEW ARTICLES.

357

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
176.....	175	255-258.....	256, 257
177-198.....	177-198	259, 260.....	214
199, 200.....	199	261.....	259
201.....	200	262.....	260
202.....	201	263.....	262
203.....	202	264.....	261
204.....	203, 204	265.....	263
205-212.....	205-212	266.....	264
213.....	221	266, II.....	265
214.....	222	266, III.....	268
215.....	223	267.....	266
216.....	217	268.....	267
217.....	218	269.....	269, 270, III.
218.....	219	270.....	270, II.
219.....	224	271.....	270, I.
220.....	220	272.....	271
221.....	225	273.....	272
222.....	226	273, II.....	279
223.....	227	273, III.....	272, II., 278, III.
224.....	228	274.....	280
225.....	229	275.....	281
226.....	280	276.....	274-278
227, 228, 230.....	281	277, 278.....	276, 278, 3
229, 231.....	282	279.....	273, II.
232, 233.....	283	280.....	273, I.
234-239.....	284-289	281.....	282
240.....	218	282.....	283
241.....	215	283.....	284
242-247.....	213, 216, 240 241-248	284.....	285, 286
242.....	249-251	285.....	287
248.....	258	286.....	288
249.....	221	287.....	289
250.....	261, 1	288-290.....	290
251-264.....	252-255	291-721.....	291-721

4 A mountaine was good
for nourishing cattle

5 the cowherd gives his labor
to the gods to be appeased

6 There are some games
not useless for the brightening
of the intellect

a man was born for
understanding and
learning. In the best
time of life is sufficiently
long to live well & happy

Fable Page 41st
or Exercise

A kid standing over a
ring of whistlers was
abused & gave abuse to a
wolf, hissing bye to which
the wolf replied not you
do not but the wolf abuses
me, often the timber
place makes timid men
brave bold







To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M—8.40

- Grammars. 12mo.
- Homer's Iliad. 12mo. 759 pages.
 - Greek Reader. 12mo.
 - Acts of the Apostles, in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.
 - Homer's Odyssey. Tenth Edition. 12mo.
 - Thucydides. With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.
 - Xenophon's Cyropædia. Eighth Edition. 12mo.
 - Plato's Apology and Crito.* With Notes by W. B. TYLER,
Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

